A Hebrew Grammar

Russell Fuller

Kyoungwon Choi

A HEBREW GRAMMAR

RUSSELL FULLER

KYOUNGWON CHOI

A Hebrew Grammar

ISBN 9988911122

To

HARIBBI ISAAC JERUSALMI

OUR TEACHER, SCHOLAR, FRIEND

PHONOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES

MORPHOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES: WEAK VERBS

PREFACE

In producing another elementary Hebrew grammar, we are aware that an ultimate Hebrew grammar will never be written. A grammar, no matter how well written, will never satisfy all. Each grammar represents the training, pedagogy, and personality of the author. This is particularly true for this grammar, produced to teach students in our classes, not to satisfy the demands of a general grammar designed for the largest possible audience. Of course, we do not imply that the book is restricted in any way. We hope that many will find help in learning Biblical Hebrew from this book, as individuals and other teachers have found help.

The approach of this Grammar stresses the mastery of the fundamentals of Hebrew phonology (the sounds), those seemingly insignificant details, essential for understanding the language (Chapters 1-6). From the phonology, the morphology (the forms) of the language is constructed (Chapters 7-38). Moreover, the approach is directed towards the student, not towards the scholar. Hence, the language of the book is often popular rather than technical, colloquial rather than formal. Yet, some technical language is retained to give students a foundation to progress to advanced grammars.

This approach aims to limit memorization as much as possible. Instead of memorizing entire paradigms of nouns, verbs, and other words, the diligent student should be able to reproduce the paradigms by phonological principle instead of by memorization. Of course, this will not eliminate memorization – all language study requires this – but it will lessen the burden, or at least it will aid the mind to memorize more efficiently.

To be sure, many friends helped and encouraged this work along the way, most notably, Terry J. Betts, who first suggested the writing of this book and Eric Mitchell, whose suggestions and corrections were most helpful and especially, the students who demonstrated that the book actually works.

Of course, family support is a necessity for such projects. We thank our wives Donna and Jiyoun, and children, David, Christine, and Katherine. Also we thank our parents, Thomas and Melba Fuller and Young-Sam and Jeong-Oen Choi, whose help over a lifetime can never be repaid.

We dedicate this work to our teacher, Isaac Jerusalmi, of Hebrew Union College-Jewish Institute of Religion in Cincinnati, Ohio, who taught us not only Hebrew, Aramaic, Syriac, and Arabic, but also how to think about and teach a language. His wonderful influence as a teacher and scholar will always be with us; his friendship will always be dear.

Our hope and prayer in producing this work is that many will learn Biblical Hebrew to become better interpreters of the Word of God so as to glorify God, and His son Jesus Christ, whom to know is eternal life.

Russell Fuller
Kyoungwon Choi

PHONOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 1
ALPHABET
VOWELS

1.1. The Consonants (The Alphabet)

Printed Letters	Letters with Final Forms	Names of the Letters	Phonetic Values	Transliteration	Cursive
א		alef	silent letter	ʾ	
בּ ב		bet	v, b	b̲, b	
גּ ג		gimel	g	g̲, g	
דּ ד		daled	d	d̲, d	
ה		he	h	h	
ו		vav	v	w	
ז		zayin	z	z	
ח		ḥet	ch[2]	ḥ	
ט		ṭet	t	ṭ	
י		yod	y	y	
כּ כ	ךּ[1]	kaf	ch[2], k	k̲, k	
ל		lamed	l	l	
מ	ם	mem	m	m	
נ	ן	nun	n	n	
ס		samek	s	s	
ע		ayin	silent letter	ʿ	
פּ פ	ף	pe	f, p	p̲, p	
צ	ץ	ṣade	s	ṣ	
ק		qof	k or q	q	
ר		resh	r	r	
שׂ		sin	s	ś	
שׁ		shin	sh	š	
תּ ת		tav	t	t̲, t	

[1] Final Kaf usually contains two vertical dots (1.7; 3.2.1.3 and footnote 16).

[2] To pronounce these letters, see 1.4.

1.2. Printed Letters: Hebrew, with its twenty-three letters or consonants, is read right to left. The letters בּ, גּ, דּ, כּ, פּ, תּ may occur with a dot, which originally changed pronunciation. In this Grammar, only three of these letters – בּ, כּ, פּ – change pronunciation with a dot. (See 1.4).

1.3. Final Letters: Certain letters (כ, מ, נ, פ, צ) vary their form when ending a word. Except for מ, the final form straightens the bottom of the letter vertically.

	Initial or medial	Final	
כ	כַּדְכֹּר	שָׂלַךְ	כ – ך
מ	מִן	שָׂם	מ – ם
נ	נָבָא	תֵּן	נ – ן
פ	פָּקַד	אַף	פ – ף
צ	צָבָא	עֵץ	צ – ץ

1.4. Phonetic Values (Sounds): Phonetic values, listed in 1.1, represent modern Israeli (Ashkenazi) pronunciation.[3] The following consonants merit special attention.

- א – Alef is a silent letter.
- בּ, ב – Without the dot, the ב sounds like /v/; with the dot, the בּ sounds like /b/.
- ח – This letter sounds like the clearing of the throat. (German *ch* as in machen, or the Scottish *ch* as in loch)
- כּ, כ – Without the dot, the כ sounds like the ח above; with the dot, the כּ sounds like /k/.
- ע – Ayin is a silent letter.
- פּ, פ – Without the dot, the פ sounds like /f/; with the dot, the פּ sounds like /p/.

General Observations

1. Most letters may receive a dot, but the dot only in פּ כּ בּ changes pronunciation.
2. The silent letters (א, ע) originally had phonetic values (as in Arabic).
3. Some letters have the same sound. Both ת and ט, for example, represent the sound /t/. Originally, these letters represented different /t/ sounds (as in Arabic).

1.5. Guttural Letters - The four Guttural letters – א ה ח ע (ר is a semi-Guttural letter), originally pronounced deep in the throat, display certain peculiarities (5.7).

[3] This Grammar follows modern Ashkenazi pronunciation; most grammars follow a Sephardi pronunciation system. For a simplified phonological classification of Modern Hebrew, see Appendix 1.

1.6. The Vowels (also called vowel points): Although Modern Hebrew does not distinguish short and long vowels in pronunciation,[4] carefully distinguish (not in sound, but in observation) short vowels from long vowels. The following chart lists the vowel signs (or points) with Modern Hebrew pronunciation.

	Short			Long		
Phonetic Value	Name of the Vowel	Vowel / with letter	Transliteration	Name of the Vowel	Vowel / with letter	Transliteration
A (as in father)	Patah	◌ַ / סַ	a	(Kamatz) Qames	◌ָ / סָ	ā
E (they)	Segol	◌ֶ / סֶ	e	Sere (Tzayray)	◌ֵ / סֵ	ē
The short Segol sounds like the /e/ in pet.				Sere-Yod	◌ֵי / סֵי*	ê
				Segol-Yod	◌ֶי / סֶי*	ey
I (be)	Hireq	◌ִ / סִ	i	Hireq-Yod	◌ִי / סִי*	î
O (note)	Qames-Hatuf	◌ָ / סָ	o	Holem	◌ֹ / סֹ	ō
				Holem-Vav	וֹ / סוֹ*	ô
U (flute)	Qibbus	◌ֻ / סֻ	u	Shureq	וּ / סוּ*	û

Most vowels are written under its consonant (סָ); some are written to the left of its consonant (סוֹ); a few are written under and to the left of its consonant (סֶי). The sign * indicates an historic long vowel (1.8.2.2).

1.7. The Shewa: Hebrew also has a shewa, two vertical dots under a letter סְ (transliterated ᵊ), often indicating an indistinct vowel or slurred sound, like the "e" in the word "shewa" (See chapter 3).

1.8. Observations on the Vowels

1. Short Vowels
   1. Short vowels may reduce to a shewa. (ְ)
   2. Short vowels may lengthen to long vowels:
      Patah ◌ַ may lengthen to Qames ◌ָ
      Hireq ◌ִ may lengthen to Sere ◌ֵ

[4] The distinction between short Segol and its long vowels – Sere, Sere-Yod, Segol-Yod – is the only exception.

Qames-Hatuf ֳ may lengthen to Holem
The lengthening or reducing of vowels will be considered later.

2. Long Vowels
   1. Long vowels written with Yod or Vav – סֹו, סִי, for example – are historic long vowels. *These vowels never reduce to shewa.*[5]
   2. Historic long vowels may be written defectively (partially) – that is, without the Yod or Vav.[6] The historic long Hireq-Yod, then, may be written סִי or defectively (partially) סִ: the Hireq may be a short vowel or a historic long vowel written defectively. Distinguishing these two options will be considered later.[7]
   3. Qames, Sere, and Holem, not historically long vowels, lengthen secondarily from short vowels.

1.9. Note on the Exercises

In studying the beginning chapters, students are tempted to try the exercises immediately without seriously studying the chapter or learning the vocabulary. While this method may work for a few chapters, eventually the student will spend inordinate time on homework, with slight benefit and little profit. For the chapters and their exercises to have the intended effect, the student must study the chapter and work the exercises in the proper order. First, read and comprehend the chapter thoroughly, including the footnotes. Then master the vocabulary (chapter one is without vocabulary). Finally, work the drills. The chapter carefully studied and the order properly followed, the exercises will have the intended effect of correcting mistakes and of creating the proper habits to master the language.

Exercise One

I. Questions

1. How many consonants does Hebrew have? What direction is Hebrew read?
2. Which three letters with a dot change pronunciation in this Grammar? Pronounce their sounds, with and without the dot.
3. Does Modern Hebrew distinguish short and long vowels in pronunciation? How should we distinguish them?
4. In relation to a consonant, where can a vowel be written?
5. What is a shewa?

---

[5] Very rarely, Qames may be historic long, but in general, Qames lengthens secondarily from Patah.

[6] When written defectively, Shureq (וּ) is written as a Qibbus (ֻ).

[7] Some vowels lengthen by compensating the form for a peculiarity in the word. Vowels lengthened by compensation are like historic long vowels: *they never reduce to shewa.*

6. What kind of vowels reduces to shewa?
7. List the vowels that can lengthen and indicate what they may lengthen to.
8. What is a historic long vowel? What long vowels are not historic long?
9. What is defective writing? List the vowels that may be written defectively and write them defectively.
10. Describe the proper order to learn the chapters and to work the exercises in this Grammar.

II. Drills

1. Write the alphabet in order, giving the phonetic value for each letter: list the five final letters, the six letters that have a dot, and the Gutturals.

2. Recite the alphabet orally.

3. Write the vowels and shewa with the letter ס – identify the phonetic value of each vowel; divide the vowels into short and long vowels and label all historic long vowels.

4. Identify and pronounce with ā the following letters.

ה י ז ל ט נ כ ע ם צ ס ר פ שׁ

א ו ג ח ת א ד ן שׁ ף ב ג ק ת

ץ כ ב ך פ ה

5. Identify and pronounce the following vowels.

6. Identify and pronounce the following consonant-vowel combinations.

לוֹ כֹ סוּ אִ תֵּ שָׁ גִֽי כֶ גַ הֶ טֵי מִי יְ שֵׁ

פוֹ בַ פֵּי עוּ רֶ וִ חֶֽ גָ נֵ רֹ הוֹ עִי צֶ

הִי חֶ אֶ עֵ אִֽי עָ אַ בִּי

CHAPTER 2
CONSONANTAL AND VOCALIC YOD/VAV
THE SYLLABLE

2.1. Introduction: Yod and Vav may be read as a consonant or as a vowel. To read a word properly, carefully distinguish between consonantal Yod/Vav and vocalic Yod/Vav. The syllable is the brick and mortar of Hebrew word structure, foundational for building and connecting mere letters and vowels into stately words.

2.2. Yod or Vav: Vowel or Consonant

1. Yod
    1. Vowel: If a Yod is without a vowel or a dot, and is preceded by a Sere, Hireq, or Segol; the Yod is a vowel – בֵּית, נָבִיא, תְּקוּמֵינָה.
    2. Consonant:
        1. If a Yod begins a word, it is consonantal – יוֹם, יָם.
        2. If a Yod has a dot, it is consonantal – דַּיָּן.
        3. If a Yod has a vowel, it is consonantal – שָׁמַיִם, הָיָה, יוֹם.
        4. If Yod is preceded by a vowel other than Sere, Hireq, or Segol; it is consonantal – בָּנוּי, שָׁמַיִם.

2. Vav
    1. Vowel:
        1. A Vav, having a dot in its middle and beginning a word, is a vowel – וּמֹשֶׁה.
        2. A Vav, having a dot in its middle and preceded by a consonant, is a vowel – נוּן, סוּס.
        3. A Vav, having a dot at its top and preceded by a consonant, is a vowel – לוֹ, טוֹב.
    2. Consonant:
        1. A Vav, without a dot in its middle or at its top, is a consonant – מְצָוָה.
        2. A Vav, having a dot in its middle or at its top and preceded by a vowel or a shewa (two vertical dots under a letter סְ, see 1.7), is consonantal:
        מְצַוֶּה – the Vav is consonantal because preceded by a vowel (Patah).
        מְצַוְּת – the Vav is consonantal because preceded by a shewa.

2.3. The Syllable – Definition: A Hebrew syllable must begin with a consonant (this includes the silent letters א, ע) and must have a single vowel. A Hebrew syllable may end with a vowel – בָּ, or with a consonant – בָּם.[8]

[8] בְ is not a syllable because a vowel cannot begin a syllable (the Vav-Conjunctive being the only exception 8.3.6); without a vowel, בם is not a syllable.

2.4. Opened and Closed Syllables:

1. An opened syllable ends with a vowel בָּ, or with a final א or ה – תָּה, נָא.
2. A closed syllable ends with a consonant (excluding final א or ה) – בָּם, נוּן.

2.5. Dividing Words into Syllables – Syllabifying

Syllabify from the end of the word (left to right), which may end with a consonant or with a vowel. First, locate the final vowel, then divide the syllable after the consonant with the final vowel. Then find the next vowel (moving to the right) and divide the syllable after its consonant.

1. מֵאָדָם – The final vowel (Qames) is under the ד. Because a syllable must begin with a consonant, divide the syllable to the right of the ד – דָם | מֵאָ. Now repeat the process with the next syllable: find the vowel (Qames) and divide the syllable to the right of its consonant (א) – דָם | אָ | מֵ. This word has three syllables. The last syllable is closed because the syllable ends with a consonant (ם). The other two syllables are opened because they end in vowels: a Qames (אָ) and a Sere (מֵ).
2. סֵפֶר – The final vowel (Segol) is under the פ; therefore, divide the syllable to the right of the פ because a syllable must begin with a consonant – פֶר | סֵ
   The last syllable ends in a consonant (ר) and is closed. The first syllable ends in a vowel (Sere) and is opened.
3. שָׁפָה – The final vowel (Qames) is under the פ; therefore, divide the syllable to the right of the פ because a syllable must begin with a consonant – פָה | שָׁ. Both syllables are opened: the last syllable is opened because it ends in a final ה (2.4.1); the first syllable is opened because it ends in a vowel.

2.6. Accent

Most words in Hebrew have accent (also called stress or tone). Most Hebrew words accent on the final syllable (also called ultima or milra[9]); some accent on the next to last syllable (also called penult or milel[10]). Hebrew never accents a syllable before the next to last, or penult syllable. Words accented on the next to last syllable will receive an accent mark – סֵפֶר; words accented on the last syllable usually will not be given an accent mark – דָּבָר.

[9] Milra is an Aramaic word meaning "from below," that is, the last syllable.

[10] Milel is an Aramaic word meaning "from above," that is, the next to last syllable.

2.7. Syllable: Terminology

1. The syllable with the accent is called the tone syllable (or accented syllable or stress syllable) – דָּבָר.
2. The syllable after the accent is called the post-tonic syllable – מֶּלֶךְ.
3. The syllable before the accent is called the pretonic syllable – דָּבָר.
4. All syllables before the pretonic syllable are called pro-pretonic syllables:

מְ | הָ | אָ | דָּם

tonic pretonic two pro-pretonics

EXERCISE TWO

I. Questions

1. When should Yod be read as a vowel? as a consonant?
2. When should Vav be read as a vowel? as a consonant?
3. Define a Hebrew syllable.
4. Define opened and closed syllable.
5. Explain the process of dividing syllables.
6. Which syllables can receive the accent in Hebrew?
7. Define the following terms: tone, penult, milel, milra, post-tonic, pretonic, pro-pretonic.

II. Vocabulary: For now, all verbs can be translated as a simple past or perfect tense.

אֶל-[11]	(prep.) unto, toward, to	עָשָׂה	(verb) (he) did, made, has made
אֵת	(prep.) with	נָתַן	(verb) (he) gave, has given
מִן	(prep.) from, out of, because of, part of, than (in comparisons)	הָלַךְ	(verb) (he) went, walked, has went
לֹא	no, not	יָם	sea
אָמַר	(verb) (he) said, has said	יוֹם	day
עַל	(prep.) on, upon, over, against	מֶלֶךְ	king
הָיָה	(it, he) happened, became, was has happened	עִיר	(fem.) city (irregular plural עָרִים)
		הוּא	(pronoun) he

III. Drills

1. Write the alphabet in order: list the five final letters, the six letters that have a dot, and the Gutturals; then give the phonetic value for each letter.

[11] The raised dash after the word is a Maqqef, see 5.5.

2. Recite the alphabet orally.

3. Write the vowels and shewa with the letter ס: identify the phonetic value of each vowel; divide the vowels into short and long vowels and label all historic long vowels.

4. Label consonantal Yod/Vav or vocalic Yod/Vav.

צַוֵּה	מִצְוֹתַי	תְּשׁוּבֶינָה	בַּיִת	מִצְוָתִי
יוֹמַיִם	יָמִים	תּוֹרוֹתַי	וָו	

5. In the following words, divide the syllables, label them opened or closed; tonic, post-tonic, pretonic, pro-pretonic; then pronounce the words.

Example יֵאָמֵר[12]

מֵר | אָ | יֵ
closed tonic | opened pretonic | opened pro-pretonic

אָלָה	יִירַשׁ	וְעָשֶׂר	חָמָס	שָׁמַיִם
שָׂדֵהוּ	מָצָא	הוֹצִיאֵם	וַיְהִי	יַעֲשׂוּ
רָאִיתָ	לָעִיר	טוֹבָה	הוּא	עָשׂוּ
רִמֶּשֶׁת	עָלַיתִי	וָאָרֶץ	מוֹעֵד	יַיִן

[12] Until chapter 5, consider every ָ as ā (Qames).

CHAPTER 3
THE SHEWA

3.1. Introduction: The Shewa is an impoverished vowel, the low rent district of Hebrew – some are vocal about it; others are silent. The shewa is two vertical dots under a letter (סְ) to indicate the absence of a vowel:

1. Silent shewa, the absence of any sound, ends a syllable.
2. Vocal shewa,[13] an indistinct vocalic sound, begins a syllable. Vocal shewa comes in two flavors: simple vocal shewa, two vertical dots under a letter; Composite Shewa, a composite of a short vowel (Patah, Segol, or Qames-Hatuf) to the left of two vertical dots חֲ, חֱ, חֳ, usually under the Guttural letters (ע, ח, ה, א, see 1.5).

3.2. Distinguishing between Silent Shewa and Simple Vocal Shewa

1. Single Shewa
    1. At the beginning of the word: The shewa is vocal because it begins a syllable – דְּבָרִים, שְׁמוּאֵל.
    2. In the middle of a word:
        1. If the vowel to the right of the shewa is long, the shewa is vocal[14] – קְטָלִים (קָ | טָלִים).
        2. If the vowel to the right of the shewa is short, the shewa is silent – יִקְטֹל.
        3. If a shewa is to the left of a vertical line called Metheg (or Gaya), the shewa is usually vocal, even if preceded by a short vowel – קָטְלָה qāṭ^{ə}lāh, הַמְכַסֶּה ham(m)^{ə}kasseh.[15]
    3. At the end of a word: The shewa is silent because it ends a syllable – מֶלֶךְ, בָּרַךְ.[16]

2. Two Consecutive Shewas
    1. At the beginning of the word: Hebrew will not tolerate two consecutive shewas. If two vocal shewas begin a word, the first shewa becomes a short vowel,

---

[13] The vocal shewa usually reflects the remains of a reduced short vowel (1.8.1.1); the silent shewa usually reflects the absence of any vowel. In Modern Hebrew, simple vocal shewa is rarely pronounced.

[14] In an accented syllable, silent shewa may be to the left of a long vowel: לֵיְלָה (for the sign ֵ, see 6.5.2.2). If the shewa under the Yod were vocal, then a vertical line called Metheg would appear to the left of the first Qames. See 3.2.1.2.3.

[15] Although inconsistently found in the Hebrew Bible, the Metheg is used consistently in this Grammar.

[16] Although examples of silent shewas in a final letter are usually restricted to דְּ, the final silent shewa is implicit in most words, for example, דָּבָר for the implied *דָּבָרְ. Notice again that in an accented syllable, a silent shewa may be to the left of a long vowel. See footnote 14.

usually Hireq – דִּבְרִי* > דִּבְרִי – or Patah under the Guttural letters א, ה, ח, ע – אַדְמַת* > אַדְמַת.[17]

2. In the middle of a word:
   1. The shewa on the right is silent because it is preceded by a short vowel and closes a syllable. The shewa on the left is vocal because it begins a new syllable – יִקְטְלוּ.
   2. The shewa is vocal if it occurs under a letter with a doubling dot (Dagesh Forte, 4.3.2) because קִטְּלוּ actually stands for *קִטְטְלוּ.
3. At the end of a word: both shewas are silent – קָטַלְתְּ.

3.3. Composite Shewa: Composite Shewas occur under Guttural letters (ע, ח, ה, א see 1.5) and are always vocal – אֲדָמָה, אֱלֹהִים, חֲלִי. These shewas are called Hatef ("hurried") vowels: Hatef-Patah (ֲ), Hatef-Segol (ֱ), and Hatef-Qames-Hatuf (ֳ). The transliteration of Composite Shewas are: ᵃ Hatef-Patah; ᵉ Hatef-Segol; ᵒ Hatef-Qames-Hatuf.

3.4. The Shewa and the Syllable

1. A syllable in Hebrew must begin with a consonant and have one vowel. *A consonant with a vocal shewa – including Composite shewa – never constitutes a syllable in Hebrew*. A vocal shewa, which always begins a syllable, must attach to the following consonant and vowel combination.
   Example: קְ | טְלִים – The shewa is vocal because it is to the left of a long vowel. The vocal shewa begins the following syllable and attaches to the consonant-vowel-consonant: לִים
2. Dividing syllables with silent and vocal shewas
   1. Silent shewa always ends a syllable; therefore, divide the syllable to the left of a silent shewa – מִקְ | נֶה
   2. Vocal shewa always begins a syllable; therefore, divide the syllable to the right of a vocal shewa – קָ | טָלָה, כּוֹ | כְבִי, קְ | טְלִים
3. Syllabifying with shewas
   As in 2.5, begin at the end of the word, locate the final vowel and the consonant above that final vowel. If a shewa is to the right of that final vowel and its consonant, then determine whether the shewa is silent or vocal (3.2). If the shewa is silent, divide the syllable to the left of the silent shewa – מִמְ | שָׁל. If the shewa is vocal, divide the syllable to the right of the vocal shewa – קְ | טְלִים. Then repeat the

[17] This is the shewa fight: two vocal shewas at the beginning of the word will fight, leaving the first shewa a Hireq or Patah. Moreover, within a word, when a vocal shewa (or Political Shewa, see footnote 71) follows a Composite Shewa (which is always vocal, 3.3), the Composite Shewa becomes the short vowel of the Composite Shewa: נַעֲרְךָ* > נַעֲרֶךָ.

process for every vowel in the word. Remember: *Every syllable has a vowel, and every vowel has a syllable.*

Examples:

1. יִצְחָק – The final vowel (Qames) and its consonant ח have a shewa to the right of them. The shewa is silent because it is to the left of a short vowel; therefore, divide the syllable to the left of the silent shewa – חָק | יִצְ. The last syllable is closed because it ends in a consonant[18] חָק, and the first syllable is closed because it ends in a consonant (with silent shewa) – יִצְ.
2. קִטְלִי – The final vowel (Sere-Yod) and its letter ל have a shewa to the right of them. The shewa is vocal because it is to the left of a long vowel (Holem); therefore, divide the syllable to the right of the vocal shewa – טְלִי | קִ. The last syllable is opened because it ends with a vowel – טְלִי; the first syllable also ends with a vowel and is opened – קִ.
3. קָטְלָה – The final vowel (Qames) and its letter ל have a shewa to the right of of them. The shewa is vocal because the shewa is to the left of a Metheg (3.2.1.2.3). Therefore, divide the syllable to the right of the vocal shewa: טְלָה | קָ. Both syllables are opened: the last syllable ends in a ה (2.4.1) – טְלָה; the first syllable ends in a vowel – קָ.

EXERCISE THREE

I. Questions

1. Define silent and vocal shewa. What do vocal and silent shewa usually reflect?
2. Describe a shewa at the beginning, middle, and end of a word. When is the shewa silent or vocal?
3. When can a silent shewa be preceded by a long vowel?
4. When is a silent shewa implied in many words?
5. Describe two consecutive shewas at the beginning, middle, and end of a word. When are they silent or vocal?
6. What kind of shewa occurs under a doubling dot (Dagesh Forte)?
7. Describe the Metheg. How does the Metheg affect the shewa?
8. Define the Composite Shewa. When do they occur?
9. Describe the process of syllabifying words with shewas.
10. Can a consonant, vocal shewa, or Composite Shewa ever constitute a syllable?

[18] A silent shewa is implied under the ק – *יִצְחָק – but in an accented syllable, a silent shewa may be preceded by a long vowel (see footnotes 14 and 16).

II. Vocabulary

אֱלֹהִים	God	אִישׁ	man
יָד	(f) hand	שָׁמַע	(verb) (he) heard, obeyed
פָּנִים	face	אֲנָשִׁים	men
אֲשֶׁר	(relative pronoun) who, which, that, that which	רָאָה	(verb) (he) saw, looked
		קָרָא	(verb) (he) called, read
אָב	father	יִשְׂרָאֵל	Israel
יָשַׁב	(verb) (he) sat, dwelled	אֲדֹנָי	Lord, lord, master
מֹשֶׁה	Moses	שֵׁם	name

III. Drills

1. Identify each shewa as vocal or silent shewa.

שְׁמוֹ	יִקְרַב	הוֹשְׁבוּ	יַבְנֶה	יִשְׁמְרוּ
קִבְּרוּ[19]	מֶשְׁלָה	יִתְרָעֵם	יִשְׁבֵי	מָחֳרָת

2. First, identify each shewa as vocal or silent shewa. Second, divide each syllable, labeling them opened or closed; tonic, post-tonic, pretonic, pro-pretonic; then pronounce the words. In checking your work, be sure every syllable has a vowel, and every vowel has a syllable.

אֱדֹם	אַדָמָה	שָׁמְרוּ	יִמְשְׁלוּ	לַיְלָה
אֲנַחְנוּ	אֱמֶת	בָּרְכִי	קִטְלִים	חַכְמֵי
לְמַעַן	הוּקְמוּ	מִנְחָה	מֶשְׁלָה	יִתְרָעֵם
נְבִיאַי	תּוֹרוֹתַיִךְ	וְשַׁוְעָתִי	יִירְשׁוּ	שָׁמַרְנוּ

[19] Doubling dot, Dagesh Forte.

CHAPTER 4
DAGESH

Daghs forté preceded by a VOWEL and Dagesh Lene does not.

4.1. Introduction: A Dagesh is a dot in the middle of a letter.[20] There are two varieties of Dagesh: Dagesh Lene (or Soft Dagesh) and Dagesh Forte (or Strong Dagesh). The Dagesh is the nail of Hebrew that stabilizes a word and fixes the pronunciation of certain letters.

4.2. Dagesh Lene

1. Originally, Dagesh Lene differentiated the pronunciation of six letters (ת, פ, כ, ד, ג, ב). In Modern Hebrew pronunciation, only three of these letters (פ, כ, ב) actually differ in pronunciation because of Dagesh Lene. These three letters have a plosive[21] pronunciation with the Dagesh Lene, and a spirantic[22] pronunciation without the Dagesh Lene.

   ב, בּ = b, b
   כ, כּ = k, k
   פ, פּ = p, p

   The other letters (ג, ד, ת), with or without Dagesh Lene, have a plosive pronunciation.

2. To remember the six letters that admit the Dagesh Lene, grammarians have made two (artificial) words בְּגַד כְּפַת (B^{e}gad K^{e}fat). These six letters are called "B^{e}gad K^{e}fat" letters.

3. B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letters admit the Dagesh Lene at the beginning of syllables:
   1. At the beginning of a word – בֵּן, פֶּה.
   2. In the middle or end of a word when the B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter is to the left of a silent shewa – יִקְבֹּר, מִדְבָּר, שָׁמַרְתְּ. At the end of a word, a Dagesh Lene is to the left of a silent shewa and can admit a silent shewa under the Dagesh Lene – שָׁמַרְתְּ (footnote 16).

4. B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letters will not admit the Dagesh Lene:
   1. When the B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter is to the left of a vowel – עָבַד, יִבְחַר.[23]

---

[20] This excludes the vowel Shureq וּ, of course, and the Mappiq (4.6).

[21] A plosive sound is the complete stoppage and sudden release of the breath, like the /b/ in boy. (Compare the word "explosive.")

[22] Spirantic sound is the passage of breath through the partially closed oral cavity, like the /v/ in victory. (Compare the word "spirit.")

[23] This is also true at the beginning of a word when that word is preceded by a word ending in a vowel (and with a conjunctive accent): וַיְהִי כֵן. Here the כ is without Dagesh Lene because the preceding word ends in a vowel (with an assumed conjunctive accent).

2. When the B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter is to the left of a vocal shewa – אַדְמָה, וְכָל.

4.3. Dagesh Forte

1. Dagesh Forte indicates the doubling of a letter. Instead of writing the same letter consecutively – *קְטַטֵל, Hebrew frequently represents the first ט and silent shewa by a Dagesh Forte – קְטֵל; therefore – קְטֵל = *קְטַטֵל, שְׁלַח = *שְׁלְלַח, יַלֵד = *יַלְלֵד.

2. A shewa under a Dagesh Forte is a vocal shewa – קְטֵלוּ = *קְטַטְלוּ. The Dagesh Forte has an implied silent shewa; therefore, the shewa under the Dagesh Forte must be vocal according to 3.2.2.2.1.

3. Dagesh Forte may occur in any letter (including B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letters, which have a plosive pronunciation with Dagesh Lene or Dagesh Forte, 4.2.1) except the Gutturals (א ה ח ע and ר, 1.5).[24]

4. *Dagesh Forte must be preceded by a vowel* (usually, a short vowel, but a long vowel in an accented syllable – הֵמָּה, אֵלֶּה), קִבֵּר.

5. Dagesh Forte may not begin a word or end a word[25] – עַם, but עַמִּי.

4.4. Distinguishing between Dagesh Lene and Dagesh Forte

1. A Dagesh in a non-B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter is a Dagesh Forte.

2. A Dagesh in a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter may be a Dagesh Lene or Dagesh Forte.
   1. Dagesh Lene occurs at the beginning of words – בֵּן, or to the left of a silent shewa – יְקַבֵּר.
   2. Dagesh Forte must be to the left of a vowel (usually, a short vowel) – שִׁלַּח; therefore, *Dagesh Forte never begins a word.*

4.5. The Dagesh and the Syllable

1. The Dagesh Lene within a word indicates that the shewa to the right is silent – יְקַבֵּר, מְדַבֵּר.

---

[24] Certain letters with vocal shewa *may* omit the Dagesh Forte: וַיְהִי for *וַיְהִיי. These letters are the sibilants ("s" letters), ס, צ, ש, שׁ; the liquid and nasal letters, ל, מ, נ; and the letters, ק, ו, י. These letters are known by the memory word (compare 4.2.2) SQeNeMLeVY, סְקֶנֶם לֵוִי (The ס stands for all sibilants).

[25] If a doubled consonant occurs at the end of a word, עַמְּם (two silent shewas), the word will be written עַם. The Dagesh hovers – עַמ̇. If something is added to the end of the word, the Hovering Dagesh will land – עַמִּי.

2. *The Dagesh Forte always indicates a closed syllable* because the Dagesh Forte represents a doubled letter with a silent shewa – קְטֵל = *קְטְטֵל (two closed syllables).
3. Therefore, when dividing syllables with Dagesh Forte, the Dagesh Forte should be "wrapped," קְטֵּל (= קְטְ | טֵל), to show doubling and the silent shewa, a closed syllable. When dividing a syllable with Dagesh Lene, do not wrap the Dagesh Lene because it does not represent doubling, but only the beginning of a syllable – יִקְ | בֹּר.

4.6. Mappiq

A ה in the final position of a word may receive a dot called a Mappiq – גָּבַהּ, תָּמַהּ. Although final ה is silent and does not close a syllable (see 2.4.1), a final הּ with Mappiq is pronounced and closes a syllable.[26]

EXERCISE FOUR

I. Questions

1. Define Dagesh.
2. Define Dagesh Lene.
3. Which letters admit Dagesh Lene? What are the letters called (or remembered by)?
4. When do B^{a}gad K^{a}fat letters admit Dagesh Lene? When do they not admit Dagesh Lene?
5. Define Dagesh Forte.
6. What two things do the Dagesh Forte represent?
7. What kind of shewa is under a letter with a Dagesh Forte?
8. Which letters admit Dagesh Forte? Which letters do not admit Dagesh Forte?
9. What must precede the Dagesh Forte?
10. Does a Dagesh Forte begin or end a word?
11. What is a Hovering Dagesh? When does it occur?
12. What are SQeNeMLeVY letters? When do they affect the Dagesh Forte?
13. What are the three tests for distinguishing Dagesh Lene and Dagesh Forte?
14. Within a word, what precedes (is to the right of) a Dagesh Forte?
15. How is a syllable divided with Dagesh Lene or Dagesh Forte? Which always indicates a closed syllable?

---

[26] Very frequently, a final ה was added to aid the reading of an unpointed (i.e. vowelless) text. Thus, the word סוס could be read "horse" (masculine) or "mare" (feminine). To aid the reader, a ה was added to distinguish the reading – סוס = horse, סוסה = mare. Because the ה was added to aid reading, the ה did not close a syllable, but indicated a vowel, frequently Qames – סוּסָה. Hence, the ה is "phony" for syllabification, but the הּ with mappiq is a genuine ה that closes a syllable, not merely an aid to reading.

II. Vocabulary

בָּא	(he) came	גַּם	(adv., conj.) also, indeed, moreover
דָּוִד	David	דִּבֶּר	(he) spoke
עָבַד	(he) served	יָדַע	(he) knew, knows
בֵּן	son	דָּבָר	word, matter, thing
עֶבֶד	slave, servant	אִשָּׁה	woman
אָדָם	man, Adam	נָשִׁים	women
כִּי	(conj.) because, for, that, when, but, indeed	מִצְרַיִם	Egypt, Egyptian
עִם	(prep.) with		

III. Drills

1. Identify each Dagesh Forte, Dagesh Lene, Mappiq.

שִׁלַּח	נָבַהּ	תִּסַּבּוּ	מִדְבָּר	כִּפֻּפִים
תִּתָּנָה	מִמֶּנּוּ	דִּבֶּר	קִטַּלְתִּיהָ	תִּכְמַהּ

2. Label every Dagesh, Mappiq, shewa, and divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed; tonic, post-tonic, pretonic, pro-pretonic. Then pronounce the words.

גֻּלְגֹּלֶת	תִּגְדַּל	נִקְדִּים	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	הִשְׁתַּמְּרִים
בִּקַּשְׁתּוּנִי	בִּלְגָּה	יִקְבֹּר	תִּגְבַּהּ	פְּלִשְׁתִּים
תַּחְתִּיךְ	תִּתִּי	שָׁמַרְתְּ	נֵרְדְּ	בִּתָּהּ

CHAPTER 5
QAMES AND QAMES-HATUF
CHARACTERISTICS OF GUTTURALS
QUIESCENT ALEF

5.1. Introduction: The Massoretes, the preservers of the traditional reading of the Hebrew text and the creators of the vowel signs or points, employed the same sign for ā and the short "o" (perhaps they had a similar sound), namely ָ, which more frequently represents Qames than Qames-Hatuf.

5.2. Qames-Hatuf: For the sign ָ to be read as short "o", Qames-Hatuf, two conditions must be true:

1. The sign ָ must be in a closed syllable, *and*
2. The sign ָ must be in an unaccented syllable.

If either statement is untrue for a syllable with the sign ָ, read it as ā, Qames.

5.3. The Metheg and the Qames/Qames-Hatuf

The word חָכְמָה may be read: (1) the shewa may be taken as a silent shewa, then the first syllable is closed, unaccented; therefore, read the vowel under the ח as a Qames-Hatuf. (2) The shewa may be taken as a vocal shewa, then the vowel under the ח would be in an opened syllable; therefore, the vowel is a Qames. The difficulty is determining whether the shewa is vocal or silent. In this Grammar, if the sign ָ is unaccented and followed by a shewa ◌ָ◌ְ◌, read the shewa as silent and the sign ָ as a Qames-Hatuf (short "o"). If the shewa is vocal, a Metheg (3.2.1.2.3) will appear to the left of the Qames ◌ָ◌ֽ◌.

Examples:

1. אָכְלָה – The unaccented vowel under the א is followed by a shewa. Because a Metheg does not occur to the left of that vowel, read the shewa as a silent shewa and the vowel as Qames-Hatuf: 'o<u>k</u>lāh.
2. אָכְלָה – The unaccented vowel under the א is followed by a shewa, but a Metheg occurs to the left of the vowel under the א. Read the shewa as vocal and the vowel as Qames: 'ā<u>k</u>^{ə}lāh.

5.4. The Dagesh Forte and the Qames/Qames-Hatuf

Because Dagesh Forte always represents a closed syllable (4.5.2), if a closed syllable is unaccented and has the sign ָ, the sign ָ is a Qames-Hatuf – חָנֵּנִי (ḥonnēnî for *חָנְנֵנִי).

5.5. Maqqef: A word may transfer its accent to the following word, marked by raised dash called Maqqef. In the phrase, גַּם הוּא, each word has its own accent, but the first word may transfer its accent to the following word, marked by a Maqqef – גַּם־הוּא. Pronounce words linked by Maqqef as one word.

5.6. Maqqef and the Qames-Hatuf: Words, having lost their accent and connected by Maqqef, often have Qames-Hatuf: כָּל־רַע – the sign ָ, in a closed unaccented syllable, is a Qames-Hatuf.

5.7. The Characteristics of Gutturals[27]

1. Gutturals take Composite Shewas instead of simple vocal shewa.[28]
2. Gutturals (including ר) do not admit Dagesh Forte.
3. Gutturals prefer Patah under them or before them. The word מֶלֶךְ has two Segols; נַעַר, the same noun pattern, would have two Segols, but the Guttural ע transforms the Segols into Patahs.
4. Gutturals (excluding א and ר) take Furtive Patah
    1. A word ending in a Guttural will receive a Furtive Patah, a vocalic glide to help pronounce the Guttural, when the vowel before the final Guttural is not a Qames or Patah.
        רֵעַ instead of *רֵע
        רוּחַ instead of *רוּח
        שָׁלוֹחַ instead of *שָׁלוֹח
    2. If a Patah or Qames occurs before a final Guttural, a Furtive Patah is not written – שָׁלַח. If the Guttural does not end the word, a Furtive Patah is not written – רֵעוֹ.
    3. Ignore Furtive Patah in dividing syllables and in opening or closing of syllables – לֵחַ | שׁ. The last syllable is closed.

5.8. Quiescent Alef: Silent in modern pronunciation and even in the Biblical period, Alef could quiesce (become quiet or silent).[29] Having quiesced, the Alef was written without any vowel or shewa – מָלֵאתִי. When syllabifing a word, ignore the quiescent Alef, so מָלֵאתִי = לֵ א תִי | מָ. Usually, a word compensates for the quiesced Alef by lengthening the preceding short vowel (see footnote 29).

---

[27] The semi-Guttural ר acts like the Gutturals in not admitting the Dagesh Forte and occasionally in preferring patah (5.7.3). Otherwise, ר behaves like a non-Guttural letter.

[28] Gutturals may take silent shewa (שָׁלַחְתִּי), but even in the silent shewa position, Gutturals may take a Composite Shewa: יַעֲשֶׂה for *יַעְשֶׂה.

[29] Alef frequently quiesces in the silent shewa position: *מָצַאתִי > *מָצָאתִי > מָצָאתִי. The form compensates for the quiesced Alef by lengthening the Patah to Qames under the second letter. Alef also quiesces at the end of the word – *מָצַא > מָצָא. The Alef quiesces and the Patah under the second letter lengthens by compensation. Occasionally, the Alef may quiesce in the vocal shewa position (לֵאלֹהִים for *לֶאֱלֹהִים, see 8.2.5.1).

EXERCISE FIVE

I. Questions

1. What two conditions must exist for the sign ָ to be read Qames-Hatuf?
2. How does the Metheg affect the reading of Qames/Qames-Hatuf?
3. Explain how the Dagesh Forte affects the reading of Qames/Qames-Hatuf?
4. What is the importance of the Maqqef?
5. List the four characteristics of the Gutturals.
6. When does ר act like a Guttural letter? When does it usually not act as a Guttural letter?
7. Discuss the Gutturals with silent shewa.
8. Define Furtive Patah. When does it occur? How does it affect the dividing of syllables and of the opening and closing of syllables?
9. What is a quiescent Alef? How does it affect syllabification? How does a word compensate for a quiescent letter?

II. Vocabulary

כָּל־, כֹּל	all, every, totality	יָצָא	(he) went out
לָקַח	(he) took, received	אָכַל	(he) ate
יהוה	Lord, Yahweh, the Divine name	שָׁלַח	(he) sent
שָׁם	(adv.) there	כֹּהֵן	priest
בַּיִת	house	כַּאֲשֶׁר	(conjunction) as
עָלָה	(he) went up	יְרוּשָׁלַ͏ִם	Jerusalem
הִנֵּה	(particle) look, see, behold	יְהוּדָה	Judah

III. Drills

1. Identify each Qames or Qames-Hatuf.

נָפְלָה	קָדְקֹד	חָכְמָתוֹ	שָׁמְרֶ֫נָּא	שָׁמַרְתָּ
קָטְלָה She killed	מִדְבָּר Wilderness	חֲכָמִים	חָכְמָה	כָּל־הָאָרֶץ land the all

2. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames, Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

מְצַוֶּה	יַגִּיהַ	יִשְׁמָר־נָא	וַיָּמָת	וַתַּסֵּבוּ
וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל	מָתְנַיִם	בֶּאֱמֶת	הַלַּיְלָה	חָנֵּנִי
אֶכְלָה	מָצָאתָ	נִגְלֵה	שָׁמְרָה	לְעָבְדֵנִי

CHAPTER 6
RULES OF PROTO-HEBREW
RULES OF SYLLABLES
NOTES ON HEBREW SYNTAX

6.1. Introduction: Chapter six is the heart of the Grammar – with every chapter flowing into or out of chapter six. We have now come to the Hebrew Sinai – master these laws and you can master Hebrew.

6.2. Rules of Proto-Hebrew (Pre-Biblical Hebrew)

1. Qames in Biblical Hebrew was a Patah in Proto-Hebrew[30] – דָּבָר < *דַּבַר.
2. Vocal shewa (ְ , ֱ , ֲ , ֳ) in Biblical Hebrew was a short vowel (frequently Patah) in Proto-Hebrew – דְּבַר < *דַּבַר.[31]
3. Historic long vowels (1.8.2.1.) are the same in Proto-Hebrew and Biblical Hebrew: סוּסִים is both Proto-Hebrew and Biblical Hebrew.
4. The short vowels (Patah, Hireq, Qibbus, and Qames-Hatuf) in Biblical Hebrew are the same in Proto-Hebrew: גַּם is both Proto-Hebrew and Biblical Hebrew.

6.3. The Five Rules of Syllables in Biblical Hebrew[32] (review 2.6 and 2.7)

דְּ|בָ|רִים מִ|לֶּךְ דָּ|בָר[33]

1 2 3 4 5

1. In a closed accented syllable, Hebrew *prefers* a long vowel.
2. In an opened pretonic syllable, Hebrew *requires* a long vowel.[34]
3. In a closed unaccented syllable, Hebrew *requires* a short vowel.
4. In an opened accented syllable, Hebrew *prefers* a short vowel.
5. In an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, Hebrew reduces the original short vowel to a vocal shewa. (The vocal shewa, unable to constitute an independent syllable, attaches to the pretonic syllable – דְּבָ 3.4.1.)

---

[30] Rarely, Qames is an historic long vowel. Also in Proto-Hebrew, Sere was a Hireq, and Holem was a Qames-Hatuf or a Qibbus. The Sere and Holem lengthen secondarily from short vowels (1.8.2.3). Segol is a secondary vowel usually from Hireq.

[31] Silent shewa is the absence of a vowel – even in Proto-Hebrew.

[32] Of course, there are exceptions to these "rules," but these rules apply for almost all syllables in Hebrew.

[33] The dotted line indicates an original syllable division.

[34] Moreover, in an opened post-tonic syllable, Hebrew *requires* a long vowel – קָטַלְתָּ (for the sign ָ , see 6.5.2.2).

6.4. Proto-Hebrew and the Five Rules of Syllables

1. דָּבָר was originally *דַּבַר in Proto-Hebrew (see 6.2.1).
    1. In Biblical Hebrew, the Patah under the ב lengthens to Qames in a closed accented syllable (6.3.1 rule one).
    2. The Patah under the ד lengthens to Qames in a pretonic opened syllable (6.3.2 rule two).
2. מֶלֶךְ: The Proto-Hebrew of this word will be explained later.
    1. Any closed unaccented syllable – whether post-tonic, pretonic, or pro-pretonic – requires a short vowel (לֶךְ) (6.3.3 rule three).
    2. Frequently, an opened accented syllable receives a short vowel (מֶ) (6.3.4 rule four).
3. דְּבָרִים was originally *דַּבַרִים in Proto-Hebrew.
    1. The last syllable (רִים), closed and accented with a historic long vowel, never lengthens or reduces (1.8.2.1).
    2. The next syllable בַּ, in the pretonic opened position, lengthens the original Patah to Qames.
    3. The next syllable דַ, in the originally opened pro-pretonic position, reduces the original Patah to a vocal shewa and attaches to the בָּ to form a syllable (6.3.5 rule five; 3.4.1).

6.5. Notes on Hebrew Syntax

1. Basic Sentence Structure
    1. The usual word order of a Hebrew sentence is Verb-Subject-Object – שָׁמַע מֹשֶׁה קוֹל "Moses (he) heard a voice." The order may vary for emphasis: מֹשֶׁה שָׁמַע קוֹל "(It is) Moses (that) heard a voice," or קוֹל מֹשֶׁה שָׁמַע "A voice – Moses heard."
    2. Third person verbs (he, she, it, they) have an inherent or implied pronoun. If the sentence, however, has an explicit subject, the inherent pronoun is omitted in translation – שָׁמַע מֹשֶׁה "Moses (he) heard" becomes "Moses heard." Without the explicit subject, translate the inherent or implied pronoun – שָׁמַע "he heard."[35]

2. Disjunctive Accents – Sof Pasuq/Silluq and Athnah
   Often overlooked, the Massoretic accents furnish important information for syntax.[36] The accents group words of a sentence into smaller units, making the words in a sentence (i.e., the syntax of a sentence) more manageable.

[35] Hebrew is like Greek here.

[36] The accents also supply the traditional Jewish interpretation of the text.

1. Sof Pasuq and Silluq: Biblical Hebrew sentences end in Sof Pasuq: ׃ (two stacked diamonds) and a Silluq: ֽ (a vertical line, like the Metheg) under the accented syllable of the last word in a sentence.
׃□□□□□□□□□□□□
2. Athnah: The Athnah ֑ divides the sentence in half according to syntactical and musical considerations.[37] Like the Silluq, the Athnah marks the accented syllable.[38]
׃□□□□□□ □□□□□□

EXERCISE SIX

I. Questions

1. Write the four rules of Proto-Hebrew and the five rules of syllables (with their examples) for Biblical Hebrew.
2. What is the normal word order in Hebrew? Discuss the problem of translating third person verbs.
3. What is the importance of the accents? Describe the Sof Pasuq, Silluq, and Athnah. How do Silluq and Athnah frequently affect short vowels?

II. Vocabulary

אַחַר, אַחֲרֵי	(prep.) after, behind	מַיִם	water
קוֹל	voice, sound	שָׁמַיִם	heaven, heavens, sky
גּוֹי	people, nation	נָבִיא	prophet
רֹאשׁ	head	עָמַד	(he) stood, has stood
עַתָּה	(adverb) now	אַבְרָהָם	Abraham
כֹּה	(adverb) thus, so	אַהֲרֹן	Aaron
שָׁמַר	(he) kept, watched, guarded	עָבַר	(he) passed over, transgressed

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

יִגְדְּלוּ	אֻכְלָה (Food)	כְּכָל־עַמִּים	לָהּ (To her)	הִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ
יִשְׁמַע	עֶרְמָה	הַמָּצָא	הַסַּבִּי	מִמִּצְרַיִם (In Egypt)

[37] Traditionally, the Jews chant Scriptures by the Accents.

[38] The Silluq and the Athnah frequently lengthen short vowels to long vowels: מַיִם > מָיִם.

2. Put the following Biblical Hebrew words into Proto-Hebrew[39] according to the rules of Proto-Hebrew.

עָמָל	נָבִיא	בְּשַׂר	כּוֹכָבִים	מַמְתָּק
הַיָּדַיִם	סוּס	נְבִיאוֹת	יָד	עֲמָלִים

3. Put the following Proto-Hebrew words into Biblical Hebrew words according to the five rules of syllables of Biblical Hebrew.

כּוֹכַב	נַבִּיאִים	יַשָּׂרוֹת	נַחַשׁ	שַׁמַּיִם
מַשְׁקוֹף	עַמַּלִי	מַדְרַךְ	תּוֹרוֹת	דַּבָּרִים

4. Translation: Because of the brevity of the following sentences, only Sof Pasuq and Silluq will be used.

1. דִּבֶּר אַבְרָהָם דָּבָר׃ — a word Abraham he said
2. כֹּה אָמַר מֹשֶׁה אֶל־אַהֲרֹן׃ — Aaron to Moses he said Thus
3. בָּא נָבִיא אֶל־יְרוּשָׁלַיִם׃ — Jerusalem the a prophet he came
4. רָאָה אָדָם שָׁמַיִם׃ — heavens Adam saw
5. לָקַח כֹּהֵן עֶבֶד מִן־מִצְרַיִם׃ — Egypt from a priest a servant took
6. הָלַךְ מֹשֶׁה עִם אַהֲרֹן׃
7. יָצָא מִן־עִיר׃ — city from he went out
8. בָּא אֶל־יִשְׂרָאֵל׃ — Israel to he came

[39] Restore vocal shewas to Patah.

MORPHOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES: PARTICLES

CHAPTER 7
THE ARTICLE הַ AND THE INTERROGATIVE מָה־
THE MARKER OF THE DEFINITE DIRECT OBJECT: אֵת (אֶת־)

7.1. Introduction: Down from Sinai, we now examine the idolatries of Particles, those demons only exorcised through memory – mostly. First comes the Article and the Interrogative מָה. Hebrew has a definite Article (the), but not an Indefinite Article (a, an). The Article and the Interrogative מָה connect to their words similarly.

7.2. The Form of the Article: The attaching (or pointing) of the Article to a noun or adjective. The Article attaches to the beginning of a word.

1. •הַ: The Article before non-Guttural letters is pointed •הַ (with a Dagesh Forte in the following letter: □□⊙הַ□) – הַדָּבָר, הַמֶּלֶךְ.
2. Guttural letters (including ר) will not admit Dagesh Forte (4.3.3):
   1. הָ: The Article before the Gutturals, א, ע, (and ר) is pointed הָ – הָרֹאשׁ, הָעִיר, הָאָדָם < הַאָדָם*.
      Initial א, ע, (and ר) reject the Dagesh, and the Patah lengthens to Qames by compensation.[40]
   2. הַ: The Article before the Gutturals ה and ח is pointed הַ (without following Dagesh Forte) – הַהֵיכָל, הַחוֹמָה.
      Consider the Dagesh "implicit" or "implied" in the ה or ח.
   3. Certain Gutturals with Qames:
      1. הֶ: The Article before חָ or unaccented הָ, עָ is pointed הֶ (without following Dagesh Forte) – הֶחָיִל, הֶחָכָם, הֶעָפָר, הֶהָרִים.
      2. הָ: The Article before accented הָ is pointed הָ – הָהָר.

7.3. The Translation of the Article

Translate a noun or an adjective without the Article with or without the English Indefinite Article according to context. Translate the noun or the adjective with the Article with the English definite Article "the."

1. Without Article: דָּבָר, "word" or "a word," מֶלֶךְ, "king" or "a king."
2. With Article: הַדָּבָר, "the word," הַמֶּלֶךְ, "the king."

7.4. The Interrogative מָה – what?, how?

The Interrogative מָה is pointed like the Article.

1. •מַה־: The Interrogative מָה before non-Guttural letters is pointed •מַה־, with a Dagesh Forte in the following letter and a Maqqef connecting the words □□⊙מַה־□ – מַה־דָּבָר.

[40] See footnote 7.

2. The Guttural letters
   1. מָה־: Interrogative מה before the Guttural letters, א, ע (and ר) is pointed מָה־ – מָה־אֵיבָה > מַה־אֵיבָה*.
      The initial א rejects the Dagesh Forte, and the Patah lengthens to Qames by compensation.[41]
   2. מַה־: The Interrogative מה before the Guttural letters ה and ח is pointed מַה־ (without Dagesh Forte) – מַה־הַמֶּלֶךְ.
      Consider the Dagesh Forte "implicit" or "implied" in the ה or ח.
   3. מֶה־: Gutturals (excluding ר) with Qames are pointed מֶה־ (without following Dagesh Forte) – מֶה־אָמַרְתָּ.

7.5. Translation of the Interrogative מה

מֶה־אָדָם "What (is) man," "How (is) man." Hebrew does not have a present tense verb for "is, are." Supply some form of "to be" in translating clauses without verbs in Hebrew.

7.6. Review of the Article and the Interrogative מה:

	Article ה	Interrogative מה
1.	•הַ: normal – הַדָּבָר	•מַה־: normal – מַה־דָּבָר
2.	הָ: before א, ע, ר – הָרֹאשׁ	מָה־: before א, ע, ר – מָה־רֹאשׁ
3.	הַ: before ה, ח – הַהֵיכָל	מַה־: before ה, ח – מַה־הֵיכָל
4.	הֶ: before ח and unaccented הָ, ע – הֶעָמָל	מֶה־: before G[42] (excluding ר) – מֶה־עָמָל
5.	הָ: before accented הָ – הָהָר	

7.7. The Marker of the Definite[43] Direct Object: אֵת (אֶת־)

1. If the direct object of a verb is definite, the direct object is usually, but not always, preceded by אֵת (or אֶת־) – רָדַף דָּוִד אֶת־הַמֶּלֶךְ "David pursued the king." אֵת precedes the direct object (the king), which has the Article.
   רָדַף הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־דָּוִד "The king pursued David." אֵת precedes the direct object (David), being a proper noun.
2. If the direct object of a verb is not definite, the direct object is not preceded by אֵת (אֶת־) – שָׁמַר הָאִישׁ סוּס "The man kept a horse."

---

[41] See footnote 7.

[42] "G" stands for Guttural.

[43] Consider a word definite if: (1) it has the definite Article – הַמֶּלֶךְ, (2) it is a proper name – שְׁמוּאֵל (Samuel), (3) it has a pronominal suffix – דְּבָרוֹ (his word). More accurately, אֵת marks an accusative.

EXERCISE SEVEN

I. Questions

1. What are the five ways that an Article can be attached to a noun/adjective?
2. Discuss the translation of a word with and without the Article.
3. What are the four ways that the Interrogative מָה can be attached to a word?
4. How is the Interrogative מָה translated?
5. When is a word considered definite in Hebrew?
6. When is the Definite Direct Object marker אֵת used? When is it not used?

II. Vocabulary

מֶה־, מָה־, מַה־	what, how?	לֶחֶם	bread
עַם	(with Article הָעָם[44]) people	פְּרִי	fruit
הַר	(with Article הָהָר[44]) mountain	הֵיכָל	temple, palace
גַּן	(with Article הַגָּן[44]) garden	רָדַף	(he) pursued, persecuted
אֶרֶץ	(with Article הָאָרֶץ[44]) Fem. earth, land	עָפָר	dirt, ground
		שָׁאוּל	Saul
צִוָּה	(he) commanded	פַּרְעֹה	Pharaoh
בָּשָׂר	flesh		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   מְצוֹתַי יִשְׁמָרְכֶם חָכְמָה שָׁמַרְתָּ

2. Put the following Biblical Hebrew words into Proto-Hebrew according to the rules of Proto-Hebrew.

   דְּבַר דְּבָרִי צַדִּיק סָרִיס

3. Put the following Proto-Hebrew words into Biblical Hebrew according to the five rules of syllables.

   דַּבַר נַתִיב תוֹרַתוֹ זַכוּר

[44] Rarely, because of the article, the Patah under the first root letter becomes Qames.

4. Attach the Article to the following words and translate all vocabulary words

light אוֹר	עָמָל	חַיִל	יְפֵעָה
Temple, palace הֵיכָל	woman אִשָּׁה	head רֹאשׁ	wisdom חָכָם

5. Attach the Interrogative מה to the following words and translate all vocabulary words

זֶה	שֶׁהָיָה	הָיָה	הֵיכָל
אַתָּה	עָשִׂית	רָאִיתָ	city עִיר

6. Translation

1. יוֹם הַיּוֹם; מֶלֶךְ הַמֶּלֶךְ; עִיר הָעִיר; הֵיכָל הַהֵיכָל; אָדָם הָאָדָם; הַר הָהָר
2. עָפָר הֵעָפָר; עֶבֶד הָעֶבֶד; אֶרֶץ הָאָרֶץ
3. גַּן הַגָּן; עַם הָעָם; לֶחֶם הַלֶּחֶם; אֲנָשִׁים הָאֲנָשִׁים
4. מֶה־אָדָם מַה־יִּשְׂרָאֵל מָה־אֱלֹהִים מַה־הַהֵיכָל מַה־הַדָּבָר
5. רָדַף שָׁאוּל אַחֲרֵי־דָוִד אֶל־יְהוּדָה׃
6. יָשַׁב מֹשֶׁה עַל־הָהָר׃
7. עָשָׂה אֱלֹהִים אֶת־אָדָם מִן־הֶעָפָר׃
8. עָבַר שָׁאוּל אֶת־הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יהוה׃
9. רָאָה מֹשֶׁה אֶת־אֱלֹהִים פָּנִים אֶל־פָּנִים׃
10. שָׁלַח פַּרְעֹה אֶת־אַבְרָהָם אֶל־יְרוּשָׁלָיִם׃

CHAPTER 8
INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS
THE CONJUNCTIVE VAV

8.1. Introduction: The Inseparable Prepositions (ל to, for; ב in, with; כ like, as, according to) connect inseparably to the beginning of a word. The Conjunctive Vav (and, but, even), pointed like the Inseparable Prepositions, also inseparably connects to the beginning of a word. In Proto-Hebrew, the Inseparable Prepositions and the Conjunctive Vav had a Patah: לַ, בַ, כַ, וַ.

8.2. Attaching or Pointing Inseparable Prepositions ל, ב, כ

Point the Inseparable Prepositions with:

1. לְ Vocal shewa: לְדָבָר (to a word), בְּמָקוֹם (in a place), כְּנָבִיא (like a prophet)
   The original short Patah under the Inseparable Preposition reduces to a vocal shewa in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable (6.3.5) – *לַדָּבָר > לְדָבָר.

2. לִ Hireq:
   1. before a vocal shewa – לִשְׁמוּאֵל (for Samuel), בִּצְדָקָה (in righteousness), כִּנְבִיאִים (like prophets)
      The original short Patah under the Inseparable Preposition reduces to a vocal shewa in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable (6.3.5) – *לְשְׁמוּאֵל.
      Hebrew will not permit two consecutive vocal shewas; therefore, a "shewa fight" occurs with the first vocal shewa becoming a Hireq[45] – *לְשְׁמוּאֵל > לִשְׁמוּאֵל.
   2. before יְ – לִילָדִים (for children), בִּיהוּדָה (in Judah), כִּירֻשָּׁה (like a possession):
      *לַיְלָדִים > *לְיְלָדִים > *לִיְלָדִים > לִילָדִים
      1 2 3 4
      The original short Patah under the Inseparable Preposition reduces to a vocal shewa in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable (1). The two vocal shewas (2) fight, leaving a Hireq under the Inseparable Preposition (3). Then the consonantal Yod quiesces (the Yod becomes "quiet" and loses its shewa) becoming a vowel: Hireq-Yod (4).[46]

[45] See 3.2.2.1.

[46] This is the "Hebrew love story": the Yod drops the shewa to resume its love with the Hireq, its old flame.

3. A Short Vowel לַ, לֶ, לָ (Qames-Hatuf):

לַאֲדָמָה (to land), בַּאֲדָמָה (in land), כַּאֲדָמָה (like land)
לֶאֱדֹם (to Edom), בֶּאֱדֹם (in Edom), כֶּאֱדֹם (like Edom)
לָחֳדָשִׁים (to months), בָּחֳדָשִׁים (in months), כָּחֳדָשִׁים (like months)

לַאֲדָמָה < *לְאֲדָמָה > *לַאֲדָמָה
1 2 3

The original short Patah (1) under the Inseparable Preposition reduces to a vocal shewa in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable (6.3.5). The two vocal shewas (2) fight, and the first vocal shewa becomes a short vowel corresponding to the vowel of the following composite shewa (3).

4. לָ Qames – לָמַיִם, בָּזֹאת, כָּזֶה

The Inseparable Preposition, in the pretonic opened position, may lengthen the original Patah to Qames (6.3.2) – בָּזֹאת < *בַּזֹאת. Frequently, however, a shewa occurs in the pretonic opened position – לְמֶלֶךְ. The shewa occurs so frequently with the Inseparable Prepositions that the shewa appears in syllables that "break" the rules (6.3.2).

5. לֶ Sere or לַ Patah – these are limited to two words:

כֵּאלֹהִים, בֵּאלֹהִים, לֵאלֹהִים – אֱלֹהִים
כַּיהוה, בַּיהוה, לַיהוה – יהוה

1. אֱלֹהִים is like 8.2.3, so one expects *לֶאֱלֹהִים. Here, however, the א quiesces (and loses its shewa, compare 5.8 and 8.2.2.2), and the short Segol lengthens to Sere by compensation for the quiescing of the Alef.[47]
   לֵאלֹהִים < *לַאלֹהִים < *לֶאֱלֹהִים
2. יהוה is also like 8.2.3, but the Hebrews read אֲדֹנָי (Lord) for יהוה (Divine name) to keep from profaning the Lord's name. The Hebrews, then, attached the Inseparable Preposition belonging to אֲדֹנָי to יהוה – לַאדֹנָי = לַיהוה (for the corresponding short vowel, review 8.2.3).

[47] See footnotes 7 and 29.

6. •לַ: The Inseparable Preposition supplants the ה of the Article, but retains the pointing of the Article.[48]

Article		Article with Inseparable Preposition	
הַמֶּלֶךְ	(7.2.1)	לַמֶּלֶךְ	to the king
הָאָדָם	(7.2.2.1)	לָאָדָם	to the man
הַהֵיכָל	(7.2.2.2)	לַהֵיכָל	to the palace
הֶעָפָר	(7.2.2.3.1)	לֶעָפָר	to the dirt
הָהָר	(7.2.2.3.2)	לָהָר	to the mountain

8.3. The Conjunctive Vav וְ

Point the Conjunctive Vav (and) virtually like the Inseparable Prepositions ל, ב, כ (except for 8.3.6):

1. Vocal shewa וְ: וְדָבָר (like 8.2.1)
2. Hireq וְ before יְ: וְיהוּדָה (like 8.2.2.2)
3. A short vowel ַ, ֵ, ֶ, ָ (Qames-Hatuf): וַאֲדָמָה (like 8.2.3)
4. Qames וָ: וָלַיְלָה (like 8.2.4). A vocal shewa is possible (like 8.2.4).
5. Sere וֵ or Patah וַ in two words, וֵאלֹהִים and וַיהוה (like 8.2.5)
6. Shureq וּ:[49]
   1. before (simple) vocal shewas:[50] וּדְבַר, וּדְבָרִים
   2. before the labial (lip) letters במף (called בּוּמָף letters): וּבֵית, וּמִדְבָּר, וּפָרָה

[48] In Hebrew, ה between vowels may drop out – לַמֶּלֶךְ < *לַהַמֶּלֶךְ. Compare the Hiph'il and Hoph'al Imperfects – יַקְטִיל < *יַהַקְטִיל; יָקְטַל < *יָהָקְטַל (see footnote 120).

[49] This differs from the pointing of Inseparable Prepositions.

[50] This is the only exception to the rule that a vowel cannot begin a syllable (2.3). Perhaps the Massoretes considered the initial Shureq of the Conjunctive Vav a "syllable" in itself, וּ | דְבַר, or they may have considered the shewa silent, וּד | בַר (footnotes 71 and 85).

8.4. Review of the Inseparable Prepositions and the Conjunctive Vav:

	Inseparable Prepositions: לַ, בַ, כַ	Conjunctive Vav: וַ
1.	לְ: normal – לְדָבָר	וְ: normal – וְדָבָר
2.	לְ: 1. before vocal shewa – לִשְׁמוֹאֵל 2. before יְ – לִיהוּדָה	וְ: before יְ – וִיהוּדָה
3.	לַ: corresponding short vowel before a composite shewa – לֶאֱדֹם	וַ: corresponding short vowel before a composite shewa – וֶאֱדֹם
4.	לְ/לָ: pretonic open may receive Qames or shewa – לְלַיְלָה / לָלַיְלָה	וְ/וָ: pretonic open may receive Qames or shewa – וְלַיְלָה / וָלַיְלָה
5.	לַיהוה / לֵאלֹהִים	וַיהוה / וֵאלֹהִים
6.	•לַ: the preposition supplants the ה of the Article – לַדָּבָר	וּ: 1. before vocal shewa – וּשְׁמוֹ 2. before בּוּמָף (labial letters) – וּבֵן

Exercise Eight

I. Questions

1. What was the original proto-vowel under the Inseparable Prepositions and the Conjunctive Vav?
2. List how the Inseparable Prepositions attach to words.
3. List how the Conjunctive Vav attaches to words.
4. Although the Inseparable Prepositions and the Conjunctive Vav connect similarly to words, how do they differ?
5. What is the only exception to the rule that a vowel cannot begin a syllable?

II. Vocabulary

זָבַח	(he) slaughtered, sacrificed	מָלַךְ	(he) ruled, was king
זֶבַח	sacrifice	וְ...	and, but, even, now
מִזְבֵּחַ	place of sacrifice,[51] altar	עֵץ	tree
בֵּין	(prep.) between	זָהָב	gold
תּוֹרָה	law, instruction	כֶּסֶף	silver
אֲדָמָה	land, ground	יוֹסֵף	Joseph
יָרַד	(he) went down	בָּנָה	(he) built
לָמָּה, לָמָה	prep. for what, why? לְ + מה	יַרְדֵּן	Jordan (with the Article הַיַּרְדֵּן)

[51] מ at the beginning of a word sometimes expresses "place of."

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

תִּתֵּנָה חָכְמָה שִׁלַּח יִשְׁבְּרוּ

2. Put the following Proto-Hebrew words into Biblical Hebrew according to the five rules of syllables.

וַכּוֹכַב כַּנַּפַּיִם

3. Put the following Biblical Hebrew words into Proto-Hebrew according to the rules of Proto-Hebrew.

נָעִים וְדָבָר

4. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

עִיר חֹשֶׁךְ עָפָר אָדָם

Interrogative מה

פֹּחַד חֲלוֹם עָפָר עַיִן

Inseparable Preposition ב

Samuel שְׁמוּאֵל אֲרִי מַיִם waters יִשְׂרָאֵל

יְהוּדָה יהוה הַמְּלָכִים אֱדוֹם

Conjunctive ו

מֹשֶׁה אֲרִי חֲלִי יְרוּשָׁלַיִם

יְהוּדָה יהוה מַיִם יְלִיד

5. Translation

1. הַלֶּחֶם בַּלֶּחֶם כַּלֶּחֶם וְלֶחֶם וּבַלֶּחֶם
2. כַּאֲדָמָה וְלַאֲדָמָה בָּאֲדָמָה וַאֲדָמָה וּמָה־אֲדָמָה
3. כִּיהוּדָה וְלִיהוּדָה וִיהוּדָה מַה־יְּהוּדָה
4. וּבַּיִת לְבַּיִת לָבַּיִת וְהַבַּיִת וּבַבַּיִת
5. כַּיהוה וְלַיהוה לֵאלֹהִים כֵּאלֹהִים
6. אָכַל דָּוִד לֶחֶם בַּהֵיכָל׃
7. לֹא עָבַר מֹשֶׁה הַיַּרְדֵּן׃
8. עָשָׂה אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת־הָאָרֶץ׃
9. נָתַן מֹשֶׁה לְיִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־הַתּוֹרָה׃
10. יָרַד יוֹסֵף אֶל־מִצְרַיִם עִם הָאֲנָשִׁים׃

עָבַר - pass over

CHAPTER 9
THE PREPOSITION מִן
THE INTERROGATIVE ה
NOTES ON HEBREW SYNTAX

9.1. Introduction: The מִן preposition (from, out of) may be a separable preposition – מִן־דָּבָר or an inseparable preposition – מִדָּבָר. The מִן preposition as a separable preposition is only a vocabulary item, but as an inseparable preposition, מִן deserves attention. The Interrogative ה occurs at the beginning of a sentence or clause to introduce a question.

9.2. Attaching or Pointing the Inseparable Preposition מִן

Point the Inseparable מִן:

1. •מִ: With non-guttural letters

   מִנְּשָׁמַיִם* > מִשְּׁמַיִם* > מִשָּׁמַיִם from heaven(s)

   1 2 3

   The nun (1) of the מִן assimilates[52] with the first letter of the word (2) and appears as a Dagesh Forte (3).

2. מִ: Before י[53]

   מִיְּהוּדָה > מִיְהוּדָה > מִיהוּדָה

   1 2 3

   The Dagesh (1) disappear (2) according to footnote 24, and the Yod quiesces, becoming the vowel Hireq-Yod (3).[54]

3. מִ: With Guttural letters (including ר)

   מִהַּמֶּלֶךְ* > מִהַמֶּלֶךְ*

   1 2

   The Dagesh is rejected (1) and the short Hireq is lengthened to Sere by compensation (2).

---

[52] The letter /N/ also assimilates in English, as for instance, with the Latin prefix "in" (incompetent, incomparable, incurable), which negate words – illegal for inlegal, irresponsible for inresponsible. Assimilation may be partial: impossible for inpossible (not, ippossible, which would be full assimilation).

[53] Compare 8.2.2.2 and 8.3.2.

[54] See footnote 46.

9.3. The Interrogative ה: The Inseparable Particle ה, which introduces a question, has a Proto-Hebrew form הַ.

Point the Interrogative ה:

1. הָ: Before non-Guttural letters (including ר) with a vowel – הֲשָׁלוֹם. The ה, commonly standing in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduces the original Patah to composite shewa (Hatef-Patah because of the Guttural, compare 6.3.5; 8.2.1). Like the Inseparable Prepositions (8.2.4), the Interrogative ה "breaks" the rule (6.3.2, 8.2.4), having a shewa in a pretonic opened syllable – הֲלֹא.

2. הַ:
   1. Before vocal shewa – הַשְׁמוּאֵל. The Interrogative ה cannot maintain the composite shewa because a word cannot begin with two vocal shewas (8.2.2.1; 3.2.2.1). The ה takes a Patah instead of Hireq because of its preference for Patah (5.7.3).
   2. Before Gutturals (excluding ר) – הַאֵלֶּה. This may be implicit doubling (compare 7.2.2.2).[55]

3. הֶ: Before a Guttural (excluding ר) with a Qames – הֶאָמַרְתִּי (compare 7.2.2.3.1).

9.4. Review of the Pointing of the Preposition מן and the Interrogative ה

Preposition מן

1. מִ•: normal – מִשָּׁאוּל
2. מִ: before י – מִיהוּדָה
3. מֵ: before Gutturals – מֵהַמֶּלֶךְ

Interrogative ה

1. הָ: normal before a vowel – הֲשָׁלוֹם
2. הַ: 1. before vocal shewa – הַשְׁמוּאֵל
   2. before a Guttural (excluding ר) – הַאֵלֶּה
3. הֶ: before Guttural with Qames (excluding ר) – הֶאָב

9.5. Hebrew Syntax: Sentences and Clauses without Verbs

As mentioned earlier (7.5), sentences and clauses (especially clauses introduced by אֲשֶׁר, כִּי, and מַה־) sometimes occur without an explicit verb. Furnish a form of the English verb "to be" (is, are, was, were, will be, etc.) in translating clauses without verbs into English. Context determines the appropriate tense to be supplied. Usually, the preceding verb determines the tense of a following clause without a verb.

[55] In examples like הַהֵיכָל, only context determines whether the word has the Article or the Interrogative ה.

דָּוִד אָדָם "David (is, was, will be) a man."
הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר בַּהֵיכָל "The man who (is, was, will be) in the palace."
Hebrew does not possess the present tense of the English verb "to be" (is, are); however, for the past tense (was, were), Hebrew may use the verb הָיָה (was, were), or הָיָה may be implied in the context: דָּוִד הָיָה אָדָם "David was a man" or דָּוִד אָדָם "David (was) a man."

9.6. Hebrew Syntax: Disjunctive Accents – Zaqef Qaton, Zaqef Gadol, Segolta

1. Zaqef Qaton

   The Massoretes further divided longer sentences by a Zaqef Qaton (small Zaqef), two vertically stacked dots (like the simple shewa sign) placed over the accented syllable of a word – אֶרֶץ. Short verses may not have Zaqef Qaton.

   :□□□ □□□ □□□ □□□

2. Zaqef Gadol

   The Zaqef Gadol (great Zaqef), two vertically stacked dots with a vertical line to the left of the dots ( ), also indicates a break (disjunctive accent) and marks the accented syllable. It occurs on the first word of a sentence or the first word after a Zaqef Qaton or Athnah. The Zaqef Qaton is generally stronger than the Zaqef Gadol.

   :□□□ □ □□ □□ □□ □
   :□□□ □ □□□ □ □□ □

3. Segolta

   The Segolta (an inverted segol), a disjunctive accent that does not mark the accent syllable, substitutes for the first Zaqef Qaton in the Athnah segment of a verse. Segolta is generally found in longer verses.

   :□□□ □□□ □□□ □□□

9.7. Verb Forms: Third Person Plural (Masculine and Feminine)

1. These forms end in Shureq (וּ) with a vocal shewa under the second root letter:[56]
   Third masculine singular
   אָמַר "He said," שָׁלַח "He sent," דִּבֶּר "He spoke."

[56] The reduction patterns of the verb will be explained later.

Third common[57] plural

אָמְרוּ "They said," שָׁלְחוּ "They sent," דִּבְּרוּ "They spoke."
הָאֲנָשִׁים אָמְרוּ "The men said."

2. Verbs that end in ה replace the ה with Shureq (וּ) without a vocal shewa under the second root letter.

Third masculine singular

בָּנָה "He built," הָיָה "He was."

Third common plural

בָּנוּ "They built," הָיוּ "They were," הָאֲנָשִׁים בָּנוּ "The men built."

EXERCISE NINE

I. Questions

1. List how the Inseparable מִן Preposition attaches to words.
2. Describe assimilation for Hebrew and for English.
3. List how the ה Interrogative attaches to words.
4. When Hebrew clauses are without a verb, what is usually supplied?
5. Discuss the accents: Zaqef Qaton, Zaqef Gadol, and Segolta.
6. How do third person plural verbs end? How does this affect the second root letter?

II. Vocabulary

עוֹד	(adverb) again, still, yet	אוֹר	light
שְׁמוּאֵל	Samuel	סוּס	horse
יְהוֹשֻׁעַ	Joshua	חֹשֶׁךְ	darkness
מִי	(אֶת־מִי) who? (whom?)	עוֹלָם	eternity
כָּתַב	(he) wrote	עַד	(prep. and conj.) unto, to, as far as, when, until, עַד עוֹלָם forever
שָׁלוֹם	peace, health		
תְּהִלָּה	glory, praise		
מְאֹד	(adverb) very, exceedingly	מִן	from, out of (the preposition can be compounded on another preposition – מֵעִם from with; מֵעַל from upon. This is common after verbs expressing motion.)
לַיְלָה	night (This word is not feminine because the final Qames/He is unaccented. The ending is an old Accusative ending. See 10.11.)		

[57] Common = Masculine and Feminine.

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

בַּבַּיִת קַטַלְתִּיהָ תִּקּוֹמְינָה יִשְׁמְרֶךָּ

2. Put the following Proto-Hebrew words into Biblical Hebrew according to the five rules of syllables.

עַמַלוּ מִדְבַּר

3. Put the following Biblical Hebrew words into Proto-Hebrew according to the rules of Proto-Hebrew.

כּוֹכָב חֲכַם

4. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

חֲלִי הָר אֱלֹהִים

Interrogative מה

אוֹר חַיִל מֶלֶךְ

Inseparable Preposition כ

יְרוּשָׁלַיִם שֶׁבֶת יְלוֹד

Conjunctive ו

יִשְׂרָאֵל בֵּין אִשָּׁה

Interrogative ה

חָכָם עַם יְהוּדָה אֲרִי

Preposition מִן

יְרוּשָׁלַיִם　　אַתָּה　　הָיָה　　זֶה

5. Translation

1. הַעִיר, הָעִיר, וּמֵהָעִיר, בְּעִיר, מַה־בָּעִיר
2. בָּלַיְלָה, מִלַּיְלָה, וּמַה־הַלַּיְלָה
3. לַתְּהִלָּה, וּתְהִלָּה, בִּתְהִלָּה
4. הֲדָבָר, כַּדָּבָר, וּמֵהַדָּבָר, מַה־הַדָּבָר
5. וָכֶסֶף, כַּכֶּסֶף, הָאֲדָמָה, מֵאֲדָמָה
6. שָׁמַע שָׁאוּל אֶל־אָדָם וְלֹא שָׁמַע אֶל־אֱלֹהִים׃
7. הַשְּׁמוּאֵל נָבִיא׃
8. בָּא שָׁאוּל אֶל־הַהֵיכָל וְהוּא לֹא דִבֵּר אֶל־הַכֹּהֵן׃
9. אָכַל אָדָם פְּרִי מֵהָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר בַּגָּן׃
10. נָתַן פַּרְעֹה לְיוֹסֵף כֶּסֶף וְזָהָב וְגַם אִשָּׁה׃
11. בָּא הָאָדָם אֶל־הַגָּן אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה אֱלֹהִים וְשָׁם דִּבֵּר אֶל־אֱלֹהִים׃
12. לָקַח דָּוִד אֶת־הַלֶּחֶם מֵהַהֵיכָל וְעַל־הָהָר עָלָה כַּאֲשֶׁר אָמַר הַכֹּהֵן׃
13. הָלַךְ מֹשֶׁה וְאַהֲרֹן אֶל־פַּרְעֹה בַּלַּיְלָה וְלֹא שָׁמַע פַּרְעֹה אֶל־יְהוָה׃

God to Pharaoh obeyed not at the night in Pharaoh to Aaron & Moses P went but

Summary of Rules: Chapters 7-9

Article ה

1. •הַ: normal – הַדָּבָר
2. הָ: before א, ע, ר – הָרֹאשׁ
3. הַ: before ה, ח – הַהֵיכָל
4. הֶ: before חָ and unaccented הָ, עָ – הֶעָמָל
5. הָ: before הָ – הָהָר

Interrogative מה־

•מַה־: normal – מַה־דָּבָר

מָה־: before א, ע, ר – מָה־רֹאשׁ

מַה־: before ה, ח – מַה־הֵיכָל

מֶה־: before Ḡ (excluding ר) – מֶה־עָמָל

Inseparable Prepositions: לַ, בַ, כַ

1. לְ: normal – לְדָבָר
2. לְ: 1. before vocal shewa – לִשְׁמוּאֵל
   2. before יְ – לִיהוּדָה
3. Ḡַל: corresponding short vowel before a composite shewa – לֶאֱדֹם
4. לְ/לָ֫: pretonic open may receive Qames or shewa – לְלַיְלָה / לָלַיְלָה
5. לַיהוה / לֵאלֹהִים
6. •לַ: the preposition supplants the ה of the Article – לַדָּבָר

Conjunctive Vav: וַ

וְ: normal – וְדָבָר

וִ: before יְ – וִיהוּדָה

Ḡַו: corresponding short vowel before a composite shewa – וֶאֱדֹם

וְ/וָ֫: pretonic open may receive Qames or shewa – וְלַיְלָה / וָלַיְלָה

וַיהוה / וֵאלֹהִים

וּ: 1. before vocal shewa – וּשְׁמוֹ
2. before בּוֹמָף (labial letters) – וּבֵן

Preposition מן

1. •מִ: normal – מִשָּׁאוּל
2. מִ: before יְ – מִיהוּדָה
3. מֵ: before Gutturals (including ר) – מֵהַמֶּלֶךְ

Interrogative ה

1. הֶ: normal before a vowel – הֶשָּׁלוֹם
2. הַ: 1. before vocal shewa – הַדָּבָר
   2. before a Guttural (excluding ר) – הַאֵלֶּה
3. הֶ: before Ḡ (excluding ר) – הֶאָב

*G stands for Guttural letters.

MORPHOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

CHAPTER 10
NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES: THE ABSOLUTE STATE
SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES WITH NOUNS

10.1. Introduction: Review the laws of the Hebrew Sinai (chapter 6), and they will take you to the Hebrew promise land. Hebrew nouns and adjectives have gender (masculine, feminine, but not neuter), number (singular, plural and dual), and state (absolute – for a word standing independently or absolutely; and construct – for a word constructed onto or connected with another word).

10.2. Hebrew Nouns

In general, Hebrew has two noun patterns:

1. Segolate Nouns: Nouns with one originally short vowel (at least in the singular)[58] – מֶלֶךְ < *מַלְכ.
2. Non-Segolate Nouns: Nouns with more than one originally short vowel, some examples:

דָּבָר < *דַּבַר	two originally short vowels
נָבִיא < *נַבִיא	an historic long vowel and originally short vowel
סוּס < סוּס	an historic long vowel

Segolate Nouns will be covered in chapters 15-16; chapters 10-13 will cover Non-Segolate Nouns.

10.3. Nouns and Adjectives: Masculine and Feminine Singular Absolute

Masculine Singular Absolute nouns and adjectives do not have a characteristic ending, but Feminine Singular Absolute has a characteristic ending, ◌ָה – an accented Qames with a ה. The adding of the Qames and ה shifts the accent to the end of the word. A box, in which the last letter of the word is placed, emphasizes the shifting of the accent – ◌ָה.

Nouns	Boxes		
	1	2	3
Masculine Singular Absolute: None	סוּס	נָבִיא	עוֹלָם
	horse	prophet	eternity
Feminine Singular Absolute: ◌ָה	סוּסָה	נְבִיאָה	
	mare	prophetess	

[58] This excludes mono-syllabic words like יָד, which follows the non-Segolate pattern.

Adjectives

	4	5
Masculine Singular Absolute: None	יָשָׁר straight	חָכָם wise
Feminine Singular Absolute: ־ָה	יְשָׁרָה straight	חֲכָמָה wise

1. Explanation of the Forms

Nouns

1. Masculine:
   סוּס is a mono-syllabic (one-syllabled) noun with an historic long vowel (1.8.2.1 and 6.2.3).

   Feminine:
   The feminine ending shifts the accent to the end of the word – סוּסָה.

2. Masculine:
   נָבִיא is a noun with two syllables: the first syllable has a Qames, which was a Patah in Proto-Hebrew (6.2.1) – *נַבִיא. Because the first syllable is in the pretonic opened position, the original Patah lengthens to Qames (6.3.2) – *נַבִיא > נָבִיא.

   Feminine:
   נְבִיאָה: The accent shifts from the ב to the א. The original Patah in the first syllable, now in the pro-pretonic opened position, reduces to vocal shewa (6.2.2; 6.3.5)[59] – *נַבִיאָה > נְבִיאָה.

3. עוֹלָם is a masculine noun with two syllables: the first syllable with a historic long Holem-Vav, the final syllable with a Qames, which was a Patah in Proto-Hebrew. The original short Patah lengthens to Qames in a closed accented syllable (6.3.1) – *עוֹלַם > עוֹלָם.

Adjectives

4. Masculine:
   יָשָׁר is an adjective with two syllables: both syllables have Qames, which were Patahs in Proto-Hebrew – *יַשַׁר (6.2.1). Biblical Hebrew lengthens Patah to

[59] The vocal shewa also usually indicates an original short vowel (normally Patah), (6.2.2 and footnote 13).

Qames in closed accented syllables (6.3.1) and in pretonic opened syllables (6.3.2) – *יַשַׁר > *יָשָׁר > יָשָׁר.

Feminine:
יְשָׁרָה: The accent shifts from the שׁ to the ר. The original Patah under the שׁ, in the pre-tonic opened position, lengthens to Qames (6.3.2). The original Patah under the י, in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduces to vocal shewa (6.3.5) – *יַשָׁרָה > *יָשָׁרָה > יְשָׁרָה.

5. חָכָם is like יָשָׁר, except the Guttural, in the originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, takes a composite shewa instead of a simple vocal shewa (5.7.1).

2. Attaching the Feminine Singular Absolute Boxes. Follow a three step process:
The Feminine Singular Absolute of יָשָׁר
1. Restore Proto-Hebrew vowels – יַשַׁר (6.2.1)
2. Attach the box – יַשָׁרָה
3. Work the rules of syllables – יַשָׁרָה (6.3.2) > יְשָׁרָה (6.3.5)

10.4. Nouns and Adjectives: Masculine and Feminine Plural Absolute

The endings are ים for the Masculine Plural Absolute and וֹת for the Feminine Plural Absolute.

Nouns	Boxes	1	2	3
Masculine Plural Absolute:	◌ִים	סוּסִים	נְבִיאִים	עוֹלָמִים
		horses	prophets	eternities
Feminine Plural Absolute:	◌וֹת	סוּסוֹת	נְבִיאוֹת	
		mares	prophetesses	

Adjectives		4	5
Masculine Plural Absolute:	◌ִים	יְשָׁרִים	חֲכָמִים
Feminine Plural Absolute:	◌וֹת	יְשָׁרוֹת	חֲכָמוֹת

Like 10.3.1, original Patahs in an opened pretonic syllable lengthen to Qames (6.3.2), and reduce to vocal shewa in originally opened pro-pretonic syllables (6.3.5). Attach these boxes like 10.3.2:
The Feminine Plural Absolute of חָכָם
1. Restore Proto-Hebrew vowels – חַכַם (6.2.1)
2. Attach the box – חַכַמוֹת

3. Work the rules of syllables – *חַכָּמְוֹת (6.3.2) > חֲכָמוֹת (6.3.5). Note the composite shewa under the Guttural (5.7.1).

10.5. Attaching the Feminine Plural Absolute Ending to a Feminine Singular Absolute Noun Ending in הָ

Most feminine nouns end in הָ – שָׂפָה. Before attaching the Feminine Plural Absolute ending to these words, remove the feminine singular box (הָ). A Feminine Plural Absolute box should never have a ה of the Feminine Singular Absolute in it – *banish the* ה *and its Qames first.*

Example: The Feminine Plural Absolute of שָׂפָה

1. Remove the box of the Feminine Singular Absolute – שָׂפ
2. Restore the proto-vowel Patah (6.2.1) – שַׂפ
3. Attach the Feminine Plural Absolute box – שַׂפְוֹת
4. Work the rules of syllables – שְׂפָוֹת (6.2.2)

10.6. Nouns and Adjectives: Masculine and Feminine Dual Absolute[60]

The ending is יִם־, with its box יִם. Attach this box like 10.3.2.

יָדַיִם "two hands," יוֹמַיִם "two days"

1. יָדַיִם is the dual of יָד (hand). The original short Patah (6.2.1) under the Yod lengthens to Qames in an opened pretonic syllable (6.3.2) – *יָדַיִם > יָדַיִם.
2. יוֹמַיִם is the dual of יוֹם (day).
   The historic long Holem-Vav never changes.

10.7. Hebrew Boxes for the Absolute State:

	Singular	Plural	Dual
Masculine	None	ִים	ַיִם
Feminine	ָה	ֹות	ַיִם

10.8. Syntax of Adjectives with Nouns

Adjectives modify nouns:

1. Attributively: The adjective gives an attribute to the noun: a good horse, a good mare. In English, the attributive adjective precedes its noun; in Hebrew, the attributive adjective follows its noun.

סוּס טוֹב	a good horse	Literally: a horse, a good (one)
סוּסָה טוֹבָה	a good mare	Literally: a mare, a good (one)
הַסּוּס הַטּוֹב	the good horse	Literally: the horse, the good (one)

[60] Somewhat rare, the Hebrew dual is confined normally to body parts occurring in pairs: eyes, ears, hands, and to a few common words: two days, two years.

הַסּוּסָה הַטּוֹבָה	the good mare	Literally: the mare, the good (one)
סוּסִים טוֹבִים	good horses	Literally: horses, good (ones)
סוּסוֹת טוֹבוֹת	good mares	Literally: mares, good (ones)
הַסּוּסִים הַטּוֹבִים	the good horses	Literally: the horses, the good (ones)
הַסּוּסוֹת הַטּוֹבוֹת	the good mares	Literally: the mares, the good (ones)

The attributive adjective follows its noun and agrees with it in gender, number, and definiteness:[61] if the noun has the Article, the attributive adjective has the Article; if the noun is without the Article, the attributive adjective is without the Article.

2. Predicatively: The predicate adjective asserts or declares something about a noun: the horse is good; the man is good. In English, the predicate adjective follows a linking verb (is, are, was, were, feel, etc); in Hebrew, the noun usually precedes the adjective.[62] Moreover, the noun has the Article; the adjective is without the Article. Hebrew is without a present tense of the verb "to be" (am, is, are), which English must supply from the context (9.5).

הַסּוּס טוֹב	The horse (is) good.
הַסּוּסָה טוֹבָה	The mare (is) good.
הַסּוּסִים טוֹבִים	The horses (are) good.
הַסּוּסוֹת טוֹבוֹת	The mares (are) good.

The predicate adjective usually follows its noun – though it may precede its noun for emphasis – and it agrees with its noun in gender and number, *but not in definiteness*.

10.9. Demonstrative Adjectives: Attributive and Predicative Use

Near Demonstrative

Singular		Plural	
זֶה	This (m)	אֵלֶּה	These (c= common, masculine and feminine)
זֹאת	This (f)		

Far Demonstratives (with Article)

Singular		Plural	
הַהוּא	That (m)	הָהֵמָּה, הָהֵם	Those (m)
הַהִיא	That (f)	הָהֵנָּה, הָהֵן	Those (f)

[61] See footnote 43.

[62] The adjective placed before the noun frequently emphasizes the adjective – טוֹב הַסּוּס good the horse (is) = the horse (is) good.

1. Attributive Use: Like other adjectives (10.8.1-2), the attributive demonstrative adjective follows its noun and agrees with it in gender, number, and definiteness:

הַסּוּס הַזֶּה	This horse
הַסּוּס הַהוּא	That horse
הַסּוּסָה הַזֹּאת	This mare
הַסּוּסָה הַהִיא	That mare
הַסּוּסִים הָאֵלֶּה	These horses
הַסּוּסוֹת הָהֵן	Those mares

2. Predicate Use: Only the near demonstrative adjectives are used predicatively. The near demonstrative adjective occurs before its noun and agrees with it in gender and number, *but not in definiteness* – the near demonstrative adjective is without the Article; its noun has the Article:

זֶה הַסּוּס	This (is) the horse
זֹאת הַסּוּסָה	This (is) the mare
אֵלֶּה הַסּוּסִים	These (are) the horses
אֵלֶּה הַסּוּסוֹת	These (are) the mares

10.10. Substantives: Adjectives used for Nouns

In English, plurals can function as nouns – the dead tell no tales. The adjective "dead" functions as a noun meaning "dead men." In Hebrew, plural and singular adjectives can function as a noun – הַטּוֹב The good man; הַטּוֹבִים The good men.

10.11. The Accusative/Directive הָ֫

The Accusative/Directive הָ֫ (unaccented)[63] attaches to nouns (frequently definite nouns) and to the adverb שָׁם. The meaning of this Accusative/Directive הָ֫ is direction towards a place or destination to a place.

Noun		With Accusative/Directive הָ֫	
מִצְרַיִם	Egypt	מִצְרַיְמָה	to, towards Egypt
בַּיִת	house	בַּיְתָה (or בֵּיתָה)	to, towards a house
הַיָּם	the sea	הַיָּמָּה	to, towards the sea
הָעִיר	the city	הָעִירָה	to, towards the city
Adverb			
שָׁם	there	שָׁמָּה	to, towards there

[63] Most feminine nouns end in accented Qames ה – הָ; the Accusative/Directive הָ֫ ends in an unaccented הָ֫ – הָ֫.

EXERCISE TEN

I. Questions

1. What are the basic noun patterns in Hebrew?
2. Write the boxes for the Feminine Singular Absolute, Feminine Plural Absolute, Masculine Plural Absolute, and Dual Absolute.
3. Explain the vowel changes for the word דָּבָר when the Masculine Plural Absolute box is added.
4. Discuss the attaching of the Masculine Plural Absolute box to דָּבָר.
5. Discuss the attaching of the Feminine Plural Absolute box to אַדָמָה.
6. What letter cannot go in the box of the Feminine Plural Absolute? Why?
7. Define attributive and predicate adjective. What is the word order for the attributive and predicate adjective? How does the attributive adjective agree with its noun? How does the predicate adjective agree with its noun?
8. How does the Accusative/Directive ה differ from the Feminine Singular Absolute ending?

II. Vocabulary

אָז	(adv.) then, at that time
טוֹב	(adj.) good
יָשָׁר	(adj.) straight, right
גָּדוֹל	(adj.) great
רָשָׁע	(adj.) evil, wicked
קָדוֹשׁ	(adj.) holy
רַע	(adj.) (f. רָעָה) evil
חָכָם	(adj.) wise
פְּלִשְׁתִּים	Philistines
מִדְבָּר	wilderness
זֶה	This (m)
זֹאת	This (f)
אֵלֶּה	These (c= common, masculine and feminine)
הַהוּא	That (m)
הַהִיא	That (f)
הָהֵמָּה, הָהֵם	Those (m)
הָהֵנָּה, הָהֵן	Those (f)

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

לִשְׁפֹּל　　עַמֵּי־הָאֱלֹהִים　　תְּחוֹ　　הַנְּשָׁתִי

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

חֲלוֹם　　רֶגֶל

Preposition ל

חֲלוֹם מִדְבָּר

Interrogative ה

מֶלֶךְ אָדָם

Preposition מן

הֵיכָל שֶׁהָיָה

Conjunctive ו

אֱלֹהִים פַּחַד

Interrogative מה

אֲדָמָה זאת

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – Follow 10.3.2. or 10.5. and list all steps.
   1. Feminine Singular Absolute יָבָר
   2. Masculine Plural Absolute עָמָל
   3. Feminine Plural Absolute אֲדָמָה
   4. Feminine Singular Absolute נָבִיא
   5. Feminine Plural Absolute בְּרָכָה
   6. Dual Absolute יוֹם
   7. Masculine Singular Absolute דָּבָר
   8. Feminine Singular Absolute צַדִּיק
   9. Masculine Plural Absolute כּוֹכָב
   10. Feminine Singular Absolute חָכָם
   11. Feminine Plural Absolute תְּפִלָּה
   12. Feminine Singular Absolute גָּדוֹל

4. Translation
   1. עָבַר יְהוֹשֻׁעַ אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן עִם־הָעָם וְיִשְׂרָאֵל בָּאָרֶץ עַד־הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה׃
   2. נָתַן פַּרְעֹה לְאַבְרָהָם כֶּסֶף וְזָהָב כִּי יָרַד אַבְרָהָם מִצְרַיְמָה מִן־יְרוּשָׁלַיִם׃

3. עָשָׂה יהוה אֶת־הַטּוֹב לַיּוֹם הַטּוֹב וְאֶת־הָרָשָׁע לַיּוֹם הָרֵע׃

4. בָּנָה אַהֲרֹן מִזְבֵּחַ וְעַל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ הַקָּדוֹשׁ הַהוּא זָבַח זֶבַח כַּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יהוה אֶת־מֹשֶׁה׃

5. מֹשֶׁה הָיָה גָדוֹל בָּאָרֶץ מְאֹד כִּי כָתַב אֶת־הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נָתַן יהוה׃

6. הָלַךְ שָׁאוּל הָעֵירָה וְלֹא רָדַף אַחֲרֵי־דָוִד כִּי שָׁלַח שְׁמוּאֵל הַנָּבִיא אֶת־דָּוִד אֶל־הַפְּלִשְׁתִּים׃

7. אָכַל יִשְׂרָאֵל לֶחֶם וּבָשָׂר בַּמִּדְבָּר וְלֹא שָׁמַר הַגּוֹי אֶת־הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יהוה׃

8. אָמַר דָּוִד טוֹב הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים׃

CHAPTER 11
NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES: THE CONSTRUCT STATE
ABSOLUTE AND CONSTRUCT STATE: SPECIAL CASES

דְּבַר־ ← דְּבַר ← דָּבָר

11.1. Introduction: Nouns and adjectives not standing absolutely or alone (for the Absolute State, see chapter 10) are constructed onto (or connected with) another noun. These nouns are in the Construct State. A word (or words) in the Construct State connects to a word in the Absolute State and forms a grammatical unit called a Construct Package. Only the last word in the Construct Package is in the Absolute State; all preceding words are in the Construct State. For instance, in דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים (the word of God), the first word דְּבַר is constructed onto אֱלֹהִים; therefore, דְּבַר is in the Construct State, and אֱלֹהִים is in the Absolute State.[64]

In Hebrew, the word in the Construct State always occurs before the word in the Absolute State. Most Construct Packages consist of two words, a few have more than two words (six words in Isa. 21:17): דִּבְרֵי־בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל (the words of the sons of Israel). The last word (יִשְׂרָאֵל) is in the Absolute State; the prior two words are in the Construct State.

11.2. The Construct Package and the Accent: Practically, the Construct Package has only one accent.[65] The word in the Absolute State has accent; the word (or words) in the Construct State is virtually without accent. Although the Maqqef connects the Construct Packages occasionally, the Maqqef will be used for all boxes (10.3) of the construct forms to emphasize the (practical) loss of the accent.

11.3. Nouns and Adjectives: Masculine Singular Construct

For all these forms, the accent (virtually) shifts to the following word.

Nouns	Box (10.3.)	1	2	3
Masculine Singular Construct	־□	סוּס־	נְבִיא־	דְּבַר־
Adjectives		4	5	
Masculine Singular Construct		יְשַׁר־	חֲכַם־	

[64] In a Construct Package, the word in the Absolute State is a Genitive (as in Arabic).

[65] When a Maqqef (see 5.5) connects words in a Construct Package, the word (or words) in the Construct State completely surrenders its accent. Without a Maqqef, words in the Construct State may receive a conjunctive or a weak disjunctive accent. The words in the Construct State are *practically* without accent.

1. Explanation of the Forms
   Nouns:
   1. סוּס־ – Because סוּס is a mono-syllabic noun with an historic long vowel (1.8.2.1), סוּס is unchanged in the Construct State.
   2 נְבִיא־ – The final syllable, with the historic long vowel (1.8.2.1), is unchanged. In the first syllable, the original Patah *נַבִיא (6.2.1), in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, reduces to vocal shewa (6.3.5 and compare 10.3.1.2).
   3. דְּבַר־ – Both syllables originally had Patah *דַּבַר (6.2.1). The final syllable, closed and unaccented, preserves the original Patah (6.3.3); the first syllable, an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, reduces the original Patah to vocal shewa (6.3.5).

   Adjectives:
   4. יְשַׁר־ – This adjective is like the noun in 11.3.1.3.
   5. חֲכַם־ – This adjective is like 11.3.1.4 and 11.3.1.3, except the Guttural, in the originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, takes a composite shewa instead of a simple vocal shewa.

2. Attaching the Masculine Singular Construct Box
   Masculine Singular Construct of יְשָׁר:
   1. Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels – יַשַׁר (6.2.1)
   2. Add the box – יַשַׁם־
   3. Work the rules of syllables – יַשַׁם־ (6.3.3), יְשַׁם־ (6.3.5)

11.4. Nouns and Adjectives: Masculine Plural Construct

Nouns	Box (10.3)	1	2	3
Masculine Plural Construct	־ִים	סוּסֵי־	נְבִיאֵי־	דְּבָרֵי־
Adjectives		4	5	
		יְשָׁרֵי־	חֲכָמֵי־	

1. Explanation of the Forms
   Nouns:
   1. סוּסֵי־ – The historic long Shureq (1.8.2.1) never changes, even in the Construct State.
   2. נְבִיאֵי־ – The final syllable with the historic long Hireq-Yod (1.8.2.1) is unchanged. In the first syllable, the original Patah *נַבִיאֵי (6.2.1), in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, reduces to vocal shewa (6.3.5 and compare 10.3.1.2).

3. דִּבְרֵי־ – This word was originally *דַּבְרֵי־. Both the first and second syllables, in originally opened pro-pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewas – *דִּבְרֵי־ (6.3.5). Since a word cannot begin with two vocal shewas, the first vocal shewa becomes a Hireq – דִּבְרֵי־ (3.2.2.1).

Adjectives:

4. יִשְׁרֵי־ – This adjective is like the noun in 11.4.1.3.
5. חַכְמֵי־ – This adjective is like 11.4.1.3 and 11.4.1.4 except the Guttural receives a Patah (5.7.3) instead of a Hireq (3.2.2.1).

2. Attaching the Masculine Plural Construct Box

Masculine Plural Construct of חָכָם:

1. Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels – חַכַם (6.2.1)
2. Add the box – חַכַמֵי־
3. Work the rules of syllables – חִכְמֵי־ (6.3.5), חַכְמֵי־ (3.2.2.1)

11.5. Nouns and Adjectives: Feminine Singular Construct

Nouns	Box (10.3)	1	2
Feminine Singular Construct	־תַ[66]	סוּסַת־	נְבִיאַת־
Adjectives		3	4
		יִשְׁמַת־	חַכְמַת־

1. Explanation of the Forms

Nouns:

1. סוּסַת־ – The historic long Shureq (1.8.2.1) is unchanged.
2. נְבִיאַת־ – The middle syllable, with the historic long Hireq-Yod (1.8.2.1), is unchanged; under the first letter, the original Patah *נַבִיאַת־ (6.2.1), in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, reduces to vocal shewa (6.3.5 and compare 10.3.1.2).

Adjectives:

3. יִשְׁרַת־ – This adjective was originally *יַשְׁרַת־. The Patahs of the first two syllables, in the originally opened pro-pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewas – *יִשְׁרַת־ (6.3.5). The first vocal shewa becomes a Hireq (3.2.2.1).

---

[66] The ending ת_ was the original feminine ending – *תּוֹרַת. When this form received accent *תּוֹרַת, the ת disappeared, and the original Patah lengthened to Qames by compensation for the loss of the ת – *תּוֹרָ. The ה (phoney ה) was added to aid in reading an unpointed text: the ה indicates a preceding Qames תורה = תּוֹרָה (footnote 26).

4. חַכְמַת־ – This adjective is like 11.5.1.3; 11.4.1.3; 11.4.1.4, except the Guttural receives a Patah (5.7.3) instead of a Hireq (3.2.2.1).

2. Attaching the Feminine Singular Construct Box
Words ending in הָ֫ follow a four step process: Feminine Singular Construct of נְבִיאָה
1. Remove the Feminine Singular Absolute box הָ֫ – נְבִיא
Never place the ה of the Feminine Singular Absolute in a box.
2. Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels – נַבִיא (6.2.3; 6.2.2)
3. Add the box – נַבִיאַת־
4. Work the rules of syllables – נְבִיאַת־ (6.3.5)

11.6. Nouns and Adjectives: Feminine Plural Construct

Nouns	Box (10.3)	1	2
Feminine Plural Construct	־וֹת	סוּסוֹת־	נְבִיאוֹת־
Adjectives		3	4
		יְשָׁרוֹת־	חֲכָמוֹת־

1. Explanation of the Forms
Nouns:
1. סוּסוֹת־ – The historic long Shureq (1.8.2.1) is unchanged.
2. נְבִיאוֹת־ – The historic long Hireq-Yod (1.8.2.1) is unchanged. Under the first letter, the original Patah *נַבִיאוֹת (6.2.1), in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable, reduces to a vocal shewa (6.3.5 and compare 10.3.1.2).

Adjectives:
3. יְשָׁרוֹת־ – This adjective was originally *יַשָׁרוֹת. The Patahs of first two syllables, in the originally opened pro-pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewas *יְשְׁרוֹת (6.3.5). Because a word cannot begin with two vocal shewas, the first vocal shewa becomes a Hireq (3.2.2.1).
4. חֲכָמוֹת־ – This adjective is like 11.5.1.3; 11.4.1.3; 11.4.1.4, except the Guttural receives a Patah (5.7.3) instead of a Hireq (3.2.2.1).

2. Attaching the Feminine Plural Construct Box
Feminine Plural Construct of חָכְמָה:
1. Remove the Feminine Singular Absolute box – חָכְמָ הָ֫
Never place a ה of the Feminine Singular Absolute in a box.
2. Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels – חַכַמ (6.2.1; 6.2.2)
3. Add the box – חֲכַמוֹת־

4. Work the rules of syllables – חָכְמוֹת־ (6.3.5), חֲכָמוֹת־ (3.2.2.1)

11.7. Nouns: Masculine and Feminine Dual Construct

The form is like the Masculine Plural Construct – ־ֵי: יְדֵי. The original Patah under the Yod reduces to vocal shewa in an opened pro-pretonic syllable (6.3.5). Attaching this box is like 11.4.1.2.

11.8. Hebrew Boxes: Absolute and Construct

	Abs. Sg.	Constr. Sg.	Abs. Pl.	Constr. Pl.
Masculine	None	־	־ִים	־ֵי
Feminine	־ָה	־ַת	־ֹות	־ות
Dual		"of"	־ַיִם	־ֵי

דָּבָר → דְּבַר־ → דִּבְרֵי־ → דִּבְרֵי־ : Word "of"

11.9. Syntax of a Construct Package

1. In a Construct Package, only the last word in the package (the word in the Absolute) may have the Article: a word in the Construct State *never* has an Article. If the last word in a Construct Package has the Article (or is definite, see footnote 43), the entire package is definite.[67]

   דְּבַר הָאָדָם "the word of the man," not הַדְּבַר אָדָם or הַדְּבַר הָאָדָם
   The last two constructions are impossible because a word in the Construct State *never* has the Article.

2. In a Construct Package, the word in the Absolute State often functions like an adjective to modify the word in the Construct State.

מְקוֹם הַקֹּדֶשׁ	the place of holiness = the holy place
מֹאזְנֵי צֶדֶק	scales of righteousness = righteous scales
אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים	man of God = godly man

[67] Therefore, if a direct object is a definite Construct Package, את (אֵת־), the marker of the Definite Direct Object (7.7), often preceeds the Construct Package – שָׁמַר יוֹסֵף אֶת־דְּבַר־הַחֲלוֹם "Joseph kept the matter (word) of the dream."

11.10. Absolute and Construct State: Special Cases

1. Contraction:[68] words with accented יַ (ay) often contract to יְ when unaccented:

Absolute Singular	Construct Singular	Absolute Dual	Construct Dual
עַיִן[69]	עֵין־	עֵינַיִם	עֵינֵי־
בַּיִת	בֵּית־	מַיִם	מֵי־

2. Irregular and Special Nouns

Language tends to conform rare, irregular forms to more common, regular forms in the language. Common irregular forms, however, often survive the pressure of a language to conform. These forms require special attention.

	Absolute Singular		Construct Singular	Absolute Plural	Construct Plural
1.	בֵּן	son	בֶּן־	בָּנִים	בְּנֵי־
2.	אִישׁ	man	אִישׁ־	אֲנָשִׁים	אַנְשֵׁי־
3.	אִשָּׁה	woman	אֵשֶׁת־	נָשִׁים	נְשֵׁי־
4.	יוֹם	day	יוֹם־	יָמִים	יְמֵי־
5.	עַם	people	עַם־	עַמִּים	עַמֵּי־
6.	הַר	mountain	הַר־	הָרִים	הָרֵי־
7.	עִיר	city (f)	עִיר־	עָרִים	עָרֵי־
8.	רֹאשׁ	head	רֹאשׁ־	רָאשִׁים	רָאשֵׁי־

1. בֵּן: The original Proto-Hebrew was בִּן. In a closed accented syllable, the Hireq lengthens to Sere בֵּן (6.3.1). When the word loses its accent in the construct, the Sere shortens to Segol in a closed unaccented syllable, בֶּן־ (6.3.3). The expected form in the absolute plural is *בֵּנִים, but בָּנִים is the actual form. Perhaps this assimilates to the דְּבָרִים pattern. The construct plural form is regular.
2. אִישׁ: The singular and the plural indicate different roots – אישׁ in the singular, אנשׁ in the plural.
3. אִשָּׁה: This word indicates perhaps three different roots: (ת)אנשׁ(?) in the absolute singular, אשׁת in the construct singular, נשׁ in the plural. Notice the absolute plural form נָשִׁים is a feminine word with an apparent masculine plural ending.
4. יוֹם: The singular root is יוֹם, the plural root – *יָם.

[68] Another common contraction is aw > ō, for example, *הַוּשִׁיב > הוֹשִׁיב.

[69] When contraction occurs, the Hireq is lost. Actually, the contraction occurred before the Hireq was added.

5. עַם: The original root was עמם, but Hebrew rarely wrote the same letter consecutively; therefore, Hebrew wrote עַם with a "hovering" Dagesh – עַמּ. When something is written at the end of the word, as in the plural, the "hovering" Dagesh Forte lands – עַמִּים (footnote 25).
6. הַר: This is like עם (הרר root) except the hovering Dagesh Forte cannot land in a ר (5.7.2), so the preceding Patah lengthens to Qames by compensation – הָרִים* > הָרִים.
7. עִיר: In the plural, the root is ערר. When the hovering Dagesh lands, the preceding Patah lengthens by compensation.
8. רֹאשׁ: The plurals have the irreducible Qames by compensation for the quiesced Alef (footnote 7).

EXERCISE ELEVEN

I. Questions

1. Describe the Absolute and Construct State: especially discuss the role of accent.
2. Write the boxes for the Construct State: Feminine Singular and Plural, Masculine Singular and Plural, and Dual.
3. Explain the vowel changes for the word דָּבָר, when adding the Masculine Plural Construct box.
4. Discuss the attaching of the Masculine Plural Construct box to דְּבָר and the Feminine Singular Construct box to שְׁפָה.
5. In the Feminine Construct box, which letter is never placed in a box? Why?
6. In a Construct Package, which word has the Article?
7. How does the word in the Absolute State sometimes function in a Construct Package?
8. List the two common contractions in Hebrew.

II. Vocabulary

שָׁפַט	(he) judged	צַדִּיק	(adj.) righteous
מִשְׁפָּט	judgment, justice, custom	עַיִן	(f) eye, well
מִצְוָה	commandment	לְעֵינֵי	to the eyes of, i.e., before
צְדָקָה	righteousness	לִפְנֵי־	to the face of, i.e., before[70]
שָׂרָה	(or שָׂרַי) Sarah	אַחֵר	(adj.) another, other
שָׁכַח	(he) forgot		(plural, אֲחֵרִים)
בָּחַר בְּ	(he) chose	אַף	also, even
זָקֵן	(adj.) old, elder	שְׁלֹמֹה	Solomon

[70] See 14.4.4.

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

כָּל־הָאָרֶץ　　גִּלְגֹּלֶת　　יַיִן　　הַמְּלָכִים

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

זָבַח　　תְּהִלָּה　　הָרִים
Conjunctive ו

שֶׁבֶת　　יהוה　　חֲלוֹם

Interrogative ה

עַיִן　　יְלִיד　　אֱדוֹם

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – For each answer give the following steps:
   1) Remove the Feminine Singular Absolute box, ָה (if necessary).
   2) Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels.
   3) Attach the appropriate box.
   4) Work the five rules of Hebrew syllables.

1. Masculine Plural Construct דָּבָר
2. Masculine Singular Construct חָכָם
3. Masculine Plural Construct כּוֹכָב
4. Feminine Singular Construct סוּסָה
5. Feminine Plural Absolute אֲדָמָה
6. Feminine Plural Construct צְדָקָה
7. Masculine Singular Construct עָמָל
8. Masculine Plural Absolute נָבִיא
9. Feminine Singular Construct אֲדָמָה
10. Masculine Singular Construct צַדִּיק
11. Feminine Singular Construct תְּפִלָּה
12. Feminine Plural Construct חֲכָם

4. Translation

1. בַּיָּמִים הָהֵמָּה שָׁפַט שְׁמוּאֵל אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּצִדָּקָה וּבְנֵי־שְׁמוּאֵל הָיוּ רָעִים בְּעֵינֵי־יהוה:
2. אֶכְלוּ מֹשֶׁה וְהָעָם עִם־יהוה עַל־הָהָר לֶחֶם:
3. רְשָׁעִים אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר לַיהוה מְאֹד:
4. לָקַח פַּרְעֹה אֶת־שָׂרָה אֵשֶׁת אַבְרָהָם וְלֹא יָדַע כִּי אַבְרָהָם נָבִיא:
5. רָאָה שָׁאוּל וְהִנֵּה עָמַד שְׁמוּאֵל לִפְנֵי־בֵית־יהוה וְלֹא דִבֶּר לְשָׁאוּל דָּבָר:
6. שָׁכְחוּ בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־מִצְוֹת־יהוה וּמֹשֶׁה שָׁמַר אֶת־דִּבַּר־יהוה כָּל־הַיָּמִים:
7. אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר מֹשֶׁה אֶל־כָּל־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל בַּמִּדְבָּר:
8. בָּחַר יהוה בְּדָוִד לְמֶלֶךְ עַל־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְהַדָּבָר הָיָה רַע בְּעֵינֵי־שָׁאוּל:

CHAPTER 12
PRONOMINAL SUFFIXES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS

12.1. Introduction: When receiving pronominal suffixes, nouns and adjectives undergo the same vowel changes discussed in the last two chapters (6.3).

12.2. Boxes for Pronominal Suffixes for Masculine Nouns and Adjectives

	Singular Nouns	Plural Nouns	
1cs	־ִי	־ַי	my
2ms	־ְךָ (vocal shewa)[71]	־ֶיךָ	your
2fs	־ֵךְ	־ַיִךְ	your
3ms	־ֹו	־ָיו	his
3fs	־ָהּ	־ֶיהָ	her
1cp	־ֵנוּ	־ֵינוּ	our
2mp	־ְכֶם (silent shewa)[71]	־ֵיכֶם	your
2fp	־ְכֶן (silent shewa)[71]	־ֵיכֶן	your
3mp	־ָם	־ֵיהֶם	their
3fp	־ָן	־ֵיהֶן	their

1. Attach the boxes in the left column with singular nouns; the boxes in the right column with plural nouns.
2. The forms 1cs and 1cp are first common singular and first common plural. Common includes both masculine and feminine.
3. The boxes of the plural nouns have Sere or Segol (except 1cs, 2fs, 3ms): Segol when the final syllable has a Qames (2ms, 3fs: compare the Segol with the Article הֶעָמָל); otherwise, a Sere.

12.3. סוּס: Singular and Plural with Pronominal Suffixes

	Singular Noun		Plural Noun	
1cs	סוּסִי	my horse	סוּסַי	my horses
2ms	סוּסְךָ	your horse	סוּסֶיךָ	your horses
2fs	סוּסֵךְ	your horse	סוּסַיִךְ	your horses
3ms	סוּסוֹ	his horse	סוּסָיו	his horses

[71] These shewas are technically Medial (Political) Shewas: silent enough to close a syllable, vocal enough to keep the Dagesh Lene out of the following כ. This "middle" shewa falls between silent and vocal shewa. *For now, consider the shewa of the 2ms vocal and the shewa of the 2mp, 2fp silent.*

3fs	סוּסָהּ	her horse	סוּסֶיהָ	her horses
1cp	סוּסֵנוּ	our horse	סוּסֵינוּ	our horses
2mp	סוּסְכֶם	your horse	סוּסֵיכֶם	your horses
2fp	סוּסְכֶן	your horse	סוּסֵיכֶן	your horses
3mp	סוּסָם	their horse	סוּסֵיהֶם	their horses
3fp	סוּסָן	their horse	סוּסֵיהֶן	their horses

When the pronominal suffix is attached to the word סוּס, the accent shifts down the word: סוּס – סוּסִי. סוּס never changes because of the historic long Shureq (1.8.2.1 compare 10.3.1.1; 11.3.1.1).

12.4. דָּבָר: Singular and Plural with Pronominal Suffixes

	Singular Noun		Plural Noun	
1cs	דְּבָרִי	my word	דְּבָרַי	my words
2ms	דְּבָרְךָ	your word	דְּבָרֶיךָ	your words
2fs	דְּבָרֵךְ	your word	דְּבָרַיִךְ	your words
3ms	דְּבָרוֹ	his word	דְּבָרָיו	his words
3fs	דְּבָרָהּ	her word	דְּבָרֶיהָ	her words
1cp	דְּבָרֵנוּ	our word	דְּבָרֵינוּ	our words
2mp	דְּבַרְכֶם	your word	דְּבְרֵיכֶם	your words
2fp	דְּבַרְכֶן	your word	דְּבְרֵיכֶן	your words
3mp	דְּבָרָם	their word	דְּבְרֵיהֶם	their words
3fp	דְּבָרָן	their word	דְּבְרֵיהֶן	their words

1. Explanation of the Forms

   Form דָּבָר with suffixes from the original form *דַּבַּר (6.2.1).

   1. The Singular Noun

      1. For all forms except 2mp, 2fp, the accent shifts down the word, leaving the original Patah under the ב in the opened pretonic position; therefore, the original Patah lengthens to Qames (*דְּבָרִי, 6.3.2). The original Patah under the ר, in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduces to vocal shewa – דְּבָרִי (6.3.5).
      2. For the forms 2mp, 2fp, the accent shifts over the כֶם, כֶן suffixes. This leaves the preceding syllable closed and unaccented; therefore, the original Patah remains under the ב – *דַּבַּרְכֶם (6.3.3). The Patah under the ר, in the opened pro-pretonic syllable, reduces to vocal shewa – דְּבַרְכֶם (6.3.5).

3. The 2ms form – דְּבָרְךָ – frequently has a Metheg because the last letter of the root has a vocal shewa. [72]

2. The Plural Noun
   1. The forms with suffixes 1cs-1cp shift the accent over the last letter of the root. The original Patah of the second root letter, in the opened pretonic position, lengthens to Qames – *דְּבָרַי (6.3.2). The original Patah under the first letter of the root, now in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduces to vocal shewa – דְּבָרַי (6.3.5).

   2. The forms with suffixes 2mp-3fp shift the accent over the suffixes. The Patahs under the first and second root letters, in the opened pro-pretonic position *דַּבָּרֵיכֶם, reduce to vocal shewas (6.3.5) – *דְּבְרֵיכֶם. The first shewa becomes Hireq דְּבְרֵיכֶם (3.2.2.1).

   3. If a word begins with a Guttural, for example חָכָם, the Guttural will receive a composite shewa (usually Hatef-Patah) – עֲמָלִי (compare 11.3.1.5) and a Patah when two vocal shewas begin a word – חַכְמֵיהֶם (compare 11.5.1.4 and 3.2.2.1).

(2) Attaching Pronominal Suffixes on Masculine Nouns.
Attach a 1cs suffix on the singular noun דָּבָר
1. Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels – דַּבַר (6.2.1)
2. Add the pronominal suffix box – דַּבַּ֫ר
3. Work the rules of syllables – *דַּבָּרִי (6.3.2), דְּבָרִי (6.3.5)

12.5. Syntax: The Pronominal Suffix

Because a noun with a pronominal suffix is definite, אֵת (or אֶת־) frequently precedes a direct object with a pronominal suffix[73] – שָׁמַר הָאִישׁ אֶת־סוּסוֹ The man kept his horse.

EXERCISE TWELVE

I. Questions

1. List the boxes of the pronominal suffixes for singular and plural nouns.
2. Explain the vowel pattern changes when 1cs and 3mp pronominal suffixes attach to the singular noun – דָּבָר, and when a 3mp pronominal suffix attaches to the plural of the noun – דָּבָר.

---

[72] Footnote 15 (3.2.2.3).

[73] Footnote 43.

3. What is a Political (Medial) Shewa?
4. Discuss the attaching of pronominal suffixes to masculine nouns.

II. Vocabulary

חָרָה	to be hot, angry	לֵאמֹר	saying
אַף	nose	הֵמָּה	they
חָרָה אַפִּי בְ[74]	my nose became hot, i.e., I became angry with	חָכְמָה	wisdom
		אֵלִיָּהוּ	Elijah
זָכַר	(he) remembered	עָזַב	(he) abandoned, left, forsook
כָּבוֹד	(noun) glory, riches	כֵּן	so, thus, rightly
בָּטַח	(he) trusts, trusted	שָׁאַל	(he) asked
כְּנַעַן	Canaan	צָבָא	army, host
כָּבֵד	(adj.) heavy, severe	שֵׁם	name (with suffix 3ms שְׁמוֹ)

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

וַיִּרְבְּ כְּתָנְתִּי צוֹת פְּלִשְׁתִּים

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words

Article

הוֹד הָרִים עַיִן

Preposition ל

הַמֶּלֶךְ יְדֵי אִשָּׁה

Preposition מן

חָצִיר פַּחַד עָפָר

[74] חָרָה אַפִּי, אַף: Note the "hovering" Dagesh, footnote 25.

3. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words -- for each answer give the following steps
   1) Restore the Proto-Hebrew vowels
   2) Attach the appropriate pronominal suffix box
   3) Work the five rules of Hebrew syllables

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	2ms	דָּבָר	6.	1cp	דָּבָר
2.	2mp	עָמָל	7.	3mp	נָבִיא
3.	3ms	נָבִיא	8.	2ms	נָחָשׁ
4.	3fs	נָחָשׁ	9.	1cs	שַׁבָּת
5.	1cp	כּוֹכָב	10.	3fp	כּוֹכָב

4. Translation

1. חָרָה אַף־יהוה בִּבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל כִּי הָלְכוּ אַחֲרֵי אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ־כְּנָעַן:
2. יהוה אֱלֹהַי וְאוֹרִי מֶשְׁמוֹ בָּטַח צַדִּיק:
3. בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא בָּאוּ אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר אֶל־הֵיכַל־יהוה בִּירוּשָׁלַיִם וְלֹא רָאוּ אֶת־הַכֹּהֵן וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ אֶת־לְוֹל־הַמַּלְךָ:
4. חָרָה אַף־שָׁאוּל בְּדָוִד מְאֹד כִּי רָאָה כִּי הָלַךְ הָעָם אַחֲרֵי־דָוִד וְאַחֲרֵי־אֲנָשָׁיו:
5. נָתַן אֱלֹהִים לִשְׁלֹמֹה חָכְמָה וְכָבוֹד כִּי לֹא שָׁאַל לְזָהָב וְלִכְסֶף:
6. הָאֵלֶּה הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת־שָׁאוּל אֲשֶׁר עָזְבוּ אֶת־אֱלֹהִים וַאֲשֶׁר שָׁכְחוּ אֶת־עַמּוֹ:
7. אִמְרָה הַרְשָׁעִים מִי יהוה וּמִי נְבִיאוֹ וּמַה־דִּבְרוֹ:
8. הָיָה דְּבַר־יהוה אֶל־אֵלִיָּהוּ לֵאמֹר חָרָה אַפִּי בִּבְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל כִּי זָבְחוּ לֵאלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים:

CHAPTER 13
PRONOMINAL SUFFIXES WITH FEMININE NOUNS
MORE IRREGULAR NOUNS

13.1. Introduction: Boxes with pronominal suffixes for feminine nouns and adjectives are like the pronominal suffixes for masculine nouns and adjectives (12.2).

13.2. תּוֹרָה: Singular and Plural with Pronominal Suffixes

	Singular Noun		Plural Noun	
1cs	תּוֹרָתִי	my law	תּוֹרוֹתַי	my laws
2ms	תּוֹרָתְךָ	your law	תּוֹרוֹתֶיךָ	your laws
2fs	תּוֹרָתֵךְ	your law	תּוֹרוֹתַיִךְ	your laws
3ms	תּוֹרָתוֹ	his law	תּוֹרוֹתָיו	his laws
3fs	תּוֹרָתָהּ	her law	תּוֹרוֹתֶיהָ	her laws
1cp	תּוֹרָתֵנוּ	our law	תּוֹרוֹתֵינוּ	our laws
2mp	תּוֹרַתְכֶם	your law	תּוֹרוֹתֵיכֶם	your laws
2fp	תּוֹרַתְכֶן	your law	תּוֹרוֹתֵיכֶן	your laws
3mp	תּוֹרָתָם	their law	תּוֹרוֹתֵיהֶם	their laws
3fp	תּוֹרָתָן	their law	תּוֹרוֹתֵיהֶן	their laws

1. Explanation of the Forms

When adding pronominal suffixes to most feminine words, connect the pronominal suffix to the original feminine form (footnote 66). Restore the original feminine form for singular nouns by removing the Feminine Singular Absolute Box תּוֹרָה > תּוֹר and by adding the Feminine Singular Construct Box ת□ > תּוֹרַת (without Maqqef) and then by restoring the Proto-Hebrew vowels. For the original feminine form for plural nouns, remove the Feminine Singular Absolute Box and connect the Feminine Plural Construct Box וֹת□ (without Maqqef). The following discussion assumes these observations.

1. The Singular Noun
    1. For all forms except 2mp and 2fp, the accent shifts to the restored ת of the feminine (or to the ךָ of the 2ms form) – *תּוֹרַתִי. The original Patah, in the opened pretonic position, lengthens to Qames – תּוֹרָתִי (6.3.2). The historic long Holem-Vav never changes.
    2. For the forms 2mp and 2fp, the accent shifts over the כֶם, כֶן suffixes, leaving the preceding syllable closed and unaccented; therefore, the original Patah remains under the last root letter – תּוֹרַתְכֶם (compare 12.4.1.1.2).

3. The 2ms form – תּוֹרָתְךָ – frequently has a Metheg because the feminine marker ת has a vocal shewa.

2. The Plural Noun
Although the accent shifts, the preceding vowels are unchanged because they are historic long Holem-Vavs.

2. Attaching Pronominal Suffixes to Feminine Words.
Attach a 1cs suffix to the singular noun תּוֹרָה:
1. Remove the Feminine Singular Absolute Box הָ – תּוֹר
2. Add the Feminine Singular Construct Box (without Maqqef) and restore proto-vowels – תּוֹרַת
3. Add the Box of the pronominal suffix – תּוֹרָתִי (*Always place the restored feminine* ת *in the Box. Never place a* ה *of the Feminine Singular Absolute in the Box.*)
4. Work the rules of syllables – תּוֹרָתִי (6.3.2)

13.3. צְדָקָה: Singular and Plural with Pronominal Suffixes צְדָקוֹת ← צְדָקָה

	Singular Noun צְדָקָה		Plural Noun צְדָקוֹת	
1cs	צִדְקָתִי	my righteousness	צִדְקוֹתַי	my righteous acts
2ms	צִדְקָתְךָ	your righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֶיךָ	your righteous acts
2fs	צִדְקָתֵךְ	your righteousness	צִדְקוֹתַיִךְ	your righteous acts
3ms	צִדְקָתוֹ	his righteousness	צִדְקוֹתָיו	his righteous acts
3fs	צִדְקָתָהּ	her righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֶיהָ	her righteous acts
1cp	צִדְקָתֵנוּ	our righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֵינוּ	our righteous acts
2mp	צִדְקַתְכֶם	your righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֵיכֶם	your righteous acts
2fp	צִדְקַתְכֶן	your righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֵיכֶן	your righteous acts
3mp	צִדְקָתָם	their righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֵיהֶם	their righteous acts
3fp	צִדְקָתָן	their righteousness	צִדְקוֹתֵיהֶן	their righteous acts

1. Explanation of the Forms
1. Singular Noun
1. For all forms except 2mp and 2fp, the accent shifts to the restored ת of the feminine (or to the ךָ of the 2ms form) – *צַדָקְתִי. The Patah under the last root letter, in the opened pretonic position, lengthens to Qames (6.3.2) – *צַדָקָתִי. The remaining Patahs, in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewas (6.3.5) – *צִדְקָתִי. The first shewa becomes Hireq (3.2.2.1) – צִדְקָתִי.
2. For the forms 2mp and 2fp, the accent shifts over the כֶם, כֶן suffixes, leaving the preceding syllable closed and unaccented; therefore, the

original Patah remains under the last root letter – *צַדַקְתְכֶם (compare 12.4.1.1.2 and 13.2.1.1.2). The other Patahs, in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewas (6.2.5) – *צְדְקַתְכֶם. The first shewa becomes Hireq (3.2.2.1) – צִדְקַתְכֶם.

3. If a word begins with a Guttural אַדְמָה, the Guttural takes a Patah when two vocal shewas begin a word – אַדְמַתְכֶם (3.2.2.1).

2. Plural Noun
The original form is *צַדָקוֹת: when suffixes are attached, the accent shifts, and the original Patahs, in the opened pro-pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewas (6.3.5) – *צְדְקוֹתַי. The first shewa becomes Hireq – צִדְקוֹתַי (3.2.2.1).

2. Attaching Pronominal Suffixes to Feminine Words
Attach a 1cs suffix to the plural noun צְדָקָה
1. Remove the Feminine Singular Absolute Box הָ – צְדָק
2. Add the Feminine Plural Construct Box (without Maqqef) and restore proto-vowels – צַדָקוֹת (6.3.2; 6.3.5)
3. Add the Box of the pronominal suffix – צַדָקוֹתַי (*Always place the restored feminine* ת *in the Box, never a* ה *of the Feminine Singular Absolute.*)
4. Work the rules of syllables – *צְדְקוֹתַי (6.3.5), צִדְקוֹתַי (3.2.2.1)

13.4. More Irregular Nouns (11.10.2.)

	Absolute Singular		Construct Singular	Absolute Plural	Construct Plural
1.	אָב	father	אֲבִי־	אָבוֹת	אֲבוֹת־
2.	אָח	brother	אֲחִי־	אַחִים	אֲחֵי־
3.	אָחוֹת	sister	אֲחוֹת־		
4.	בַּת	daughter	בַּת־	בָּנוֹת	בְּנוֹת־
5.	אֵם	mother	אֵם־	אִמּוֹת	אִמּוֹת־
6.	שֵׁם	name	שֵׁם־ or שֵׁם־	שֵׁמוֹת	שְׁמוֹת־
7.	בַּיִת	house	בֵּית־	בָּתִּים	בָּתֵּי־

1. אָב: The singular construct preserves the old Genitive ending – Hireq-Yod. The plural forms unexpectantly end in וֹת (Compare 11.10.2.3).
2. אָח: The singular construct is like אָב. The Masculine Plural Absolute form reveals a root אחח (the Dagesh Forte is implicit); The Masculine Plural Construct has the singular root אח (indicated by the reduction of the vowel under the Alef).
3. אָחוֹת: This word shows irregularities with suffixes. See Appendix Two.
4. בַּת: The plural root is בן – בָּנוֹת, בְּנוֹת־.

5. אֵם: The root is אמם: for the plurals (and suffix forms) the Hovering Dagesh Forte lands, and the Sere reduces to Hireq in closed unaccented syllables.
6. שֵׁם: The expected singular construct form (שֵׁם־) occurs rarely, the irregular form (שֵׁם־) is common (breaking the rules of syllables, 6.3.3). The plural forms end unexpectantly in וֹת.
7. בַּיִת: The singular construct contracts ay > ē (11.10.1); the plural form is unbelievable – בָּתִּים (bāttîm).

For irregular nouns (11.10 and 13.4) with pronominal suffixes, see Paradigm Two.

Exercise Thirteen

I. Questions

1. Write the Boxes of the pronominal suffixes for singular and plural nouns.
2. How do you restore feminine nouns ending in הָ to their Proto-Hebrew forms in the singular and in the plural?
3. Discuss the attaching of the Boxes of pronominal suffixes to feminine nouns in the singular and plural.
4. With feminine nouns, which letter is always placed in the Box of pronominal suffixes? Which letter is never placed in the Box?

II. Vocabulary

אָחוֹת	sister	אֵם	mother
בַּת	daughter	אֱמֶת	truth
עֵדָה	congregation	קָבַץ	(he) assembled, gathered together
יַיִן	wine		
בְּרִית	covenant	שָׂמַח	(he) rejoices, rejoiced
כָּרַת	(he) cut	בָּכָה	(he) wept
כָּרַת בְּרִית	he cut a covenant = he made a covenant	שָׁתָה	(he) drank
		הָרַג	(he) killed
חוֹמָה	city wall	יִצְחָק	Isaac
רָעָב	famine, hunger	מָשַׁל	(he) ruled
אָח	brother	מָשַׁל בְּ	he ruled over

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

וַתִּסְּבוּ　　בְּשִׁתֶּם　　תְּוַשַּׁבְנָה　　יְבָרְכוּ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

מָה־חָיִל　　מַה־מֶּלֶךְ　　מַה־חֹשֶׁךְ

Conjunctive ו

וְיָלוֹד　　וַחֲלוֹם　　וְהַבַּיִת

Interrogative ה

הָעַיִן　　הֶבֵן　　הָאִשָּׁה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1. תּ fs construct　　תּוֹרָה → תּוֹר → תּוֹרַת־ - Law, Instruction
2. וֹת fp absolute　　אֲדָמָה → אֲדָמ → אֲדָמוֹת
3. ־י mp construct　　כּוֹכָב → כּוֹכָבִ → כּוֹכְבֵי־
4. ־ת fs construct　　צְדָקָה → צַדָּקָ → צַדְקַת־

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. וֹ 3ms	אָמָה	6. ַי 1cs	מִלְחָמָה
2. ָהּ 3fs	חוֹמָה	7. ָיהָ 3fs	תְּפִלָּה
3. ָן 3fp	יְשׁוּעָה	8. ְךָ 2ms	שָׁנָה
4. כֶם 2mp	מִצְוָה	9. ֵנוּ 1cp	אַשְׁמָה
5. ְךָ 2ms	עָפָר	10. כֶם 2mp	דָּם

5. Translation

כְּרַת אַבְרָהָם בְּרִית עִם פַּרְעֹה וְלֹא אָכְלוּ לֶחֶם וְלֹא שָׁתוּ יָיִן: 1.
wine drink not bread they ate with Covenant abraham. cut

דְּבַר־יְהוָה צַדִּיק תּוֹרָתוֹ אֱמֶת: 2.
is Truth his law is Righteous the Lord of the Word
instruction

3. אֵלֶּה הַמִּצוֹת וְהַמִּשְׁפָּטִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן יהוה לְמֹשֶׁה עַל־הָהָר:

4. קָבַץ מֹשֶׁה אֶת־כָּל־עֲדַת־יִשְׂרָאֵל לִפְנֵי־יהוָה כַּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יהוה בָּהָר הַקָּדוֹשׁ:

5. בָּכוּ כָל־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל כִּי חָרָה אַף־יהוה בְּדָוִד וּפִלְשְׁתִּים שָׂמְחוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא:

6. בְּחָכְמָתוֹ מָשַׁל שְׁלֹמֹה בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל:

7. כִּי הָיָה הָרָעָב כָּבֵד בָּאָרֶץ עָלָה אַבְרָהָם מִמִּצְרַיִם הוּא וְשָׂרָה וְיִצְחָק:

8. שָׁכְחוּ בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־מִצְוֹתָיו וְגַם תּוֹרוֹתָיו וְלֹא עָזַב אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם־אַבְרָהָם:

CHAPTER 14
PREPOSITIONS WITH PRONOMINAL SUFFIXES

14.1. Introduction: The prepositions take pronominal suffixes virtually like nouns and adjectives, but some forms must be memorized – good luck.

14.2. Inseparable Prepositions ל and ב with Pronominal Suffixes

1cs	לִי	to me	בִּי	in me
2ms	לְךָ	to you	בְּךָ	in you
2fs	לָךְ	to you	בָּךְ	in you
3ms	לוֹ	to him	בּוֹ	in him
3fs	לָהּ	to her	בָּהּ	in her
1cp	לָנוּ	to us	בָּנוּ	in us
2mp	לָכֶם	to you	בָּכֶם	in you
2fp	לָכֶן	to you	בָּכֶן	in you
3mp	לָהֶם	to them	בָּם/בָּהֶם	in them
3fp	לָהֶן	to them	בָּהֶן	in them

The pronominal suffixes with the Inseparable Prepositions ל and ב generally follow the Boxes of the pronominal suffixes of the singular noun (12.2) with the following differences:

1. In the 2fs and 1cp, the connecting vowel is Qames instead of Sere: ־ָךְ, ־ָנוּ.

2. In the 2mp-3fp, the preposition, in the opened pretonic position, lengthen the original Patah to Qames (6.3.2) – *לַכֶם > לָכֶם.

3. In the 3mp-3fp forms, the endings are הֶם, הֶן instead of ם, ן.[75]

14.3. Prepositions עִם and אֵת with Pronominal Suffixes and the Marker of the Definite Direct Object with Pronominal Suffixes

	עִם	root עמם	אֵת	root אתת	אֵת	root את (marker of direct object)
Construct	עִם־		אֶת־		אֵת־	
1cs	עִמִּי	with me	אִתִּי	with me	אֹתִי	me
2ms	עִמְּךָ	with you	אִתְּךָ	with you	אֹתְךָ	you
2fs	עִמָּךְ	with you	אִתָּךְ	with you	אֹתָךְ	you

[75] This variation drops the ה between vowels (see footnote 48), as in בָּהֶם, or with the ה dropped – בָּם.

3ms	עִמּוֹ	with him	אִתּוֹ	with him	אֹתוֹ	him
3fs	עִמָּהּ	with her	אִתָּהּ	with her	אֹתָהּ	her
1cp	עִמָּנוּ	with us	אִתָּנוּ	with us	אֹתָנוּ	us
2mp	עִמָּכֶם	with you	אִתְּכֶם	with you	אֶתְכֶם	you
2fp	עִמָּכֶן	with you	אִתְּכֶן	with you	אֶתְכֶן	you
3mp	עִמָּם, עִמָּהֶם	with them	אִתָּם	with them	אֶתְהֶם / אֹתָם	them
3fp	עִמָּהֶן	with them	אִתָּן	with them	אֶתְהֶן / אֹתָן	them

1. These prepositions (and the Marker of the Direct Object) take the suffixes of the singular noun.

2. The first two prepositions end in a doubled consonant, עמם and אתת. Hebrew frequently avoids writing consecutive consonants by the Dagesh Forte (4.3.1). Furthermore, Hebrew does not allow a Dagesh Forte in the final letter of a word if that final letter closes the syllable; therefore, the final letter, if doubled, will not admit a Dagesh Forte and the Dagesh "hovers," עִמִּי, אִתִּי (footnote 25). When these forms receive a pronominal suffix, the Hovering Dagesh Forte lands – עִמְּי, אִתְּי.

3. עִם has a Qames under the מ in 2mp-3fp forms (אֶת [with] has a vocal shewa). The 3mp form has a variant form עִמָּם (see footnotes 75 and 48).

4. אֵת (with) has a Sere in a closed accented syllable (6.3.1), but with a pronominal suffix, the Sere becomes a Hireq in a closed unaccented syllable – אִתּוֹ (6.3.3).

5. The pronominal suffixes generally follow the pattern of the pronominal suffixes with the inseparable ל and ב (14.2).

6. The marker for the definite object אֵת has an original root אתת (not אתת as the preposition אֵת [with]). The forms 1cs-1cp have a Holem after the first letter and attach suffixes like the prepositions עִם and אֵת. The forms 2mp-3fp have a Segol with the first letter (perhaps assimilating to the final Segol). The forms 3mp and 3fp may also have a variant form with Holem like the 1cs-1cp forms: אֹתָם, אֹתָן.

14.4. Prepositions אֶל, עַל, and לְפָנִים with pronominal suffixes (suffix of plural noun)

Absolute	אֶל	to, unto	עַל	upon, over	לְפָנִים	to the face, before
Construct	אֶל-		עַל-		לִפְנֵי-	to the face of
1cs	אֵלַי	unto me	עָלַי	upon me	לְפָנַי	to my face, before me
2ms	אֵלֶיךָ	unto you	עָלֶיךָ	upon you	לְפָנֶיךָ	before you
2fs	אֵלַיִךְ	unto you	עָלַיִךְ	upon you	לְפָנַיִךְ	before you

3ms	אֵלָיו	unto him	עָלָיו	upon him	לְפָנָיו	before him
3fs	אֵלֶיהָ	unto her	עָלֶיהָ	upon her	לְפָנֶיהָ	before her
1cp	אֵלֵינוּ	unto us	עָלֵינוּ	upon us	לְפָנֵינוּ	before us
2mp	אֲלֵיכֶם	unto you	עֲלֵיכֶם	upon you	לִפְנֵיכֶם	before you
2fp	אֲלֵיכֶן	unto you	עֲלֵיכֶן	upon you	לִפְנֵיכֶן	before you
3mp	אֲלֵיהֶם	unto them	עֲלֵיהֶם	upon them	לִפְנֵיהֶם	before them
3fp	אֲלֵיהֶן	unto them	עֲלֵיהֶן	upon them	לִפְנֵיהֶן	before them

1. These prepositions take the pronominal suffixes of plural nouns.[76]

2. When the first syllable is opened and pretonic, the original short vowels lengthen – עָלַיִךְ, אֵלַיִךְ. When the first syllable is an originally opened pro-pretonic, the original short vowels reduce to Hatef-Patah (ֱ) – עֲלֵיכֶן, אֲלֵיכֶם.

3. In the 2ms and 3fs forms, the vowel under the second letter (ל) is Segol (instead of Sere) when followed by a syllable with a Qames (12.2.3).

4. The Hebrew word for face, פָּנִים, is always plural. To attach the pronominal suffixes, remove the Masculine Plural Absolute Box ◌ִים (compare the removing of Feminine Singular and Plural Absolute before adding suffixes, 13.2.2.1 and 13.3.2.1), then add the Boxes of the plural nouns. פָּנִים with the Inseparable Preposition ל means "to the face (before)." With the pronominal suffixes 1cs-1cp, the original Patah, in the opened pretonic syllable, lengthens to Qames לְפָנַי (6.3.2). With the pronominal suffixes 2mp-3fp (and in the Construct State), the original Patahs, in the opened pro-pretonic syllables, reduce to vocal shewas *לְפָנְיכֶם (6.3.5). Then the first shewa becomes Hireq לִפְנֵיכֶם (3.2.2.1).

14.5. The Inseparable Preposition כ with Pronominal Suffixes

1cs	כָּמֹונִי	like (as) me	1cp	כָּמֹונוּ	like (as) us
2ms	כָּמֹוךָ	like (as) you	2mp	כָּכֶם	like (as) you
2fs	כָּמֹוךְ	like (as) you	2fp	כָּכֶן	like (as) you
3ms	כָּמֹוהוּ	like (as) him	3mp	כְּמוֹהֶם[77]	like (as) them
3fs	כָּמֹוהָ	like (as) her	3fp	כְּמוֹהֶן[77]	like (as) them

[76] These suffixes, in fact, may not be plural suffixes because their original forms have a Yod – אלי and עלי, as in Arabic.

[77] Variant forms – כָּהֵם, כָּהֵן.

1. In the forms 1cs-1cp and 3mp-3fp, the pronominal suffixes are attached directly[78] to *כְמוֹ, an extended form of כ. Note the 3mp-3fp endings pull the tone to the end of the word, leaving the כ in an opened pro-pretonic syllable, thus reducing the original Patah to shewa.

2. The forms 2mp-2fp attach directly to the Inseparable Preposition כ. The first letter, always in the pretonic position, receives a Qames.

3. Note the following variations in the pronominal suffixes: 1cs נִי for ִי , 3ms הוּ for וֹ, and 3fs הָ for ָה . These suffix variations have consonantal buffers to attach suffixes to a word ending in a vowel thus avoiding consecutive vowels.

14.6. The Preposition מִן with Pronominal Suffixes

1cs	מִמֶּנִּי	from me	1cp	מִמֶּנּוּ	from us
2ms	מִמְּךָ	from you	2mp	מִכֶּם	from you
2fs	מִמֵּךְ	from you	2fp	מִכֶּן	from you
3ms	מִמֶּנּוּ	from him	3mp	מֵהֶם	from them
3fs	מִמֶּנָּה	from her	3fp	מֵהֶן	from them

1. The forms 1cs, 3ms, 3fs, and 1cp reduplicate the preposition מִן – מנמן before attaching the pronominal suffixes. These suffixes connect to the preposition with a Segol.

2. The 3ms form, מִמֶּנּוּ, is contracted from *מִמֶּנְהוּ (note the variant suffix הוּ for וֹ); the 3fs form, מִמֶּנָּה, is contracted from *מִמֶּנְהָ (note the variant suffix הָ for ָה).

3. The forms 2ms and 2fs only partially reduplicate, מנם instead of מנמן.

4. The forms 2mp-3fp attach to the preposition מִן without reduplication.

EXERCISE FOURTEEN

I. Questions

1. List the differences between the pronominal suffix Boxes of the nouns and the pronominal suffixes on the prepositions ל and ב.
2. Explain why the suffixed forms of עִם receive a Dagesh Forte.

[78] That is, without connecting vowels: so נוּ instead of נוּ in the 1cp.

3. Which prepositions take the suffixes of the singular noun? Which take the suffixes of the plural noun? לִפְנֵי, עַל, אֶל (plural Noun Suffixes)
4. Explain the variation עִמָּם and עִמָּהֶם.
5. Discuss the formation of לִפְנֵי, with and without pronominal suffixes.
6. Discuss the attaching of pronominal suffixes to the כ Preposition. Also list and explain the purpose of the suffix variations.
7. Discuss the attaching of pronominal suffixes to the מִן Preposition.

II. Vocabulary

יוֹאָב	Joab	אֲבִימֶלֶךְ	Abimelek
מַלְאָךְ	messenger, angel	בָּקָר	cattle
קָרַב	(he) came near, approached	צֹאן	sheep
פָּשַׁע	(he) revolted, transgressed	עֵת	time, season
פָּשַׁע בְּ	he revolted against	שָׁכַב	(he) lay down, slept
פֶּשַׁע (*i*)	rebellion, revolt, transgression	שָׂנֵא	(he) hates, hated
יָרֵא	(he) feared	אַבְשָׁלוֹם	Absalom

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

חָכְמָתוֹ　　פְּלִשְׁתִּים　　חֲרוּ　　קָטְלָה

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words

Article

חֲזִיר　　מֶלֶךְ　　עֵז

Preposition בְּ

אֱלֹהִים　　יְלִיד　　אֲדָמָה

Preposition מִן

חֲלוֹם　　שְׁמוּאֵל　　עִיר

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. fp construct　　גְּדוֹלָה

2. fp absolute בְּרָכָה
3. ms construct חָכָם
4. mp construct צַדִּיק

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	2fs	שָׁנָה	4.	2fs	תְּפִלָּה
2.	2ms	אַמְלָכָה	5.	3mp	עָפָר
3.	1cs	אָדָם	6.	3ms	מִצְוָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	1cs	ל	6.	2fp	לִפְנֵים
2.	2ms	עִם	7.	3fs	אֶל
3.	3ms	אֵת (with)	8.	2mp	מִן
4.	1cp	לִפְנֵים	9.	2ms	כְּ
5.	3mp	כְּ	10.	2fs	מִן

6. Translation

1. הָרַג יוֹאָב אֶת־אַבְשָׁלוֹם כִּי פָּשַׁע בְּדָוִד וּבַאֲנָשָׁיו׃
2. לֶקְחוּ מַלְאֲכֵי אֲבִימֶלֶךְ אֶת־שָׂרָה אֵשֶׁת־אַבְרָהָם וַאֲבִימֶלֶךְ לֹא קָרַב אֵלֶיהָ כִּי שָׁמַר אֱלֹהִים אֹתוֹ מִכָּל־רָע׃
3. אַחַר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נָתַן אֲבִימֶלֶךְ לְאַבְרָהָם זָהָב וָכֶסֶף צֹאן וּבָקָר וְגַם שָׂרָה׃
4. בָּעֵת הַהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲבִימֶלֶךְ לְאַבְרָהָם לֵאמֹר יהוה עִמְּךָ וְהוּא בָּחַר בְּךָ לְמֶלֶךְ עַל־כָּל־הַגּוֹיִם עַד־עוֹלָם׃
5. בָּא שְׁמוּאֵל הַנָּבִיא אֶל־הָעִיר הַזֹּאת כִּי בָהּ הָיוּ הָרְשָׁעִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָרְאוּ אֶת־יהוה׃
6. יהוה אֲדֹנֵינוּ מַה־נֶּדוֹל שִׁמְךָ בְּכָל־הָאָרֶץ׃
7. שָׁכַב מֹשֶׁה עַל־הָאֲדָמָה וְלֹא יָדַע כִּי קְדוֹשָׁה הָאֲדָמָה הָהִיא לַיהוה׃
8. אָמַר אֵלִיָּהוּ יהוה הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים מִי כְמוֹהוּ בַּשָּׁמַיִם וּמִי כְעַמּוֹ יִשְׂרָאֵל עַל־הָאָרֶץ׃

CHAPTER 15
SEGOLATE NOUNS

15.1. Introduction: Segolate nouns (10.2.1) derive their name from their characteristic Segols – מֶלֶךְ, קֶבֶר.[79] The Absolute and Construct State of these nouns are identical in the singular.[80] With pronominal suffixes, however, the Segols disappear and the forms radically change to מַלְכִּי and קִבְרִי (1cs suffix).

Segolate pattern : 2 Segols

15.2. The Development of the Segolate Noun

*מַלְכַּם > *מַלְכַ > *מַלְךְ > *מַלֶךְ > מֶלֶךְ (a)
1 2 3 4 5

The Segolate noun מֶלֶךְ was originally *מַלְכַּם[81](1). First, Segolate nouns dropped final Mems (2). Then, the final short case vowel dropped (3). This left the form with a cluster of two consonants – לְךְ. Generally, Hebrew will not tolerate the clustering of consonants, so a Segol was inserted between the second and third root letter (4). Finally, the Segol assimilated the sound of the original Patah under the first root letter to the Segol under the second root letter (5).

Forms with pronominal suffixes (מַלְכִּי), however, retained the original vowel under the first root letter because suffixed forms never clustered consonants (3). Only with the clustering of consonants are Segols secondarily inserted. Forms with pronominal suffixes have three varieties based on the original short vowel under the first root letter:

מֶלֶךְ < *מַלְךְ (*a*) סֵפֶר < *סִפְרְ (*i*) קֹדֶשׁ < *קָדְשְׁ (*o*)

15.3. Singular Segolate Nouns: Absolute, Construct, and with Pronominal Suffixes

Absolute	מֶלֶךְ (*a*)	king	סֵפֶר (*i*)	book	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	holiness
Construct	מֶלֶךְ	king of	סֵפֶר	book of	קֹדֶשׁ	holiness of

- for singlar form, BeGad KeFet letters follow (!) have Dagesh.

Base forms:	*מַלְךְ		*סִפְרְ		*קָדְשְׁ	
1cs	מַלְכִּי	my king	סִפְרִי	my book	קָדְשִׁי	my holiness
2ms	מַלְכְּךָ	your king	סִפְרְךָ	your book	קָדְשְׁךָ	your holiness
2fs	מַלְכֵּךְ	your king	סִפְרֵךְ	your book	קָדְשֵׁךְ	your holiness
3ms	מַלְכּוֹ	his king	סִפְרוֹ	his book	קָדְשׁוֹ	his holiness
3fs	מַלְכָּהּ	her king	סִפְרָהּ	her book	קָדְשָׁהּ	her holiness

[79] Segolate nouns are also accented characteristically on the first syllable in the singular absolute.

[80] Only context can determine whether מֶלֶךְ is in Absolute State (king) or in Construct State (king of).

[81] Originally, Hebrew nouns ended with a מ (mem). The second Patah (under the כ) was a case vowel (Accusative, as still seen in Arabic) – *מַלְכֻם Nominative, *מַלְכִם Genitive, *מַלְכַם Accusative.

1cp	מַלְכֵּנוּ	our king	סִפְרֵנוּ	our book	קָדְשֵׁנוּ	our holiness
2mp	מַלְכְּכֶם	your king	סִפְרְכֶם	your book	קָדְשְׁכֶם	your holiness
2fp	מַלְכְּכֶן	your king	סִפְרְכֶן	your book	קָדְשְׁכֶן	your holiness
3mp	מַלְכָּם	their king	סִפְרָם	their book	קָדְשָׁם	their holiness
3fp	מַלְכָּן	their king	סִפְרָן	their book	קָדְשָׁן	their holiness

Pronominal suffixes attach to the proto-forms – *מַלְךְ, *סִפְרְ, and *קָדְשְׁ – not to the forms with Segols (15.2). The short vowel under the first root letter will be supplied to construct the forms מֶלֶךְ (*a*), סֵפֶר (*i*), and קֹדֶשׁ (*o*).

15.4. Plural Segolate Nouns: Absolute and Construct[82]

In the plural, Segolate nouns follow two patterns: a pattern resembling the דָּבָר pattern, and a Plural Segolate pattern without a Dagesh Lene in the third root letter (R_3), מַלְכֵי (the Segolate singular pattern requires a Dagesh Lene in the third root letter if it is a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter – מַלְכִּי).

1. Absolute: From the singular, the expected plural absolute form would be *מַלְכִים; however, the actual form is מְלָכִים (סְפָרִים, קְדָשִׁים[83]). This follows the דָּבָר pattern -- דְּבָרִים.[84]

2. Construct: The construct form, מַלְכֵי, is closer to the expected form – *מַלְכֵי[85] (סִפְרֵי, קָדְשֵׁי). This is the Plural Segolate pattern, which is without Dagesh Lene in the third root letter (R_3).

[82] Segolate nouns in the Dual follow the singular Segolate pattern – *אָזְן, *חָפְן, but attach the pronominal suffixes of plural nouns – אָזְנָיו, חָפְנֶיךָ.

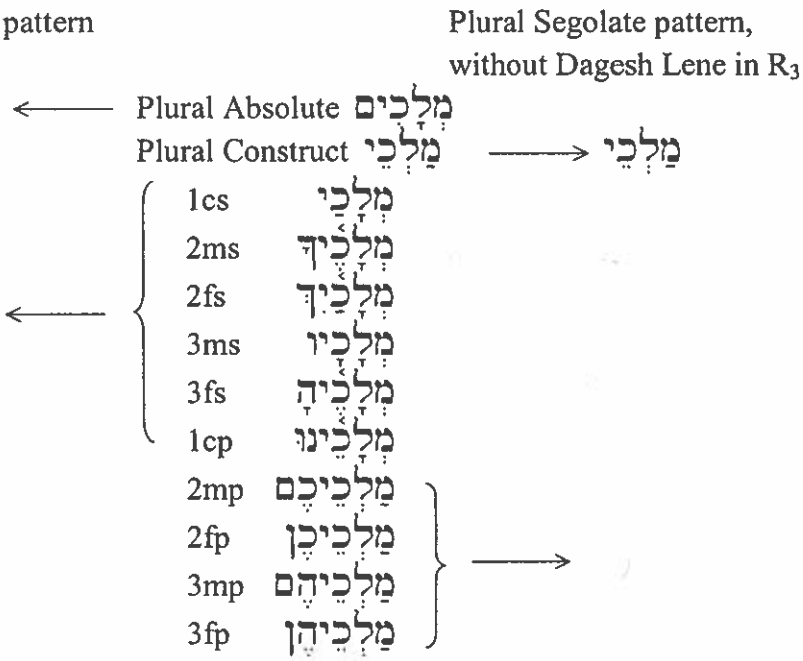
[83] The Qames-Hatuf under the first root letter is probably a substitute for Hatef Qames-Hatuf (ֳ).

[84] Another common view postulates an original plural form – *מַלַךְ.

[85] The shewa is medial, therefore, without Dagesh Lene in the כ – מַלְכֵי. Segolate nouns in the plural never allow Dagesh Lene in the third root letter (R_3) (footnote 71).

15.5. Plural Segolate Nouns with Suffixes

Like the plural Absolute and Construct forms, the Plural Segolate nouns with suffixes follow two patterns: the דָּבָר pattern or the Plural Segolate pattern, which is without Dagesh Lene in the third root letter (R_3).



15.6. Plural Segolate Nouns: Absolute, Construct, and with Pronominal Suffixes

Absolute	מְלָכִים	kings	סְפָרִים	קְדָשִׁים	– דָּבָר pattern: דְּבָרִים
Construct	מַלְכֵי	kings of	סִפְרֵי	קִדְשֵׁי	– Plural Segolate pattern: without Dagesh Lene in R_3
1cs	מְלָכַי	my kings	סִפְרַי	קִדְשַׁי	1cs-1cp follows דָּבָר pattern – דְּבָרִי
2ms	מְלָכֶיךָ	your kings	סִפְרֶיךָ	קִדְשֶׁיךָ	
2fs	מְלָכַיִךְ	your kings	סִפְרַיִךְ	קִדְשַׁיִךְ	
3ms	מְלָכָיו	his kings	סִפְרָיו	קִדְשָׁיו	
3fs	מְלָכֶיהָ	her kings	סִפְרֶיהָ	קִדְשֶׁיהָ	
1cp	מְלָכֵינוּ	our kings	סִפְרֵינוּ	קִדְשֵׁינוּ	
2mp	מַלְכֵיכֶם	your kings	סִפְרֵיכֶם	קִדְשֵׁיכֶם	2mp-3fp follow Plural Segolate pattern: without Dagesh Lene in R_3
2fp	מַלְכֵיכֶן	your kings	סִפְרֵיכֶן	קִדְשֵׁיכֶן	
3mp	מַלְכֵיהֶם	their kings	סִפְרֵיהֶם	קִדְשֵׁיהֶם	
3fp	מַלְכֵיהֶן	their kings	סִפְרֵיהֶן	קִדְשֵׁיהֶן	

1. The forms 1cs-1cp follow the דָּבָר pattern as if the original form was *מַלַךְ (compare the Absolute plural form – מְלָכִים, 15.4.1).

2. The forms 2mp-3fp follow the Plural Segolate pattern (without the Dagesh Lene in the third root letter) – מַלְכֵיכֶם, and the first root letter has the original short vowel of the proto-form of the singular – *מַלְכְּ (compare the construct plural form – מַלְכֵי, 15.4.2).

3. The two most common Segolate nouns of the Holem class – קֹדֶשׁ and שֹׁרֶשׁ – have Qames-Hatuf (sometimes Hatef-Qames-Hatuf in קָדְשׁ) under the first root letter in the plural instead of the expected vocal shewa (6.3.5). Perhaps the Qames-Hatuf substitutes for the Hatef-Qames-Hatuf. Sometimes, the expected vocal shewa occurs in Biblical Hebrew – רְחָמִים (רֹחַם) (see 16.5).

15.7. Attaching Pronominal Suffixes to Segolate Nouns

Follow a three step process

1. Determine the appropriate pattern
    1. Singular Segolate pattern with Dagesh Lene in R_3 (if a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter) (singular forms).
    2. דָּבָר pattern (plural absolute and 1cs-1cp suffixed forms)
    3. Plural Segolate pattern without Dagesh Lene in R_3 (if a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter) (plural Construct and 2mp-3fp suffixed forms).

2. Attach the appropriate box

3. Work the rules of syllables

    Example: 3ms suffix on the singular of מֶלֶךְ (*a*)[86]
    1. Singular Segolate pattern with Dagesh Lene in R_3 (if B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter) – מַלְכְּ
    2. Attach the box – מַלְכּוֹ
    3. Work the rules of syllables – מַלְכּוֹ (6.3.3)

    Example: 3ms suffix on the plural of מֶלֶךְ (*a*)
    1. The דָּבָר pattern (*דַּבְרְ) – מַלְכֵּ
    2. Attach the box – מַלְכָּיו
    3. Work the rules of syllables – מַלְכָיו (6.3.2; 6.3.5)

EXERCISE FIFTEEN

I. Questions

1. Where does the term "Segolate noun" come from?
2. What two forms in the singular are always identical in the Segolate nouns?

[86] The letter in the parentheses (15.3) indicates the vowel under R_1 for the Segolate singular or plural patterns (not the דָּבָר pattern).

3. Describe the historical development of Segolate nouns.
4. What three varieties do the singular Segolate nouns follow?(a)(i)(o)
5. What pattern does the Dual follow and which pronominal suffixes do they take?
6. What three patterns do the Segolate nouns follow with pronominal suffixes?
7. Describe the irregularity in the Segolate plural of קֹדֶשׁ.
8. Describe the attaching of pronominal suffixes to Segolate nouns.

II. Vocabulary

שָׁנָה	year	מִלְחָמָה	war, battle
דֶּרֶךְ (*a*)	way, road	כִּכָּר	(f) (round) valley, plain, loaf of bread
בֹּקֶר (*a*)	morning		
נָהָר	river	אַחְאָב	Ahab
חֹק (pl. חֻקִּים)	statute, law, rule	לוֹט	Lot
עֶרֶב (*a*)	evening	צֶדֶק (*i*)	righteousness
נָשָׂא	(he) lifted up	חַיִּים	life (always in the plural)
חָטָא	(he) sinned (missed the mark)	סֵפֶר (*i*)	scroll, book

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

יְשָׁלוֹךְ　　וַתַּסֵּבוּ　　לֵאלֹהִים　　כְּתֻבָה

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

חֲלֹמְתָּ　　רֹאשׁ　　יֶרַח

Conjunctive ו

עָמָל　　פַּר　　יְפִי

Interrogative ה

עָמָל　　עָשִׂיתִי　　אֵימָה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. dual construct　　עִפְעַפַּיִם

2. mp construct בֶּגֶד (*i*)
3. mp absolute קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)
4. mp construct הֵילֶת (*a*)
5. mp absolute סֵפֶר (*i*)

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps (see 15.7)

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	1cs	עָקֵר	6.	2ms	תּוֹשִׁיָה
2.	3fp	רְקָמָה	7.	3fp	בֶּגֶד (*i*)
3.	3ms	אֶרֶץ (*a*)	8.	1cs	צְדָקָה
4.	3mp	סֵפֶר (*i*)	9.	2ms	שֹׁרֶשׁ (*o*)
5.	1cp	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	10.	3ms	אֹזֶן (*o*) Dual

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	2ms	אֶל	4.	1cp	כְּ
2.	3mp	מִן	5.	3ms	עִם
3.	1cs	לִפְנֵי	6.	2fs	אֵת (direct object)

6. Translation

1. הָלַךְ דָּוִד בְּדֶרֶךְ יהוה כָּל־יְמֵי חַיָּיו וְאַחְאָב עָבַד אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים כָּל־יָמָיו׃
2. בַּשָּׁנָה הַהִיא עָבְרוּ יְהוֹשָׁעַ וְיִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן וּמֹשֶׁה לֹא עָבַר אֶת־הַנָּהָר כִּי לֹא שָׁמַע בְּקוֹל־יהוה בַּמִּדְבָּר׃
3. זָכַר בֶּן־הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יהוה אֹתוֹ בַּמִּדְבָּר עַל־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל מִצוֹת מִשְׁפָּטִים וְחֻקִּים׃
4. אָמְרוּ לוֹ עַבְדֵי־פַרְעֹה זֹאת יַד אֱלֹהִים וְרַע הָיָה הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה בְּעֵינֵי־פַרְעֹה׃
5. נָשָׂא שְׁמוּאֵל אֶת־עֵינָיו וְלֹא רָאָה אֶת־הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ לִפְנֵי־הַכֹּהֵן בַּהֵיכָל׃
6. יָשַׁב אַבְרָהָם בְּאֶרֶץ כְּנַעַן וְלוֹט יָשַׁב בְּעָרֵי כִכַּר הַיַּרְדֵּן׃
7. עָשׂוּ פְלִשְׁתִּים מִלְחָמָה אֶת־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיהוה לֹא נָתַן אֹתָם בְּיָדָם׃
8. עָשָׂה לוֹ אַהֲרֹן מִזְבֵּחַ כִּדְבַר־יהוה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהִים לְמֹשֶׁה עַבְדּוֹ׃

CHAPTER 16
SEGOLATE NOUNS WITH GUTTURALS
SEGOLATE PREPOSITIONS

16.1. Introduction: In a Segolate noun, the presence of a Guttural often changes Segols into Patahs (5.7.3). Like the Segolate nouns without Gutturals (chapter 15), these Segolates follow three patterns (15.7). Moreover, some prepositions follow the Segolate pattern.

16.2. Segolate Nouns with Gutturals

1. If the final root letter (R_3) of a Segolate noun is a Guttural, the preceding Segol becomes a Patah (5.7.3) – *נֶצַח > נֵצַח.
2. If the second root letter (R_2) of a Segolate noun is a Guttural, both Segols become Patah (5.7.3) – *נֶעֱר > נַעַר.
3. If the first root letter (R_1) of a Segolate noun is a Guttural, the Segol frequently remains – הֶבֶל.

16.3. Segolate Proto-forms

As with Segolate nouns without Gutturals, Segolate nouns with Gutturals have three varieties (compare 15.2).

נַעַר – *נַעֲר (*a*) נֵצַח – *נִצְחַ (*i*) פֹּעַל – *פָּעֳל (*o*)

16.4. Singular Segolate Nouns (having a Guttural): Absolute, Construct, and with Pronominal Suffixes

Absolute	נַעַר (*a*) lad	נֵצַח (*i*) perpetuity	פֹּעַל (*o*) work
Construct	נַעַר lad of	נֵצַח perpetuity of	פֹּעַל work of

Base forms: follow Segole pattern

	*נַעֲר		*נִצְחַ		*פָּעֳל	
1cs	נַעֲרִי	my lad	נִצְחִי	my perpetuity	פָּעֳלִי	my work
2ms	נַעֲרְךָ	your lad	נִצְחֲךָ	your perpetuity	פָּעֳלְךָ	your work
2fs	נַעֲרֵךְ	your lad	נִצְחֵךְ	your perpetuity	פָּעֳלֵךְ	your work
3ms	נַעֲרוֹ	his lad	נִצְחוֹ	his perpetuity	פָּעֳלוֹ	his work
3fs	נַעֲרָהּ	her lad	נִצְחָהּ	her perpetuity	פָּעֳלָהּ	her work
1cp	נַעֲרֵנוּ	our lad	נִצְחֵנוּ	our perpetuity	פָּעֳלֵנוּ	our work
2mp	נַעֲרְכֶם	your lad	נִצְחֲכֶם	your perpetuity	פָּעֳלְכֶם	your work
2fp	נַעֲרְכֶן	your lad	נִצְחֲכֶן	your perpetuity	פָּעֳלְכֶן	your work
3mp	נַעֲרָם	their lad	נִצְחָם	their perpetuity	פָּעֳלָם	their work
3fp	נַעֲרָן	their lad	נִצְחָן	their perpetuity	פָּעֳלָן	their work

1. In the suffixed forms (except 2ms, 2mp, and 2fp) with a middle Guttural (נער, פעל), the form takes a composite shewa under the Guttural instead of a silent shewa (5.7.1 footnote 28) – *נַעְרִי > נַעֲרִי.[87]

2. In the 2ms, 2mp, and 2fp forms, the composite shewa becomes a Patah to avoid two vocal shewas (3.2.2.1) – *נַעְרֵךְ > נַעֲרֵךְ, or to avoid a medial shewa and a vocal shewa – *נַעְרְכֶם > נַעֲרֵכֶם.[88]

16.5. Plural Segolate Nouns (having a Guttural): Absolute, Construct, and with Pronominal Suffixes

Absolute	נְעָרִים	lads	נְצָחִים	פְּעָלִים	– דָּבָר pattern: דְּבָרִים	
Construct	נַעֲרֵי	lads of	נִצְחֵי	פָּעֳלֵי	– Plural Segolate pattern: without Dagesh Lene in R_3	
1cs	נְעָרַי	my lads	נִצְחִי	פְּעָלַי	1cs-1cp follows דָּבָר pattern – דִּבְרִי	
2ms	נְעָרֶיךָ	your lads	נִצְחֶיךָ	פְּעָלֶיךָ		
2fs	נְעָרַיִךְ	your lads	נִצְחַיִךְ	פְּעָלַיִךְ		
3ms	נְעָרָיו	his lads	נִצְחָיו	פְּעָלָיו		
3fs	נְעָרֶיהָ	her lads	נִצְחֶיהָ	פְּעָלֶיהָ		
1cp	נְעָרֵינוּ	our lads	נִצְחֵינוּ	פְּעָלֵינוּ		
2mp	נַעֲרֵיכֶם	your lads	נִצְחֵיכֶם	פָּעֳלֵיכֶם	2mp-3fp follow Plural Segolate pattern: without Dagesh Lene in R_3	
2fp	נַעֲרֵיכֶן	your lads	נִצְחֵיכֶן	פָּעֳלֵיכֶן		
3mp	נַעֲרֵיהֶם	their lads	נִצְחֵיהֶם	פָּעֳלֵיהֶם		
3fp	נַעֲרֵיהֶן	their lads	נִצְחֵיהֶן	פָּעֳלֵיהֶן		

1. As in the Segolate nouns without Gutturals, the plural Absolute and the suffixed forms 1cs-1cp follow the דָּבָר pattern (15.6; 15.7).

2. The plural Construct and the suffixed forms 2mp-3fp follow the plural Segolate pattern without a Dagesh Lene in the third root letter. The middle Guttural letter takes a composite shewa, which echoes the Segolate vowel under R_1, instead of a silent shewa (5.7.1 footnote 28; 16.4.1),
*נַעְרֵי > נַעֲרֵי.

[87] They may take silent shewa also – תַּחְתֵי.

[88] The shewa under the third root letter is medial – silent enough to close the syllable; vocal enough to keep the Dagesh Lene out of the כ (footnotes 71 and 85).

3. פֹּעַל is regular in the plural with the vocal shewa under the first root letter (contrast קֹדֶשׁ, 15.6.3).

16.6. Attaching Pronominal Suffixes to Segolate Nouns with Gutturals

The first three steps are like 15.7, but add a fourth step for the shewa problem.

Example: 1cs suffix on the singular of נַעַר (*a*)

1. Determine the appropriate pattern: the singular Segolate pattern with Dagesh Lene if R_3 is a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter – נַעַר
2. Attach appropriate box – נַעֲרִי
3. Work the rules of syllables – נַעֲרִי (6.3.3)
4. Account for the Guttural with silent shewa: they often become composite shewa under Gutturals with silent shewa – נַעֲרִי (5.7.1 footnote 28).

16.7. Prepositions of the Segolate Pattern or Resembling the Segolate Pattern

	לְמַעַן	תַּחַת	אַחַר (אַחֲרֵי)
	"for the sake of"	"under, below, instead of"	"after, behind"
1cs	לְמַעֲנִי	תַּחְתִּי	אַחֲרַי
2ms	לְמַעַנְךָ	תַּחְתְּךָ	אַחֲרֶיךָ
2fs	לְמַעֲנֵךְ	תַּחְתֵּךְ	אַחֲרַיִךְ
3ms	לְמַעֲנוֹ	תַּחְתָּיו	אַחֲרָיו
3fs	לְמַעֲנָהּ	תַּחְתֶּיהָ	אַחֲרֶיהָ
1cp	לְמַעֲנֵנוּ	תַּחְתֵּינוּ	אַחֲרֵינוּ
2mp	לְמַעַנְכֶם	תַּחְתֵּיכֶם	אַחֲרֵיכֶם
2fp	לְמַעַנְכֶן	תַּחְתֵּיכֶן	אַחֲרֵיכֶן
3mp	לְמַעַנָם	(תַּחְתֵּיהֶם) תַּחְתָּם	אַחֲרֵיהֶם
3fp	לְמַעַנָן	(תַּחְתֵּיהֶן) תַּחְתָּן	אַחֲרֵיהֶן

1. לְמַעַן – This Segolate preposition takes singular pronominal suffixes (compare נַעַר 16.4). This preposition, also a conjunction, combines the Inseparable Preposition ל with the word מען – "intent, purpose": for (my) intent or purpose, for (my) sake.

2. תַּחַת – This Segolate preposition takes a singular root *תַּחְתּ with plural endings (compare the Dual, footnote 82). Note that the second root letter (a Guttural) takes a silent shewa (instead of a composite shewa as נַעֲרִי).

3. אַחַר – This preposition is not a Segolate word (as the accent indicates, see footnote 79), but it resembles the Segolate noun נַעַר with suffixes – נַעֲרִי, אַחֲרַי. The preposition אַחַר, however, takes plural suffixes.

EXERCISE SIXTEEN

I. Questions

1. How does a Guttural in the second root position (R_2) change the pointing of Segolate nouns (chapter 15) with and without pronominal suffixes? How does a Guttural change the pointing with a Guttural in the third root letter (R_3) with and without pronominal suffixes?
2. Describe the attaching of pronominal suffixes to Segolate nouns with Gutturals. How does it differ from Segolate nouns without a Guttural?
3. Describe the pattern and the suffixes (Singular or Plural) of the prepositions לְמַעַן, תַּחַת, אַחַר.

II. Vocabulary

נַעַר (*a*)	lad, boy	חַטָּאת	(f) sin, sin-offering
דַּעַת (*a*)	knowledge	חֶרֶב (*a*)	(f) sword
לְמַעַן	so that, in order that, for the sake of	לֵב, לֵבָב	heart (with suffix לִבִּי my heart)
		נָפַל	(he) fell
בֵּית־אֵל	Bethel	שַׂר	official, leader, prince
יֵשׁ	there is, there are	רַב	(adj.) much, many
חֶסֶד (*a*)	loyalty, lovingkindness, steadfast love	תַּחַת	under, instead of
		אַשְׁרֵי	happy, blessed

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

צְפַרְדֵּעַ　　פִּתְאֹם　　אֲנִיָּה　　קָדְשֵׁיכֶם

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words

Article

אָפִיק　　דִּין　　חָצִיר

Preposition ל

גַּאֲוָה　　יָם　　מְזִמָּה

Preposition מִן

חֵךְ שְׁגָגָה רַעֲנָן

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	dual construct	אָזְנֵי (*o*)	4.	fp construct	צַדִּיק
2.	mp construct	נַעֲרֵי (*a*)	5.	mp absolute	מֶלֶךְ (*a*)
3.	fp absolute	חָכָם	*6.	mp construct	פֹּעֲלֵי (*o*)

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	2ms	קָדְשְׁךָ (*o*)	5.	2fp	תְּנוּר
2.	1cp	פְּעֻלָּה	6.	3ms	קָדְשׁוֹ (*o*)
*3.	2ms	נַעַר (*a*)	7.	2ms	פָּעַל (*o*)
4.	3fs	בָּקָר	8.	1cp	אֲדָמָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the Prepositions and translate

1.	3fp	אֵל	4.	3ms	כְּ
2.	1cs	מִן	5.	3ms	אֵת (with)
3.	2fs	לְמַעַן	*6.	3ms	תַּחַת

6. Translation

1. שְׁאַל שְׁלֹמֹה מֵעִם־יהוה חָכְמָה וּבְחָכְמָתוֹ שָׁפַט אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּצֶדֶק וּבֶאֱמֶת׃
2. בָּנָה אַבְרָהָם מִזְבֵּחַ בְּבֵית־אֵל וְשָׁם זָבַח זֶבַח כִּי יהוה כָּרַת עִמּוֹ בְּרִית לְמַעַן שְׁמוֹ׃
3. הֲיֵשׁ לְךָ אָב הֲיֵשׁ לְךָ אִשָּׁה הֲיֵשׁ לְךָ בֵּן׃
4. אָמַר שְׁמוּאֵל אֶל־דָּוִד הָרַג שָׁאוּל אֶת־עַבְדֶּךָ וּבַלַּיְלָה הַהוּא בָּא הָעִירָה אֶל־בֵּית־אָבִיךָ׃
5. טוֹב עָשָׂה יהוה עִם־עַבְדּוֹ כִּי לְעוֹלָם חַסְדּוֹ׃
6. הֲלְכוּ צַדִּיקִים בִּדְרָכָיו אַף שָׂמְחוּ בְתוֹרוֹתָיו וּבְחֻקָּיו׃
7. דִּבֶּר מֹשֶׁה לָעָם בְּכֹכַר הַיַּרְדֵּן לֵאמֹר אֵלֶּה הַתּוֹרוֹת הַמִּצוֹת וְהַחֻקִּים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה אֹתְךָ יהוה אֱלֹהֶיךָ׃
8. אַשְׁרֵי הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר עָזַב חַטָּאתוֹ וַאֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה בְּלֵב יָשָׁר׃

MORPHOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES: STRONG VERB

CHAPTER 17
INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS
THE VERB: QAL PERFECT

17.1. Introduction: This chapter begins the systematic study of the verb. Thoroughly memorize the verbal forms in chapters 17-19 to master chapters 21-25. The Independent Pronouns are closely associated with the Perfect and Imperfect of the verb.

17.2. The Independent Pronouns

1cs	אָנֹכִי / אֲנִי[89]	I	1cp	אֲנַחְנוּ	we
2ms	אַתָּה	you	2mp	אַתֶּם	you
2fs	אַתְּ	you	2fp	אַתֶּן	you
3ms	הוּא	he	3mp	הֵם / הֵמָּה	they
3fs	הִיא	she	3fp	הֵן / הֵנָּה	they

1. These pronouns are essentially subject pronouns; contrast the object pronouns in 14.3. (Marker of Direct Object).

2. These pronouns with a finite verb (Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative) are usually emphatic – אָמַרְתָּ "you said," אַתָּה אָמַרְתָּ "*you* said."

17.3. The Verb: Qal Perfect (Qātal[90]) Recite

1cs	קָטַלְתִּי	I killed, have killed
2ms	קָטַלְתָּ	you killed, have killed
2fs	קָטַלְתְּ	you killed, have killed
3ms	קָטַל	he killed, has killed
3fs	קָטְלָה	she killed, has killed
1cp	קָטַלְנוּ	we killed, have killed
2mp	קְטַלְתֶּם	you killed, have killed
2fp	קְטַלְתֶּן	you killed, have killed
3cp	קָטְלוּ	they killed, have killed

Simple past Tense, Perfect tense

1. The vowel under the second root letter (R_2, Patah in שָׁמַר), the thematic vowel, lengthens or reduces under certain conditions. Moreover, the thematic vowel may indicate certain verbal notions, such as active/passive.

---

[89] The pausal form retracts the accented syllable -- אֲנִי, אָנֹכִי.

[90] The Perfect is also called Qātal based on the Perfect 3ms – קָטַל.

2. The Perfect, also called the suffixed conjugation, attaches the pronominal element to the end of the verb:

2ms	קָטַלְ(אַ)תָּ(ה)
2fs	קָטַלְ(אַ)תְּ
1cp	קָטַלְ(אָנַח)נוּ
2mp	קְטַלְ(אַ)תֶּם
2fp	קְטַלְ(אַ)תֶּן

The other persons (1cs, 3ms, 3fs, 3cp) do not attach the Independent Pronouns.

3. Endings of the Perfect
   1. Syllabic endings (1cs, 2ms, 1cp, 2mp, 2fp) are syllables, at least one consonant and only one vowel[91] (Consider the 2fs ending, although without a vowel, a syllabic ending.).

      1. Syllabic Endings (except 2mp and 2fp): The accent remains over the second root letter (R_2) and the thematic vowel Patah;[92] therefore, the original Patah under the first root letter lengthens in the opened pretonic position – *קָטַלְתִּי > קָטַלְתִּי (6.3.2).

      2. Syllabic Endings 2mp and 2fp: the accent shifts over the suffixes, leaving the thematic vowel (Patah) in a closed unaccented syllable (6.3.3). The original Patah under the first root letter in the originally opened pro-pretonic position, reduces to vocal shewa – *קָטַלְתֶּם > קְטַלְתֶּם (6.3.5).

   2. Vocalic endings (3fs, 3cp) end in a vowel.[93]
      Vocalic Endings: Verbs follow a slightly different vowel reduction pattern from nouns (6.3). *With a vocalic ending, the thematic vowel reduces in the opened pretonic position* (the noun, by contrast, lengthens vowels in the opened pretonic position [6.3.2]). Then the original Patah under the first root letter lengthens in the opened pretonic position.
      *קָטַלוּ > *קָטְלוּ > קָטְלוּ 3cp
      1 2 3

[91] The 2mp, 2fp forms have two consonants and a vowel.

[92] The Patah in a closed accented syllable shatters rule 6.3.1, thus allowing a lengthened form in pause קָטַלְתִּי (6.3.1).

[93] The 3fs ends in a phony ה to read a Qames before the ה; therefore, the ה is not part of the ending (footnote 66).

The original form (1) reduces the thematic vowel in the opened pretonic position (2). Then the original Patah under the first root letter lengthens in the opened pretonic position (3).

3. Non-Ending[94] (3ms): The 3ms implies the third person.

17.4. Qal Perfect: Meaning

1. Hebrew varies the meaning of the verbal action with seven basic stems (Qal, Niph'al, Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el, Hiph'il, Hoph'al). The Qal stem is the light (not heavy) stem because the stem is not made "heavy" by adding stem prefixes to the verb or by modifying the verb internally. The Qal expresses the simple action of the verb. Other types of action will be considered later.

2. For now, translate the Perfect as a simple past tense or a perfect tense according to the context.

EXERCISE SEVENTEEN

I. Questions

1. In a sentence, how do the Independent Pronouns usually function?
2. What is a thematic vowel? How does it function in the Perfect?
3. How do the Independent Pronouns connect to the Perfect?
4. What is a syllabic ending? Which Perfect forms have a syllabic ending?
5. What is a vocalic ending? Which Perfect forms have a vocalic ending?
6. Which form is without an ending?
7. How does the reduction pattern of the nouns differ from the Perfect verb with vocalic endings?
8. How should the Perfect be translated?

II. Vocabulary

אָנֹכִי / אֲנִי	I
אַתָּה	you (m)
אַתְּ	you (f)
הוּא	he
הִיא	she
אֲנַחְנוּ	we
אַתֶּם	you (m)
אַתֶּן	you (f)
הֵן / הֵנָּה	they (f)
קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	holiness, holy
צִיּוֹן	Zion
מָקוֹם	place
לָכֵן	therefore
תָּמִיד	continually, regularly
צֵל	shade

[94] The 3ms is without ending.

הֵם / הֵמָּה they (m)

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

חַטָּאתוֹ אֲמִתּוֹ חָנִי תִּשְׁבְּרוּ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

חֶלְיִ אָדָם שָׁמַר

Conjunctive ו

אֱדוֹם יָלוֹד מֶלֶךְ

Interrogative ה

שַׁבָּת שִׁמַּרְתֶּם אַתָּה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	ms construct	נַעַר (*a*)	4.	mp absolute	חֲרֵב (*a*)
2.	mp construct	צֶדֶק (*i*)	5.	ms construct	עֶמֶל
3.	fs construct	אֲדָמָה	6.	fp absolute	מִלְחָמָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	3fp	פֹּעַל (*o*)	4.	3fs	בֶּגֶד (*i*)
2.	1cs	צְדָקָה	5.	1cp	חֹפֶן (*o*) Dual
3.	3fs	עֹפֶר	6.	2ms	אֲדָמָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions

1.	2fp	לִפְנֵי	3.	3fp	תַּחַת
2.	1cs	מִן	4.	2ms	ב

6. Write and recite orally the Perfect for the roots כתב and מלך

7. Translation

1. אָמַר פַּרְעֹה לַיהוָה הִיא גַם הִיא אָמְרָה אֵלַי אָחִי הוּא׃
2. גַּם יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לָקַחְתָּ לְךָ אֶת־שָׂרָה אֵשֶׁת־אַבְרָהָם לְאִשָּׁה לָכֵן חָרָה אַפִּי בְךָ וּבְבֵיתֶךָ׃
3. אָמְרָה הָאִשָּׁה טוֹבִים הָעֵצִים לְצֵל וְלָעֵצִים הַטּוֹבִים פֶּרִי׃
4. שָׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת־קוֹל־אֱלֹהִים בַּמִּדְבָּר הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא וְהֵמָּה רָאוּ אֶת־יהוה בְּהֵיכָלוֹ פָּנִים אֶל־פָּנִים׃
5. מִי עָלָה בְהַר־יהוָה וּמִי עָמַד בִּמְקוֹם קָדְשׁוֹ׃
6. הֲלֹא שָׁלַחְנוּ לָכֶם מַלְאָכִים יִשְׂרָאֵל הֲלֹא דִבֶּר יהוה אֲלֵיכֶם בְּיַד נְבִיאָיו בְּצִיּוֹן׃
7. לָכֵן כֹּה אָמַר יהוה אֱלֹהֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל כִּי לֹא שְׁמַעְתֶּם דְּבָרַי עַזַּבְתִּי אֶתְכֶם וְאֶת־בְּנֵיכֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר עַזַּבְתֶּם אֹתִי וְאֶת־מִשְׁפָּטַי׃
8. עֵינַי תָּמִיד אֶל־יהוָה כִּי נָשָׂא חַטָּאת עֲבָדָיו׃

CHAPTER 18
THE VERB: THE IMPERFECT AND VOLITIVES PROHIBITIONS WITH אַל AND לֹא

18.1. Introduction: The Imperfects and Volitives reduce their thematic vowels, with vocalic endings, like the Perfect.

18.2. The Verb: Imperfect (Yiqtōl[95])

Simple future	1cs	אֶקְטֹל	I will kill	אֶשְׁלַח	I will send
	2ms	תִּקְטֹל	You will kill	תִּשְׁלַח	You will send
	2fs	תִּקְטְלִי	You will kill	תִּשְׁלְחִי	You will send
	3ms	יִקְטֹל	He will kill	יִשְׁלַח	He will send
	3fs	תִּקְטֹל	She will kill	תִּשְׁלַח	She will send
	1cp	נִקְטֹל	We will kill	נִשְׁלַח	We will send
	2mp	תִּקְטְלוּ	You will kill	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	You will send
	2fp	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	You will kill	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	You will send
	3mp	יִקְטְלוּ	They will kill	יִשְׁלְחוּ	They will send
	3fp	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	They will kill	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	They will send

1. Thematic Vowels (17.3.1):
   1. The thematic vowel, the vowel under the second root letter (R_2), varies according to the verb. Many verbs have Holem for a thematic vowel (יִקְטֹל); some verbs have Patah (יִשְׁלַח), especially with a Guttural for the second or third root letter.[96]

   2. With vocalic endings, thematic vowels, in the opened pretonic position, reduce to vocal shewa – *יִקְטָלוּ[97] > יִקְטְלוּ (17.3.3.2).

2. The Prefixed Elements: The Imperfect, the prefixed conjugation,[98] attaches the pronominal element to the beginning of the word (The vowels differ between the Imperfect preformatives and the Independent Pronouns.).
   1cs אֶ(נִי)קְטֹל (אֲנִי)

[95] The Imperfect is also called Yiqtōl based on the Imperfect 3ms – יִקְטֹל.

[96] Patah is also the Imperfect thematic vowel for Stative Verbs (21.2).

[97] The Qames-Hatuf lengthens in accented closed syllables (6.3.1) to Holem – יִשְׁמָר־ > יִשְׁמֹר (compare יִשְׁמָר־נָא).

[98] Of course, this designation of prefixed conjugation, though not strictly accurate because some forms (2fs, 2mp, 3mp, and 2, 3fp) have suffixed elements, is commonly accepted.

2ms	(א)תִּ(ה)קְטֹל	(אַתָּה)
2fs	(א)תִּקְטְלִי	(אַתְּ)
1cp	(אנח)נ(ו)קְטֹל	(אֲנַחְנוּ)
2mp	(א)תִּ(ם)קְטְלוּ	(אַתֶּם)
2fp	(א)תִּ(ן)קְטֹלְנָה	(אַתֶּן)

3. Endings of the Imperfect
   1. Syllabic endings (17.3.3.1): Syllabic endings occur in the 2fp, 3fp forms – תִּקְטֹלְנָה.[99]

   2. Vocalic endings (17.3.3.2): Vocalic endings occur in the 2fs, 2mp, 3mp forms – תִּקְטְלִי, תִּקְטְלוּ, יִקְטְלוּ.[100] The 2mp and 3mp forms occasionally end with a Nun – תִּקְטְלוּן, יִקְטְלוּן, but still consider them vocalic endings.

   3. Non-Endings (17.3.3.3) occur in 1cs, 2ms 3ms, 3fs, and 1cp.[101]

   4. The short vowel of the first syllable, always closed and unaccented, never reduces (6.3.3). All preformatives have Hireq for the short vowel except the 1cs which has Segol (under the influence of the Guttural א). Memorize these Imperfect preformatives by the memory word (4.2.2) – אֵיתָן: א = 1cs, י = 3ms, 3mp, etc., ת = 2ms, etc., נ = 1cp.

18.3. Qal Imperfect: Meaning

For now, translate the Imperfect as a future tense.

18.4. Volitives: the Cohortative, Imperative, and Jussive

Volitives express the will or desire of the speaker. For the first person (I or we), the volitive is called Cohortative; for the second person (you: singular or plural), the volitive is called Imperative; for the third person (he, she, it, they), the volitive is called Jussive (though the Jussive can occur in all persons). All volitives forms are related to the Imperfect.

I will, let me

1. Cohortatives: Form the Cohortative by adding the vocalic ending Qames and (phony) ה to the first person forms (singular and plural) of the Imperfect. The vocalic ending reduces the (originally short) thematic vowel to vocal shewa (18.2.1.2).

[99] These forms are also called invariable forms because they never change in pause.

[100] These forms are also called long forms because of the vocalic ending.

[101] These forms are also called short forms.

	Imperfect	Cohortative	
Singular	אֶקְטֹל	אֶקְטְלָה	Let me kill or I *will* kill
Plural	נִקְטֹל	נִקְטְלָה	Let us kill or We *will* kill

Translate the Cohortative like a proposition, "let us kill," or as a future, when the Cohortative emphasizes the desire or wish of the speaker: "we *will* kill."

(you) Go will, Command: Go!

2. Imperatives: Derive the Imperatives from the Imperfect second person forms by dropping the prefixed pronominal element of the Imperfect. If two vocal shewas begin the word (2fs, 2mp), the first vocal shewa becomes a Hireq (3.2.2.1; footnote 17).

	Imperfect	Imperative		Imperative	
2ms	תִּקְטֹל	קְטֹל	Kill	שְׁלַח	Send
2fs	תִּקְטְלִי	קִטְלִי (< קְטָלִי*)	Kill	שִׁלְחִי	Send
2mp	תִּקְטְלוּ	קִטְלוּ (< קְטָלוּ*)	Kill	שִׁלְחוּ	Send
2fp	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	קְטֹלְנָה	Kill	שְׁלַחְנָה	Send

The 2ms Imperative also has an emphatic form – קָטְלָה[102] kill (Emphatic Imperative).

let him..., let her...

3. Jussives: For now, the Jussive form is identical to the third person forms (3ms, 3fs, 3mp, 3fp). Context determines whether a third person Imperfect translates as a future or as a Jussive.

3ms	יִקְטֹל	He will kill (Imperfect) or Let him kill (Jussive)
3fs	תִּקְטֹל	She will kill (Imperfect) or Let her kill (Jussive)
3mp	יִקְטְלוּ	They will kill (Imperfect) or Let them kill (Jussive)
3fp	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	They will kill (Imperfect) or Let them kill (Jussive)

18.5. Prohibitions with לֹא and אַל

With prohibitions (negative commands such as, "Do not kill"), Hebrew has two constructions.

1. The Imperfect with לֹא – לֹא תִקְטֹל "you will not kill" or "you must not kill"

2. The Jussive with אַל[103] – אַל תִּקְטֹל "do not kill"

[102] Distinguish קָטְלָה (Qames-Hatuf), the Emphatic Imperative, from קָטָלָה (Qames), the Perfect 3fs.

[103] אַל takes the second person Jussive (18.4).

Normally the Jussive with אַל is the simple warning or prohibition – "do not keep"; the Imperfect with לֹא is the stronger, more emphatic prohibition – "you will not keep" (i.e., thou shall not keep), "you must not keep." The Imperfect with לֹא is commonly found in divine prohibitions (Ten Commandments, for instance).[104] Hebrew never negates an Imperative.

EXERCISE EIGHTEEN

I. Questions

1. In the Imperfect, which forms have syllabic endings? Vocalic endings? No endings? What are these endings also called?
2. Vocalic endings in the Imperfect also may end with what letter?
3. How does the thematic vowel vary in the Imperfect? When does the thematic vowel reduce?
4. What are אֵיתָן letters?
5. Define Volitive. What are the various Volitives called?
6. How are the various Volitives formed?
7. How is the Imperfect translated? How are the Volitives translated?
8. How does Hebrew express prohibition? Can Hebrew ever express prohibition with an Imperative?

II. Vocabulary: The verbs will now be listed without vowels.

שֶׁקֶר (*i*)	falsehood, deception, lie	שַׁבָּת	Sabbath, rest
נְעוּרִים	youth	יְהוֹנָתָן	Jonathan
לכד	capture	אֵשׁ	(f) fire
טוב	good thing(s), goodness	חִזְקִיָּהוּ	Hezekiah
שׂרף	burn	דָּם	blood
מָחָר	tomorrow	אַשּׁוּר	Assyria
אַל	no, not	דָּמִים	bloodshed (plural of דָּם), murder

[104] The Jussive with אַל is commonly found when an inferior is speaking with a superior; the Imperfect with לֹא is common when a superior speaks with an inferior.

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

צִיּוֹן קִטָּלְכֶם תִּתֵּנָה יִחַנּוּ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

חָג עֶֽרֶשׁ נְבִיאִים

Preposition כ

הֶעָמָל רַע יהוה

Interrogative ה

שָׁמַר שִׁמַרְתֶּם אֲדָמָה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. fp absolute תְּפִלָּה
   2. mp absolute סֹפֵר (*i*)
   3. fp construct אַדְמָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	1cp	נַעַר (*a*)	3.	2mp	נִצַּח (*i*)
2.	2fs	דָּבָר	4.	1cs	צַדָּקָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	1cs	כ	3.	3ms	אֵל
2.	2fp	לְמַעַן	4.	3mp	ל

6. Write and recite orally the Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative (including the Emphatic Imperative), Cohortatives, and Jussive 3ms, 3fs of the roots כתב and משל

7. Translation

1. הָיָה דְבַר־יהוה אֶל־הַנָּבִיא לֵאמֹר יִשְׁפֹּט אֱלֹהִים אֶת־אַשּׁוּר כִּי עָשָׂה חִזְקִיָּהוּ אֶת־הַיָּשָׁר בְּעֵינֵי־יהוה:
2. בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא תִּזְכְּרוּ אֶת־הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּכֶם יהוה וְגַם אַתֶּם תִּכְתְּבוּן בְּסֵפֶר אֶת־הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת:
3. שָׁפְטָה אֹתִי יהוה כְּצִדְקִי וּשְׁמֹר אֹתִי מֵאַנְשֵׁי דָמִים לְמַעַן טוּבֶךָ:
4. אָמַר שְׁמוּאֵל בָּעֵת הַהִיא לֶכְדוּ פְּלִשְׁתִּים אֶת־הָעִיר וְאֶת־שָׁאוּל וְאֶת־יְהוֹנָתָן בְּנוֹ הָרְגוּ בֶחֱרֶב:
5. פְּשְׁעֵי נְעוּרַי אַל־תִּזְכֹּר כְּחַסְדְּךָ זְכָר־לִי־אָתָּה:
6. צִוָּה יהוה אֶת־יְהוֹשֻׁעַ לְכֹד אֶת־הָעִיר וּשְׁרֹף אֹתָהּ בָּאֵשׁ:

CHAPTER 19
PARTICIPLES: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE
INFINITIVES: ABSOLUTE AND CONSTRUCT

19.1. Introduction

Participles and Infinitives are hybrid forms: the Participle is the offspring of a verb and of an adjective (a verbal adjective); the Infinitive is the offspring of a verb and of a noun (a verbal noun). In form and in function (syntax), the Participle at times acts like a verb; at other times, like an adjective. Similarly, the Infinitive at times acts like a verb, at other times, like a noun.

19.2. Active Participle (Qōtēl[105]) Memorize

1. Form

Masculine Singular Absolute	קֹטֵל (killing)	=	Construct	קֹטֵל
Masculine Plural Absolute	קֹטְלִים		Construct	קֹטְלֵי
Feminine Singular Absolute	קֹטֶלֶת		Construct	קֹטַלַת
or Absolute	קֹטֶלֶת	(T-Form) =	Construct	קֹטֶלֶת
Feminine Plural Absolute	קֹטְלוֹת	=	Construct	קֹטְלוֹת

1. The characteristic of the Active Participle is the historic long Holem (usually written defectively 1.8.2.2) between the first and second root letters. The T-Form Participle has the original feminine ת with Segolate formation (Footnote 66, 15.1).

2. Adjectival characteristics: The endings of the Participle are adjectival endings.

3. Verbal characteristics: *Participles reduce the thematic vowel like the verb with vocalic endings* (17.3.3.2). The adjectival endings (except the T-Form of feminine singular) are like vocalic endings for the verb; therefore, the original Hireq under the second root letter (R_2) reduces to vocal shewa (verb reduction pattern, 17.3.3.2).

2. Function (syntax)

1. Adjectival Use:

1. When modifing a noun, the Participle follows its noun and functions as an adjective:

הָאִישׁ הַקֹּטֵל the man, the one killing (or the man who kills)

קֹטֵל = the man is killing

[105] The Active Participle is also called the Qōtēl form – קֹטֵל.

הָאִשָּׁה הַקֹּטֶלֶת (or) הָאִשָּׁה הַקֹּטֶלָה the woman, the one killing (or the woman who kills)

2. When not modifing a noun, the Participle, like an ordinary adjective,[106] functions as a noun (substantive use):
   הַקֹּטֵל the one killing (or the killer)
   הַיֹּשֵׁב the one dwelling (or the dweller)
   יֹשֵׁב a dweller

2. Verbal Use: The verbal Participle occurs without the Article. The subject of the Participle usually precedes the Participle though it may follow the Participle.
   הָאִישׁ קֹטֵל the man is killing (or the man kills)[107]
   הֵמָּה קֹטְלִים they are killing (or they kill)

3. Aspect and Tense of the Active Participle
   The verbal Participle expresses durative or continual action (aspect). The context determines the tense, but usually it is a present tense. In the adjectival Participle, context determines tense and aspect, though again, it is usually durative action (aspect) and present tense.

19.3. Passive Participle (Qātûl) Memorize (Being Killed)

1. Form

			The one
Masculine Singular Absolute	קָטוּל	Construct	קְטוּל
Masculine Plural Absolute	קְטוּלִים	Construct	קְטוּלֵי
Feminine Singular Absolute	קְטוּלָה	Construct	קְטוּלַת
Feminine Plural Absolute	קְטוּלוֹת	Construct	קְטוּלוֹת

The Masculine Singular Absolute has a Qames under the first root letter. The original Patah lengthens in the opened pretonic position to Qames. In the other forms, the original Patah in an opened pro-pretonic position reduces to vocal shewa.

2. Function (syntax)
   The function of the Passive Participle resembles the Active Participle:

[106] 10.10.

[107] If both the noun and the Participle are without the article (אִישׁ קֹטֵל), the construction is ambiguous: adjectival Participle, "a man who kills"; or verbal Participle, "a man is killing." Only context determines this.

1. Adjectival Use:
   1. Modifying a noun הָאִישׁ הַקָּטוּל
      the man, the one killed – the man who is killed (19.2.2.1.1)
   2. Substantive use הַקָּטוּל the killed one (ms) (19.2.2.1.2)
2. Verbal Use: הֵמָּה קְטוּלִים they are killed (19.2.2.2)
3. The aspect and tense of the Passive Participle is the same as the Active Participle (19.2.2.3).

19.4. Infinitive Absolute and Construct[108] Memorize

1. Infinitive Absolute (Qātôl) Does not take suffix
   1. Form
      קָטוֹל killing
   2. Function (syntax):
      1. The Infinitive Absolute frequently occurs before or after a verb and emphasizes some aspect of the verb. Translate the Infinitive Absolute, before or after a verb, "really, surely, indeed."
         קָטוֹל קָטַל (literally, killing, he has killed) he has indeed killed (or he has surely killed, or he has really killed)
         קָטַל קָטוֹל (literally, he has killed a killing) he has indeed killed (or he has surely killed, or he has really killed)
      2. Sometimes, the Infinitive Absolute intensifies the action of the verb:
         שָׁמוֹר שָׁמַר he has completely kept (or) he has carefully kept
2. Infinitive Construct (Q^{e}tōl) Take suffix
   1. Form
      קְטֹל killing To Killing
   2. Function (syntax)
      1. The Infinitive Construct, frequently with the preposition ל attached to it, is translated as an English Infinitive:
         קְטֹל to kill
         לִקְטֹל to kill

[108] The terms "absolute" and "construct" as describing infinitives and nouns are analogous: the absolute noun stands absolutely or by itself; the Infinitive Absolute stands by itself, without suffixes or prepositions. The noun in the Construct State connects to the following noun; the Infinitive Construct frequently connects to the following noun, and it takes suffixes and prepositions.

2. The Infinitive Construct with the ל preposition often expresses purpose:
לִקְטֹל in order to kill (or) for the purpose of killing

EXERCISE NINETEEN

I. Questions

1. Define Participle and Infinitive.
2. In form and function, how does the Active Participle act like a verb and like an adjective?
3. What is the usual aspect and tense of the Participle?
4. Describe the function (syntax) of the Infinitive Absolute and Construct.
5. How do the terms "absolute" and "construct" describe the Infinitive Absolute and Infinitive Construct?

II. Vocabulary

בְּתוֹךְ	(preposition) in the midst of	אֵין	there is no/not (literally: "non-existence of," from אַיִן)
נָא	now, please		
ברח	flee	כִּסֵּא	chair, throne
אוֹ	or	כְּסִיל	fool (noun), insolent, stupid (adj.)
שַׁעַר (*a*)	gate		
אֹהֶל (*o*)	tent	אִם	if
עֵלִי	Eli	בְּהֵמָה	large animal, cattle, crocodile (?)
מצא	find, discover, present	שִׁלוֹ, שִׁלֹה	Shiloh

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

תּוֹשִׁיָה מָשִׁיחַ בִּקַּשְׁתַּנִי חָכְמָתָה

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

הַוָּה יָגוֹן עֵרֶב

Conjunctive ו

צְדָקָה יהוה אוֹר

Interrogative ה

הַוָּה עָרִיץ פְּלִיטָה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1. ms construct מֶלֶךְ (*a*)
2. mp construct נַעַר (*a*)
3. fp absolute שָׁפָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	2fp	מַמְלָכָה	3.	3fs	בֶּגֶד (*i*)
2.	1cp	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	4.	2fs	שָׂפָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1. 2fs ל
2. 3mp אֶל
3. 3fs אֵת (with)
4. 2fp אֵת (direct object)

6. Write and recite orally the Qal Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative (five forms), Cohortatives, and Jussive 3mp, 3fp, Participles: Active and Passive, Infinitive Absolute and Construct of the root זכר

7. Translation

1. אָמַר אֱלֹהִים אֶל־הָאִישׁ הֵאָכוֹל אָכַלְתָּ מִפְּרִי הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר בְּתוֹךְ הַגָּן׃
2. אָמַר יהוה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה הִנֵּה אֲנִי נֹתֵן לָכֶם אֶת־הָאָרֶץ וְהִנֵּה אָנֹכִי שֹׁלֵחַ אֶת־מַלְאָכִי לְפָנֶיכֶם׃
3. שִׂמְחוּ עַמִּים כִּי יהוה מֹשֵׁל בָּאָרֶץ יִרְאוּ גוֹיִם כִּי יהוה שָׁפַט אֶת־בְּנֵי־אָדָם׃
4. אָמַר הַכְּסִיל בִּלְבּוֹ אֵין־אֱלֹהִים אֵין־צַדָּקָה וְאֵין־אֱמֶת׃
5. קָרְאוּ הַנָּשִׁים הָעֹמְדוֹת לִפְנֵי הֵיכַל הַמֶּלֶךְ אֵין־לָנוּ לֶחֶם וְאֵין־לָנוּ מָיִם׃
6. צִוָּה אֶת־עַמּוֹ יהוה לִשְׁמֹר אֶת־תּוֹרָתוֹ מְאֹד׃
7. אָמַר יהוה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה זָכוֹר אִזְכֹּר הַנְּשֹׂא אֶת־שְׁמִי לְשֶׁקֶר׃
8. שִׁמְרוּ אֶת־תּוֹרוֹתַי וְאֶת־חֻקַּי כְּתֹבוּ אֹתָם עַל־לִבֵּךְ רְדֹפוּ אֹתָם כָּל־יְמֵי חַיֶּיךָ׃

CHAPTER 20
VAV-CONSECUTIVE
HEBREW SYNTAX: ACCENTS – REVIA, TIFCHA

20.1. Introduction

The Vav can attach to a Perfect or an Imperfect to form the Vav-Consecutive, a prominent characteristic of Hebrew narrative.

20.2. The Form of the Vav-Consecutive

1. Past time – Vav-Consecutive with the Imperfect (Vayiqtōl): וַיִּקְטֹל, וָאֶקְטֹל. A Vav, pointed like an Article (7.2), attaches to an Imperfect form.[109] The Vav, like the Article, takes a Patah with a Dagesh Forte in the following letter (וַתִּקְטֹל). The Alef of the 1cs form rejects the Dagesh and lengthens the preceding Patah to Qames – וָאֶקְטֹל.

2. Future time – Vav-Consecutive with the Perfect (V^{a}qātaltî):
(1) וְקָטַלְתִּי, (2) וּמָשַׁלְתִּי, (3) וּקְטַלְתֶּם, (4) וַאֲמַרְתֶּם, (5) וִידַעְתֶּם
A Vav-conjunctive (8.3) attaches to the Perfect.[110] The first form has the usual vocal shewa (in an originally opened pro-pretonic syllable). The second and third forms have a Shureq before a labial letter (בּוֹמָף letters) or before a vocal shewa. The fourth form has the Patah, the corresponding short vowel before a Hetef-Patah. The last form has a Hireq (see 8.3.3).

---

[109] Although the form resembles an Imperfect and is usually identical to the Jussive form, in reality, the form is a preterite (simple past tense). The Vav-Consecutive, pointed וַ, tends to retract the accent to the penult syllable when the final syllable is closed with a shortened (or a short) final vowel, *and* the penult syllable is opened with a long vowel.

[110] The Conjuctive-Vav tends to shift the accent to the end of the word in 1cs and 2ms forms – וְקָטַלְתִּי, וְקָטַלְתָּ. (The Qames remains under the first root letter.) Older grammarians believed that the Vavs actually converted the tense, so in וַיִּקְטֹל, the Vav converted the Imperfect into the Perfect and, in וְקָטַל, the Vav converted the Perfect into an Imperfect. Grammarians, therefore, refer to these forms as Inverted Imperfect (וַיִּקְטֹל) or Inverted Perfect (וְקָטַל). While this explanation is misleading, for the beginner, the idea of the Vav converting the tense may help in learning the construction for the student.

20.3. The Meaning of the Vav-Consecutive

1. Past time: The Perfect indicates past action in Hebrew; however, if an author relates a narrative in the past with succession (this happened ... and (then) this happened ... and (then) this happened ... etc.), then the author often begins the narrative with a verb in the Perfect or with וַיְהִי[111] and continues the narrative with Vav-Consecutives of the Imperfect.[112]

   זָכַר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־סֵפֶר־יהוה וַיִּכְתֹּב לָעָם מִצְוָה וַיִּשְׁפֹּט אֶת־הָעָם וַיִּשְׁמֹר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה׃

   "The king remembered the book of the Lord, and (then) he wrote to the people a commandment, and (then) he judged the people, and (then) he kept the word of the Lord."

2. Future time: The Imperfect indicates future action, but if an author relates a narrative in the future with succession, then the author often begins the narrative with an Imperfect verb or with וְהָיָה and continues the narrative with Vav-Consecutives of the Perfect.[113]

   יִזְכֹּר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־סֵפֶר־יהוה וְכָתַב לָעָם מִצְוָה וְשָׁפַט אֶת־הָעָם וְשָׁמַר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה׃

   "The king will remember the book of the Lord, and (then) he will write to the people a commandment, and (then) he will judge the people, and (then) he will keep the word of the Lord."

20.4. The Vav-Consecutive with an Infinitive Construct

Hebrew often begins a sentence with וַיְהִי or וְהָיָה, thus establishing the tense as past (וַיְהִי) or future (וְהָיָה) for a following Infinitive Construct[114] (with prefixed preposition בְּ or כְּ, but not לְ). This construction is a temporal clause followed by Vav-Consecutives.

1. Past

   וַיְהִי בְזִכֹּר (or כְזִכֹּר) הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־סֵפֶר־יהוה וַיִּכְתֹּב לָעָם מִצְוָה וַיִּשְׁפֹּט אֶת־הָעָם וַיִּשְׁמֹר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה׃

---

[111] וַיְהִי is the Vav-Consecutive with Imperfect of the verb הָיָה. וַיְהִי was so common that narratives and even books can begin with this word. (Also notice that וַיְהִי does not have the Dagesh Forte in the Yod of the preformative according to the rule of SQeNeMLeVY, footnote 24.) Indeed, narratives can even begin with Vav-Consecutives.

[112] For now, translate all Vav-Consecutives with the Imperfect as a past tense.

[113] For now, translate all Vav-Consecutives with the Perfect as a future tense.

[114] Infinitives are without tense in Hebrew. וַיְהִי sets the tense as past for the following Infinitive Construct; וְהָיָה sets the tense as future for the following Infinitive Construct.

Literally: And it was in (or as) the remembering of the king the book of the Lord and (then) he wrote to the people a commandment, and (then) he judged the people, and (then) he kept the word of the Lord.

Translation: (And it was) When the king remembered the book of the Lord then[115] he wrote to the people a commandment, and (then) he judged the people, and (then) he kept the word of the Lord.

2. Future

וְהָיָה בִּזְכֹר (or כִּזְכֹר) הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־סֵפֶר־יהוה וְכָתַב לָעָם מִצְוָה וְשָׁפַט אֶת־הָעָם וְשָׁמַר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה׃

Literally: And it will be in (or as) the remembering of the king the book of the Lord and (then) he will write to the people a commandment, and (then) he will judge the people, and (then) he will keep the word of the Lord.

Translation: (And it will be) When the king will remember the book of the Lord then he will write to the people a commandment, and (then) he will judge the people, and (then) he will keep the word of the Lord.

20.5. The Vav-Consecutive with כִּי

For the past tense, Hebrew also frequently begins a sentence with וַיְהִי, followed by כִּי and a Perfect verb, and then continued by a Vav with the Imperfect (Vayiqtōl). For the future tense, Hebrew begins the sentence with וְהָיָה, followed by כִּי and an Imperfect verb, and then continued by Vav with the Perfect (V^{e}qātaltî).

1. Past

וַיְהִי כִּי זָכַר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־סֵפֶר־יהוה וַיִּכְתֹּב לָעָם מִצְוָה וַיִּשְׁפֹּט אֶת־הָעָם וַיִּשְׁמֹר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה׃

Literally: And it was when the king remembered the book of the Lord and (then) he wrote... etc.

Translation: (And it was) When the king remembered the book of the Lord that he wrote... etc.

2. Future

וְהָיָה כִּי יִזְכֹּר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־סֵפֶר־יהוה וְכָתַב לָעָם מִצְוָה וְשָׁפַט אֶת־הָעָם וְשָׁמַר אֶת־דְּבַר־יהוה׃

[115] The first Vav-Consecutive form in this construction is neatly translated "then" or "that."

Literally: And it will be when the king will remember the book of the Lord and (then) he will write... etc.

Translation: (And it will be) When the king will remember the book of the Lord that he will write... etc.

20.6. Hebrew Syntax: Accents – Revia, Tifcha

Revia and Tifcha group and separate words in a sentence. In general, they do not divide or separate words as strongly as the Segolta or Zaqef (Qaton or Gadol).

1. Revia: The Revia, a diamond-shaped accent mark that separates or disjoins words, marks the accented syllable.
   :□□□ □̇□ □̂□ □̇□□
2. Tifcha: Also marking the accented syllable of a word, the Tifcha (֟) occurs one or (at the most) two words before both Silluq and Athnah.
   :□ □֟□ □□ □̂□ □֟□□

EXERCISE TWENTY

I. Questions

1. Discuss the forms of the Vav-Consecutives for past and future time.
2. Discuss the meaning of the Vav-Consecutives for past and future time.
3. Discuss the Vav-Consecutive with the Infinitive Construct. How does הָיָה influence the Infinitive Construct?
4. How should a Vav-Consecutive attached to a Perfect be translated?
5. How should a Vav-Consecutive attached to an Imperfect be translated?
6. Discuss the Vav-Consecutive with כִּי.
7. Can the Vav-Consecutive begin narratives and books?
8. Describe the Revia and Tifcha. Where does the Tifcha occur?

II. Vocabulary

מִשְׁפָּחָה	family, clan	וַיְהִי	And he (it) was (sg.)
פַּחַד (*a*)	trembling, terror	וַיִּהְיוּ	And they were (pl.)
אוֹיֵב	(Participle) enemy	וְהָיָה	And he (it) will be
יִרְאָה	fear	וְהָיוּ	And they will be
רוּחַ	spirit, wind	מָשִׁיחַ	anointed one, Messiah
בְּרָכָה	blessing	זעק	cry out
יֶתֶר (*i*)	remainder, the rest	קרע	tear up, tear away
שֹׁפֵט	(Participle) a judge	בֶּגֶד (*i*)	garment

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

כְּדָרְלָעֹמֶר　　וַתִּשְׁאָנָה　　תְּצַוּוּ　　תְּקַדְּשִׁי

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

עֶבֶד　　הָגִיג　　קָצִיר

Preposition ב

הַמִּדְבָּר　　כֶּסֶף　　חֲמוֹר

Preposition מן

חֲמוֹר　　כֶּסֶף　　הָעָם

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1. mp construct　עָמַל
2. mp absolute　קָדֵשׁ (*o*)
3. fp construct　תְּהִלָּה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	1cs	עַתּוּד	4.	1cp	שָׂרֵשׁ (*o*)
2.	2fs	שִׁמְלָה	5.	3ms	שִׁבְכָה
3.	2fp	נַעַר (*a*)	6.	3mp	יֶלֶד (*a*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	3fs	תַּחַת	3.	1cp	מִן
2.	2fs	לִפְנֵים	4.	1cs	כְּ

6. Write and recite orally the Qal Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative (5), Cohortatives, and Jussive 3ms, 3fs, Participles: Active (5) and Passive (4), Infinitive Absolute and Construct, Vav-Consecutive with Imperfect and with Perfect 3ms of the root כתב

7. Translation

1. וְיֶתֶר דִּבְרֵי שְׁלֹמֹה וְכָל־אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה וְהֵיכָלוֹ אֲשֶׁר בָּנָה וְהַכֹּסֵא
אֲשֶׁר־עָשָׂה הֲלֹא הֵם כְּתוּבִים עַל־סֵפֶר לְמַלְכֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל:

2. וַיְהִי כִּשְׁמֹעַ דָּוִד אֶת־הַדִּבְרֵי־הַמַּלְאָכִים וַיִּרְדֹּף אֶת־הָאֲנָשִׁים הַפִּשְׁעִים בֹּוֹ
אֶל־הָעִיר:

3. וַיְהִי אַחֲרֵי־כְתֹב מֹשֶׁה אֶת־הַתּוֹרָה וַיִּקְרַב הָעָם אֶל־הַיַּרְדֵּן וּמֹשֶׁה לֹא
עָבַר אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן וַיִּשְׁפְּטוּ הַשֹּׁפְטִים אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל יָמִים רַבִּים:

4. אָמַר יהוה אִם שָׁמַע תִּשְׁמְעוּ בְּקֹל־עֲבָדַי הַנְּבִיאִים וְקָבַצְתִּי אֶתְכֶם
מֵהַגּוֹיִם וְשָׁלַחְתִּי עֲלֵיכֶם בִּרְכָתִי וְשָׁמַרְתִּי אֶתְכֶם מִכָּל־רָע:

5. וַיְהִי כִּי קָרְאוּ בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶל־יהוה וַיִּשְׁמְעוּ פְּלִשְׁתִּים אֶת־הַדָּבָר
וַיִּבְרְחוּ אֶל־אַרְצָם וְלֹא עָשׂוּ מִלְחָמָה בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל עוֹד:

6. דִּבֶּר הַנָּבִיא כֹּה אָמַר יהוה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל קִרְעוּ לְבַבְכֶם וְאַל בִּגְדֵיכֶם
זִכְרוּ אֶת־יהוה וְאַל־אֱלֹהִים אֲחֵרִים:

7. וְהָיָה כִּי־תִקְרְאוּ אֵלַי וְשָׁמַעְתִּי מִשָּׁמַיִם וְשָׁכַחְתִּי אֶת־חַטַּאתְכֶם וְרָדַפְתִּי
אֶת־שְׁלוֹמְכֶם:

CHAPTER 21
THE STATIVE VERB
THE PERFECT: ADDITIONAL TENSE OPTIONS

21.1. Introduction

The Stative Verb[116] is a conjugated adjective, an adjective converted into a verb: כבד "to be heavy," גדל "to be great," קטן "to be small."

21.2. Thematic Vowels

The thematic vowel (18.2.1), the vowel appearing under the second root letter (R_2) of a verb (or verbal), varies. The following observations are general; exceptions occur because of the "weakness" of the verb. The thematic vowels are more easily learned and discussed if viewed as colors.

Colors: A (Patah/Qames) = Red; E(Sere) / I (Hireq-Yod) = Green; O (Qames-Hatuf/Holem) = Orange

QAL

Standard		Stative	
A/O	כתב	E/A	מלא
A/E	נתן	A-e/A	כבד
A/A	שלח	A/A	גדל
		O/A	קטן

1. The letter before the slash (/) is the thematic vowel for the Perfect; the letter after the backslash is the thematic vowel for the Imperfect-Imperative: Perfect/Imperfect-Imperative

2. In the Perfect, the smaller case letter refers to the 3ms form (and the pausal 3ms, 3cp and 3fs forms).

3. The Standard Verbs must have a red vowel (A) in the Perfect; the Stative Verbs must have a red vowel (A) in the Imperfect-Imperative.

4. Notice the Stative Perfect evolves from all green (E), to slightly green/mostly red (A-e), to all red (A) (analogy to the standard Qal).

5. In the Qal, the thematic vowels for particular verbs must be learned by observation.

[116] The non-Stative Verbs, chapters 17-20, are designated Standard Verbs. Biblical Hebrew does not strictly separate Stative and Standard Verbs: some Stative Verbs have become Standard Verbs in form and meaning; some Standard Verbs have become Stative Verbs in meaning.

21.3. Stative Verbs: Perfect

	כבד A-e/	קטן O/
1cs	כָּבַדְתִּי	קָטַנְתִּי
2ms	כָּבַדְתָּ	קָטַנְתָּ
2fs	כָּבַדְתְּ	קָטַנְתְּ
3ms	כָּבֵד	קָטֹן
3fs	כָּבְדָה	קָטְנָה
1cp	כָּבַדְנוּ	קָטַנּוּ (קָטַנְנוּ)
2mp	כְּבַדְתֶּם	קְטַנְתֶּם
2fp	כְּבַדְתֶּן	קְטַנְתֶּן
3cp	כָּבְדוּ	קָטְנוּ

1. כבד: The Stative Perfect of כבד is identical to the Standard Verb (for example, קטל), except the 3ms has a Sere thematic vowel (21.2.2).

2. קטן: This verb has a Holem for the thematic vowel (or Qames-Hatuf in the closed unaccented syllables in the 2mp, 2fp). In the 1cp form, קָטַנּוּ contracts from קָטַנְנוּ.

21.4. Stative Verb: Imperfect

	כבד /A	קטן /A
1cs	אֶכְבַּד	אֶקְטַן
2ms	תִּכְבַּד	תִּקְטַן
2fs	תִּכְבְּדִי	תִּקְטְנִי
3ms	יִכְבַּד	יִקְטַן
3fs	תִּכְבַּד	תִּקְטַן
1cp	נִכְבַּד	נִקְטַן
2mp	תִּכְבְּדוּ	תִּקְטְנוּ
2fp	תִּכְבַּדְנָה	תִּקְטַנָּה
3mp	יִכְבְּדוּ	יִקְטְנוּ
3fp	תִּכְבַּדְנָה	תִּקְטַנָּה

Cohortative 1cs	אֶכְבְּדָה	אֶקְטְנָה
Jussive 3ms	יְכִבַּד	יְקִטַן
Imperfect with Vav-Consecutive	וַיִּכְבַּד	וַיִּקְטַן

Stative Verbs have a Patah for the thematic vowel in the Imperfect. For the Imperfect 2fp, 3fp of קטן, the Nun of the suffix assimilates to the Nun of the root – *תִּקְטַּנְנָה > תִּקְטַּנָּה.

21.5. Stative Verb: Imperative

	כבד /A	קטן /A
2ms	כְּבַד	קְטַן
2fs	כִּבְדִי	קִטְנִי
2mp	כִּבְדוּ	קִטְנוּ
2fp	כִּבַּדְנָה	קִטַּנָּה
Emphatic Imperative		כָּבְדָה

Stative Verbs have a Patah for the thematic vowel in the Imperative. קִטַּנָּה (2fp) contracts from *קִטַּנְנָה.

21.6. Stative Verb: Active Participle

	Absolute	Construct	Absolute	Construct
ms	כָּבֵד	כְּבֵד	קָטֹן	קְטַן
fs	כְּבֵדָה	כִּבַּדַת	קְטַנָּה	קִטַּנַת
mp	כְּבֵדִים	כִּבְדֵי	קְטַנִּים	קִטַּנֵי
fp	כְּבֵדוֹת	כִּבְדוֹת	קְטַנּוֹת	קִטַּנוֹת

Participles of the Stative Verbs are verbal adjectives. They follow noun reduction patterns (6.3), not verbal reduction patterns, as in the Participles of Standard Verbs (19.2.1.3). *The Active Participle masculine singular is always identical to the Perfect 3ms*. Notice in the construct forms, the Sere or Holem thematic vowels do not reduce.

21.7. Stative Verb: Infinitives

Absolute	כָּבוֹד	קָטוֹן
Construct	כְּבַד	קְטַן

21.8. The Perfect: Additional Tense Options

The Perfect, a past tense, can also be translated as a present tense. This is especially common with:

1. Stative Verbs – כָּבֵד he is heavy, אָהֵב he loves, שָׂנֵא he hates
2. Standard Verbs that express a state of mind – זָכַר he remembers, בָּטַח he trusts, יָדַע he knows

Translate these verbs, both Stative and Standard, in the past tense if the context requires it.

EXERCISE TWENTY-ONE

I. Questions

1. Define a Stative Verb. Compare and contrast Stative Verbs to Standard Verbs.
2. Give the colors for the following thematic vowels: A, E, I, O.
3. In the Perfect of the Standard Verb, what is the thematic vowel? In the Imperfect of the Stative Verbs, what is the thematic vowel?
4. What does the slash (/) indicate?
5. List all possible thematic vowels for the Perfect / Imperfect-Imperative.
6. What does a smaller case letter in A-e/A indicate?
7. How does the Stative Perfect differ from the Standard Perfect in כבד? In קטן?
8. How does the Stative Participle differ from the Standard Active Participle? Which form of the Participle and of the Perfect are always identical?
9. Discuss when the Perfect may be translated as a present tense.

II. Vocabulary

גדל	(A/A) be (become) great, mature, strong	צָרָה	distress
		אָהַב, אָהֵב	(A/A or A-e/A) to love
עֹז	(with suffix עֻזִּי) strength, might, power	שׁכן	dwell, settle
		כְּלִי	vessel, weapon
מָוֶת	(construct מוֹת, see footnote 68) death	בַּעַל	owner, lord, Baal
		כָּבֵד	(A-e/A) to be heavy
מוֹאָב	Moab	זָקֵן	(A-e/A) to be old
מָגֵן	shield	קבר	bury

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

וְרָדְפֻהוּ　　וַיִּשְׁחָהוּ　　עָנְיִי　　מִגְדָּלֶיהָ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

עִוֶּר　　יָגוֹן　　רָשָׁע

Conjunctive ו

עָרִיץ עֲנִי בַּבַּיִת

Interrogative ה

סֹמֶל עֲלִיל רָשָׁף

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1. mp construct צַדִּיק
2. mp absolute נַעַר (*a*)
3. fp construct אַדְמָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	3ms	הַוָּה	3.	1cs	אַנְפָּה
2.	2fp	מַלְכָּךְ (*a*)	4.	3mp	קָדֶשׁ (*o*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1. 1cs אֵל
2. 2ms תַּחַת
3. 1cp כְּ
4. 2fs עִם

6. Write and recite orally the Qal Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative, Cohortatives, and Jussive 3mp, 3fp, Participles and the Infinitives of the root זָקַן (A-e/A)

7. Translation

1. וּשְׁמוּאֵל הָיָה נַעַר וַיִּגְדַּל וַיִּקְרַב אֶל־הַהֵיכָל לִזְבֹּחַ זָבַח׃
2. אַחַר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הָיָה דְבַר־יהוה אֶל־אַבְרָהָם לֵאמֹר מָגֵן לְךָ אָנֹכִי וְהַר עַז לָךְ[117]׃
3. אָמַר אֵלְיָהוּ הַנָּבִיא קִבְצוּ אֵת־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל הָהָרָה וְקִרְאוּ נְבִיאֵי הַבַּעַל בְּשֵׁם־אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וַאֲנִי אֶקְרָא בְּשֵׁם יהוה אֱלֹהֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל׃
4. וַיְהִי אַחֲרֵי מוֹת־מֹשֶׁה עֶבֶד־יהוה וַיֹּאמֶר בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֹתוֹ בְּהָרֵי מוֹאָב וְלֹא יָדַע אִישׁ אֶת־הַמָּקוֹם הַהוּא עַד־הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה׃
5. בָּא יוֹם יהוה יוֹם חֹשֶׁךְ וְצָרָה וַיהוה שֹׁפֵט אֶת־הָרְשָׁעִים וְהוּא הֹרֵג אֶת־הַפְּשָׁעִים׃

[117] Pausal form of לְךָ.

6. עָשָׂה מוֹאָב מִלְחָמָה אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיִּבְרַח יִשְׂרָאֵל מִפְּנֵי־מוֹאָב וַיִּשְׁלַח
יִשְׂרָאֵל מַלְאָכִים אֶל־מֶלֶךְ־מוֹאָב לִכְרֹת עִמּוֹ בְּרִית־שָׁלוֹם:
Inf. const

7. וַיְהִי כְּמְלֹךְ דָּוִד עַל־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיִּפְשַׁע אַבְשָׁלוֹם בְּאָבִיו וְרַע
בְּעֵינֵי־כָל־הָעָם הַזֹּאת:

8. מַשְׁלוּ פְלִשְׁתִּים בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל וַיִּשְׁכֹּן הָעָם בָּאֳהָלִים וּבְהָרִים וְאֵין חֶרֶב
וְכִלְיָ לָהֶם:

CHAPTER 22
OVERVIEW OF THE STRONG VERB

22.1. Introduction

A "Weak Verb" is a verb with a weak letter: Vav, Yod, Nun or a Guttural letter; a Strong Verb is a verb (with three letters) without a weak letter. So far, only the Qal of the Strong Verb has been presented. Now, the rest of the Strong Verb, the so-called derived stems,[118] (Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el, Hiph'il, Hoph'al, and Niph'al) will be surveyed.

22.2. Derived Stems: The Names of the Stems

The names of the derived stems are formed from the root פעל. Learning the proper spelling of these derived stems is essential to mastering the Strong Verb.

Theme vowel under R_2
A (◌ַ) = Red
E (◌ֵ) = Green
I (◌ִ) = "
O (◌ֹ or ◌וֹ) = Orange
Perfect/Imper-Imperative

פִּעֵל[119]	Pi"el	הִפְעִיל	Hiph'il
פֻּעַל	Pu"al	הָפְעַל	Hoph'al
הִתְפַּעֵל (3ms)	Hithpa"el	נִפְעַל	Niph'al

In the word Pi"el, the "P" represents the first root letter of the word (R_1); the "i," the vowel under the first letter; the "", " the doubled second root letter (R_2); the "e," the thematic vowel under the second root letter; the "l," the third root letter (R_3).

22.3. Derived Stems: Characteristics – Boxes

Qal - He broke

Intensive-	Pi"el (Pa"el) He shattered	Pu"al He was shattered	Hithpa"el He shattered himself
Perfect	□⊡□	□⊡□	הִתְ□⊡□
Imperfect (3ms)	יְ□⊡□	יְ□⊡□	יִתְ□⊡□
Imperative (2ms)	□⊡□		הִתְ□⊡□
Infinitive	□⊡□	□⊡□	הִתְ□⊡□
Participle (ms)	מְ□⊡□	מְ□⊡□	מִתְ□⊡□

	Hiph'il (Haph'il) He caused to break	Hoph'al He was caused to break	Niph'al - Reflexive - He was broken He was broken
Perfect	הִ□□	הָ□□	נִ□□
Imperative	הַ□□		הִ□□ will be cut off
Infinitive	הַ□□		הִ□□/נִ□□ ABS — construct or ABS
Participle	מַ□□	מָ□□	נִ□□

	Indic	Intensive	Causative
Active	Qal (He Broke)	Pi"el (He shattered)	Hiph'il He caused to break
Passive		Pu"al He was shattered	Hoph'al He was caused to break
Reflexive	Niph'al (He was broken)	Hithpa"el he shattered himself	

[118] So-called because they seem to be derived from the Qal.

[119] The Dagesh Forte in the Ayin is hypothetical.

Memorize these boxes by properly spelling the name of the stem. The names of the stems virtually supply the boxes.

1. The Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el: The Dagesh Forte in the second root letter and the preceding short vowel under the first root letter (a closed unaccented syllable) characterizes these stems.
    1. The stem name Pi"el aids only in the Perfect: outside the Perfect, the Pi"el is actually a Pa"el: a Patah (not a Hireq) precedes the Dagesh Forte in the second root letter. The 1cs preformative (Alef) of the Imperfect takes a Hatef-Patah.

    2. Pu"al: A Qibbus under the first root letter precedes the Dagesh Forte of the second root letter. The 1cs preformative (Alef) of the Imperfect takes a Hatef-Patah.

    3. Hithpa"el: A Patah under the first root letter precedes the Dagesh Forte of the second root letter. The preformative syllable הִתְ (יִתְ in the Imperfect, מִתְ in the Participle) precedes the verbal root.

2. The Hiph'il and Hoph'al: The preformative ה attached to the verbal root[120] characterizes these stems.
    1. Hiph'il: The stem name aids only in the Perfect. The preformative ה has a Hireq under it, and the first root letter has a silent shewa. Except for the Perfect, the Hiph'il is actually a Haph'il. The preformative letter ה has a Patah under it, and the first root letter has a silent shewa.

    2. Hoph'al: In the Perfect, the preformative ה has a Qames-Hatuf followed by a silent shewa under the first root letter. In the Imperfect and Participle, the preformative (אָיְתָן for the Imperfect; מ for the Participle) supplants the ה of the Hoph'al.

3. Niph'al: The the preformative נ attached to the verbal root characterizes the Niph'al. In the Perfect, the Participle, and one option of the Infinitive Absolute, the preformative נ has a Hireq under it, with a following silent shewa under the first root letter. In the Imperfect, the preformative has a Hireq under it; in the Imperative and the Infinitive Construct and one option of the Infinitive Absolute, the preformative ה has a Hireq under it. The Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitive Construct and one option of the Infinitive Absolute have a Dagesh Forte in the first root letter (R_1, the assimilated נ of the Niph'al) and a Qames under it.

[120] In the Imperfect and Participle, the ה originally between vowels drops: *יַהַקְטִיל > יַקְטִיל, *מַהַקְטִיל > מַקְטִיל (see footnote 48).

22.4. Thematic Vowels (Perfect/Imperfect-Imperative) of the Derived Stems

Derived Conjugations

Active	(Qal)	* Pi"el	* Hiph'il
		A-e/E	A-i/I-e
Passive		* Pu"al	* Hoph'al
		A/A	A/A
Reflexive	Niph'al	* Hithpa"el	
	A/E-a	A-e/E-a	
	Simple	Intensive	Causative

1. The letter before the slash (/) is the thematic vowel for the Perfect; the letter after the backslash is the thematic vowel for the Imperfect-Imperative: Perfect/Imperfect-Imperative.

2. In the Perfect, the smaller case letter refers to the 3ms form (also 3fs and 3cp in the Hiph'il); in the Imperfect-Imperative, the smaller case letter refers to the 2fp and 3fp forms.

3. "A" stands for Patah (Red, rarely Qames); "E" for Sere (Green); "I" for Hireq-Yod (Green).

4. The Active and Reflexive
   1. The Perfect is predominately red (Patah usually, Qames rarely).
      Exceptions: 3ms is green in Pi"el and Hithpa"el; 3ms, 3fs, 3cp (the threes) are green in Hiph'il.
   2. The Imperfects-Imperatives are green in the active (the Imperfects-Imperatives of the Hiph'il are /I-e) and predominately green in the reflexive.
      There are exceptions in the reflexive: 2fp, 3fp are red.

5. The Passive is all red A/A (Communist).

6. *If the details are forgotten, remember A/E for all stems except the Pu"al, Hoph'al A/A. Memorize A/E for the chart: Pi"el has a little green (3ms) in the Perfect; Niph'al has a little red (2, 3fp) in the Imperfect-Imperative; Hithpa"el is the most colorful A-e/E-a; Hiph'il has the Hireq-Yod A-i/I-e; the Pu"al and Hoph'al are Communists (all red) A/A.*

22.5. Thematic Vowels of Infinitives and Participles

1. Infinitives (Exclude the Pu"al and Hoph'al because they are rare.)
    1. Infinitive Absolute
        1. Orange: Niph'al, Pi"el(!)
        2. Green: Pi"el, Hiph'il (ֵ), Hithpa"el

        The orange forms probably reflect the Canaanite Shift (Ā > Ō). These vowels generally follow the final vowel of the derived stem names: Hithpa"el, the final vowel "e" is green; Niph'al, the final vowel "a" (> ō), is orange. The Pi"el form is exceptional.

        Exceptions: The Pi"el can be either orange or green; the Hiph'il has a Sere.
    2. Infinitive Construct

        Green: Pi"el, Hiph'il (הַ ֵ), Hithpa"el, Niph'al
2. Participles
    1. Green: Pi"el, Hiph'il (מַ ֵ), Hithpa"el (pretonic reduction except for the historic long Hireq-Yod of the Hiph'il)
    2. Red: Pu"al, Hoph'al, Niph'al (Irreducible Qames)

    These vowels follow the final vowel of the derived stem names: for example, Pi"el, the final vowel "e," is green; Hoph'al, the final vowel "a," is *irreducible* Qames.

22.6. Synopsis of the Strong Verbs: Derived Stems

Memorize ★

	Pi"el (Pa"el)	Pu"al	Hithpa"el
	A-e_{3ms}/E	A/A	A-e_{3ms} /E-$a_{2fp, 3fp}$
Perfect	□◌ִ□	□◌ֻ□	הִתְ□◌ִ□
Imperfect	יְ□◌ִ□	יְ□◌ֻ□	יִתְ□◌ִ□
Imperative	□◌ִ□		הִתְ□◌ִ□
Infinitive	□◌ִ□		הִתְ□◌ִ□
Participle	מְ□◌ִ□	מְ□◌ֻ□	מִתְ□◌ִ□

	Hiph'il (Haph'il)	Hoph'al	Niph'al
	A-$i_{3ms, 3fs, 3cp}$ /I-$e_{2fp, 3fp}$	Ā/A	A/E-$a_{2fp, 3fp}$
	No Vowel Reduction		
Perfect	הִ□□ְ□	הָ□□ָ□	נִ□□ְ□
Imperfect	יַ□□ְ□	יָ□□ָ□	יִ□□ֶ□
Imperative	הַ□□ְ□		הִ□□ֶ□
Infinitive	הַ□□ְ□		הִ□□ֶ□/נִ□□ְ□
Participle	מַ□□ְ□	מָ□□ָ□	נִ□□ְ□

In the Imperfect, the Yod (יְ) stands for all Imperfect preformatives (אֵיתָן)

1. Infinitives:
    1. Infinitive Absolute
        1. Orange: Niph'al, Pi"el (!)
        2. Green: Pi"el, Hiph'il (ֵ), Hithpa"el
    2. Infinitive Construct
        Green: Pi"el, Hiph'il (ֶ), Hithpa"el, Niph'al (!)

2. Participles
    1. Green (pretonic reduction): Pi"el, Hithpa"el, Hiph'il (ֶ)
    2. Red (irreducible Qames): Pu"al, Hoph'al, Niph'al

EXERCISE TWENTY-TWO

I. Questions

1. Define Strong Verb and Weak Verb. What are the "weak" letters?
2. List the derived stems (spell them properly).
3. What two derived stems have a variant name? What are the variant names?
4. How should the boxes of the derived stems be memorized?
5. What is the characteristic of Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el? Hiph'il, Hoph'al? Niph'al?
6. When does the He drop in the Hiph'il and Hoph'al?
7. When does the Nun assimilate in the Niph'al?
8. If the details of the thematic vowels are forgotten, what pattern should be remembered?
9. How are the thematic vowels of the Infinitive and Participles memorized?

II. Vocabulary

יְשׁוּעָה	salvation	סָבִיב	all around, all about, surrounding
מכר	sell	שָׂפָה	lip, shore
ילד	bear a child	עֹלָה	burnt offering
שִׂמְחָה	rejoicing, joy	אֶבֶן (*a*)	(f) stone
יִרְמְיָה, יִרְמְיָהוּ	Jeremiah	נֶפֶשׁ (*a*)	soul, life
לָשׁוֹן	tongue, language	בֵּית לֶחֶם	Bethlehem
אֲרוֹן	(with Article הָאָרוֹן) ark, chest	אֱדוֹם	Edom

Pi"el Impf 2ms of שָׁמַר → Pa"el ← Step to build this Verb

Box 1. ☒☒☒ → שָׁמַר ?

Color 2. A-e(E) → שָׁמֵר ?

Real 3. 2ms = (תִּשְׁמְרִי) → שָׁמֵר תִּ = you will carefully guard 2ms Impf intensively verb

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

עָיְפָה　　הַשְּׁבִית　　מְלוֹאָה　　יִשְׁדְּדֵם

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

הָרָה　　יְלָלָה　　עָב

Preposition ל

אֱלֹהִים　　מְבוּכָה　　שֶׁבֶת

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. fp construct　מִלְחָמָה
   2. dual construct　אֹזֶן (*o*)
   3. fs construct　תִּפְלָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	2ms	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	3.	2fs	חֶרֶב (*a*)
2.	1cs	צְדָקָה	4.	1cs	חָכָם

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	1cp	עַל	3.	3ms	אֵת (direct object)
2.	1cs	לְמַעַן	4.	2ms	לִפְנִים

6. Write and recite orally the Qal Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative (5), Cohortatives, and Jussive 3ms, 3fs, Participles, Infinitives, Vav-Consecutive with Imperfect 3ms and with Perfect 3ms of the root קטן (O/A).

7. Write out the boxes for the derived stems and the thematic vowels for the derived stems, including the thematic vowels for the Infinitives and the Participles.

Hiph'il Participle mp of שמר
1. מַשְׁמִר מַשְׁמִרִים
2. I מַשְׁמִיר
3 מַשְׁמִירִים→שְׁמִרִים

8. Translation

1. עָשָׂה יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶת־הָרַע בְּעֵינֵי־יְהוָה וַיִּמְכֹּר יהוה אֹתָם בְּיַד־אוֹיְבֵיהֶם
מִסָּבִיב וַתִּכָּבֵד מְאֹד יַד־יְהוָה עֲלֵיהֶם׃

2. הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אֶל־הַנָּבִיא מֵאֵת יְהוָה לֵאמֹר בְּשַׁעַר בֵּית יְהוָה
תִּקְרָא אֶת־הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה וְאָמַרְתָּ שִׁמְעוּ דְבַר־יְהוָה כָּל־הַהֹלְכִים
אֶל־הַשְּׁעָרִים הָאֵלֶּה׃

3. וַיְהִי אֲרוֹן יְהוָה בְּאֶרֶץ־פְּלִשְׁתִּים וַיִּקְרְאוּ פְּלִשְׁתִּים לַכֹּהֲנִים עַזְבֵנוּ
אֶת־הָאָרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְקָחְנוּ׃

4. זֶה סֵפֶר הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נָתַן מֹשֶׁה לִבְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל נִשְׁמְרָה אֶת־הַתּוֹרוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה וּמִצְוֹתָיו נִשְׁמָעָה׃

5. הֶאָמוֹר אָמַר הַנָּבִיא לָכֶם כִּי בָא יוֹם מִשְׁפָּט הֲלֹא אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם כִּי
דִבְרֵי שֶׁקֶר הֵמָּה׃

6. וַיְהִי בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם וַיִּגְדַּל מֹשֶׁה וַיִּשְׁכֹּן בְּמִצְרַיִם וַיִּקָּרֵא לְעַבְדֵי פַּרְעֹה
לֵאמֹר בֶּן־מִי אֲנִי וְהֵמָּה לֹא אֶמְרוּ לוֹ דָּבָר׃

7. כָּתַב הַנָּבִיא אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל־הָאֲבָנִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת אֶשְׂמַח בַּיהוה
כִּי נָתַן לְעַמּוֹ יְשׁוּעָה׃

Niph'al pf 1cs of שבר

1) נִפְעַל > נִשְׁבַּרְתִּי

2) A/E-e > נִשְׁבַּרְתִּי

3) קָטַלְתִּי > נִשְׁבַּרְתִּי I was broken.

נִשְׁבַּרְתָּ - you were broken Niph'al pf 2ms שבר

1) נִפְעַל

2) A/E-a

3) קָטַלְתָּ

CHAPTER 23
THE INTENSIVES: PI"EL, PU"AL, HITHPA"EL

23.1. This chapter (and the next two chapters), building upon chapter 22, emphasizes the forming, parsing, and meaning of the Intensive Stems – Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el.

23.2. Forming the Intensive Stems – Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el

To form the Intensive Stems properly, follow a three step process:

1. Memorize the boxes by spelling the stems properly (22.2 and 22.3).[121]

	Pi"el (Pa"el)	Pu"al	Hithpa"el
Perfect	□⊙□	□⊙□	הִתְ□⊙□
Imperfect	□⊙□ִי	□⊙□ִי	יִתְ□⊙□
Imperative	□⊙□		הִתְ□⊙□
Infinitive	□⊙□		הִתְ□⊙□
Participle	מְ□⊙□	מְ□⊙□	מִתְ□⊙□

Remember: the 1cs preformative (Alef) of the Imperfect takes a Hatef-Patah.

2. Memorize the thematic vowels.

	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el
Perfect/Imperfect-Imperative	A-e/E	A/A	A-e/E-a
Infinitive Absolute	E or O	_	E
Infinitive Construct	E	_	E
Participle	E	A	E

3. Know the Qal stem thoroughly: especially, the preformative and sufformative elements on the root.[122]

23.3. Examples of Forming Intensive Stems

1. Pi"el Perfect 1cs שׁבר

1.	Boxes:	□⊙□ (Pi"el)	שִׁבֵּר
2.	Colors:	A-e/E	שִׁבֵּר
3.	Qal stem:	שָׁבַרְתִּי	שִׁבַּרְתִּי
	Answer:		שִׁבַּרְתִּי

[121] The Dagesh Forte may be omitted in the letters ס, צ, שׁ, שׂ, ל, מ, נ, ק, ו, י with a vocal shewa (footnote 24).

[122] Elements within the Qal verbal root are unnecessary for forming the Intensive Stems.

1. Step one derives the boxes from the stem name Pi"el: Dagesh Forte in the second root letter, Hireq under the first root letter.
2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (Patah) and implies the silent shewa.
3. Step three adds the 1cs pronominal suffix of the Perfect as memorized in the Qal. The syllabic ending makes explicit the implicit silent shewa.

2. Pu"al Imperfect 1cs שׁבר

1.	Boxes:	□⊙□ְ (Pu"al)	יְשֻׁבַּר
2.	Colors:	A/A	יְשֻׁבַּר
3.	Qal stem:	אֶשְׁבֹּר	אֶשֻׁבַּר
	Answer:		אֶשֻׁבַּר

1. Step one derives the boxes from the stem name Pu"al: Dagesh Forte in the second root letter, a Qibbus under the first root letter, and a Yod, representing all the Imperfect preformatives, with a vocal shewa (because in the opened pro-pretonic position).
2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (Patah).
3. Step three adds the 1cs preformative of the Qal Imperfect (א). The 1cs preformative (Alef) of the Imperfect takes a Hatef-Patah.

3. Hithpa"el Participle ms שׁבר

1.	Boxes:	□⊙□ִתְ (Hithpa"el)	מִתְשַׁבֵּר >	מִשְׁתַּבֵּר[123]
2.	Colors:	Green		מִשְׁתַּבֵּר
3.	Qal stem:	שָׁבַר		———
	Answer:			מִשְׁתַּבֵּר

1. Step one derives the boxes from the stem name Hithpa"el: Dagesh Forte in the second root letter, a Patah under the first root letter, and the הִתְ syllabic preformative, מִתְ in the Participle.
2. Step two adds the green (Sere) thematic vowel.
3. Step three adds nothing because there are no preformative or sufformative elements from the Qal.

[123] Note the transposition of שׁ and ת. The Hithpa"el is adjusted with verbs beginning with certain letters: with the sibilants ס, שׁ, שׂ, the reflexive ת of the prefix הת transposes with the sibilant: הִתְשַׁמֵּר > הִשְׁתַּמֵּר. With the sibilant צ, the ת transposes, and the ת partially assimilates to a ט: *הִתְצַדֵּק > הִצְטַדֵּק > *הִצְתַּדֵּק. With the dentals ד, ט, ת, and the נ, the ת of the prefix often assimilates fully: *הִתְטַהֵר > הִטַּהֵר, *הִתְנַבֵּא > הִנַּבֵּא.

23.4. Parsing the Intensive Stems – Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el

Parsing is a process of elimination. Try to eliminate possibilities with each step.
The three steps are the same as when creating the forms (23.2).

1. קַטְּלִי

1.	Boxes:	□⊡□	Pi"el Imperative, Infinitive Construct, Absolute.
2.	Colors:	_____	Eliminates 2ms, 2fp Imperative and Infinitives
3.	Qal stem:	קְטָלִי	Eliminates all forms except Imperative 2fs
	Answer:	Pi"el Imperative 2fs of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes: Pi"el Imperative, Infinitive Absolute, or Construct.
2. Step two eliminates the Imperative 2ms, 2fp and Infinitives forms because they do not have vocal shewa.
3. Step three is the Qal stem. The form must be an Imperative because the Infinitives do not end in Hireq-Yod. The 2fs Imperative ends in Hireq-Yod, thus eliminating Imperative 2mp.

2. קְטַלְתֶּן

1.	Boxes:	□⊡□	Pu"al Perfect
2.	Colors:	A (A/A)	Eliminates forms with vocalic endings (vocal shewa): 3fs, 3cp
3.	Qal stem:	קְטַלְתֶּן	Eliminates all forms except Perfect 2fp
	Answer:	Pu"al Perfect 2fp of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes: Pu"al Perfect.
2. Step two eliminates forms with vocal shewa: 3fs, 3cp.
3. Step three confirms the Perfect conjugation and eliminates all forms except the Perfect 2fp.

3. הִתְקַטֵּל

1.	Boxes:	הִתְ□⊡□	Hithpa"el Perfect, Imperative, Infinitive Absolute, or Infinitive Construct
2.	Colors:	green (A-e/E-a)	Eliminates all Perfects except 3ms and all Imperatives except 2ms
3.	Qal stem:		_____
	Answer:	Hithpa"el Perfect 3ms, or Imperative 2ms, or Infinitive Absolute, or Infinitive Construct of קטל	

1. Step one identifies all the possible boxes.

2. Step two, a green thematic vowel, eliminates all Perfects except 3ms and all Imperatives except 2ms.
3. Step three is without Qal preformatives or sufformatives.

23.5. The Meaning of the Intensive Stems

These stems are traditionally called Intensive because the doubling of the second root letter intensifies the action in some way. The Intensive Stems, of course, also have other meanings.

1. Pi"el
   1. Intensive: שָׁבַר (Qal) to break – שִׁבֵּר (Pi"el) to smash; צָחַק (Qal) to laugh – צִחֵק (Pi"el) to laugh to scorn, to mock
      The action may also be intensified by extending the action to many objects: קטל (Qal) to kill – קִטֵּל (Pi"el) to kill one after another, to massacre

   2. Factitive (to make)

	Qal	Pi"el
למד	to learn	to make learn (to teach)
אבד	to perish, disappear	to make someone perish, disappear
קדשׁ	to be holy	to make holy

      Many of these verbs are statives in the Qal; the Pi"el puts one into the state of the Qal. For instance, כבד – Qal: to be heavy, Pi"el: to put in a heavy state, or to make heavy

   3. Denominative[124] (from the noun)
      דִּבֵּר to speak words (from the noun דָּבָר)
      כִּהֵן (Note the implicit Dagesh Forte in the ה) to act like a priest (from the noun כֹּהֵן)

2. Pu"al: The Pu"al is the passive of the Pi"el.
   1. Intensive: שׁבר – Pi"el: to smash, Pu"al: to be smashed
   2. Factitive: קדשׁ – Pi"el: to make holy, Pu"al: to be made holy

3. Hithpa"el: The Hithpa"el is the passive/reflexive of the Pi"el
   1. Intensive: הלל – Pi"el: to praise, Hithpa"el: to be praised (passive)
   2. Factitive: קדשׁ – Pi"el: to make holy, Hithpa"el: to make oneself holy (reflexive)

[124] Compare the English denominative verb "to phone (someone)."

EXERCISE TWENTY-THREE

I. Questions

1. What are the Intensive Stems?
2. What are the three steps to form the Intensive Stems?
3. Describe the adjustments (transpositions) necessary for the Hithpa"el.
4. Describe the process of parsing.
5. What are the three steps to parse the Intensive Stems?
6. What are the possible meanings of the Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el?

II. Vocabulary

אֶרֶז (*a*)	cedar	גדל	Qal: be great
יָהּ	shortened form of יהוה		Pi"el: make great, magnify
בקשׁ	Pi"el: seek	דרשׁ	Qal: seek
למד	Qal: learn	יַחְדָּו	all together, together
	Pi"el: make learn (teach)	ספר	Qal: count
נבא	Hithpa"el and Niph'al: prophesy		Pi"el: recount, declare (in detail)
הלל	Qal: boast	שׁבר	Qal: break
	Pi"el: praise		Pi"el: smash
	Hithpa"el: boast oneself, boast in (ב)	לְבָנוֹן	Lebanon (הַלְּבָנוֹן with article)
		קדשׁ	Qal: be holy
פלל	Hithpa"el: pray		Pi"el: make holy
מלט	Pi"el: deliver, save		Hithpa"el: make oneself holy

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

בַּגַּיְא　　אָזַלְתָּ　　וַיִּזְבְּחוּ　　שָׁמַרְתָּ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

הָדָר　　הוּא　　חַלָּה

Conjunctive ו

בְּרָכָה　　לַיְלָה　　אֱלֹהִים

Interrogative ה

אָמוֹר בְּרָכָה מָתְנַיִם

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1. ms construct עָמָל
2. fs construct צְדָקָה
3. ms construct כֶּסֶף (*a*)

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 1cs	צַוָּאר	3. 3mp	שִׁבְטָה
2. 2fp	מֶלֶךְ (*a*)	4. 2ms	יֶלֶד (*a*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1. 3ms מִן
2. 2fs ל
3. 3ms עִם
4. 3mp תַּחַת

6. Verbs: Give the three steps and the final answer and translate

(1) Boxes
(2) Colors
(3) Qal Stem
Final Answer

1. Create: Pi"el
   1. Perfect 3ms דבר
   2. Participle fs (t) קדשׁ
   3. Infinitive Absolute שׁבר
   4. Cohortative plural קדשׁ

   Pu"al
   1. Cohortative 1cs קדשׁ
   2. Perfect 3cp בקשׁ
   3. Participle mp שׁבר
   4. Imperfect 3ms (+Vav-Consecutive) בקשׁ

   Hithpa"el
   1. Imperative 2ms פלל
   2. Perfect 3ms הלך
   3. Participle fp נבא
   4. Infinitive Absolute קדשׁ

2. Parse: Give the three steps (eliminating forms in each step) and all possible final answers and translate all vocabulary words

1.	שַׁבֵּר	5.	הִתְקַטֵּל
2.	קִטֵּל	6.	נִסְתַּתְּרָה
3.	קִטְּלוּ	7.	מְשֻׁבָּרוֹת
4.	מְקַטְּלִי	8.	מִסְתַּכְּלִים

7. Translation

1. יִהְיוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר אָנֹכִי אֹמֵר לְךָ הַיּוֹם עַל־לְבָבֶךָ וְלִמַּדְתָּ אֹתָם לְבָנֶיךָ וְלִבַּרְתָּ בָּם בְּשִׁבְתְּךָ בְּבֵיתֶךָ וּבְלֶכְתְּךָ בַדֶּרֶךְ׃
2. נַדְּלוּ יהוה אִתִּי וְנָרוֹמְמָה שְׁמוֹ יַחְדָּו׃
3. קוֹל יהוה שֹׁבֵר הָעֵצִים וַיהוה מְשַׁבֵּר אֶת־אַרְזֵי הַלְּבָנוֹן׃
4. אָמַר יהוה אֶל־הַנָּבִיא בֶּן־אָדָם אֲנִי שֹׁלֵחַ אֹתְךָ אֶל־בְּנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל הַנָּבֵא עֲלֵיהֶם בְּשֵׁם־יהוה וְדִבַּרְתָּ אֲלֵיהֶם הַדָּבָר הַכָּתוּב בְּסִפְרִי׃
5. דִּרְשׁוּ יהוה וְעֻזּוֹ בַּקְּשׁוּ פָּנָיו תָּמִיד׃
6. צִוָּה יהוה אֶת־מֹשֶׁה קִבֵּץ אֶת־רָאשֵׁי בְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאָמַרְתָּ אֲלֵיהֶם הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ אַתָּה וְהָעָם כִּי מָחָר אָנֹכִי יֹרֵד עַל־הָהָר וְדִבַּרְתִּי לְךָ וְלָעָם׃
7. כֹּה אָמַר יהוה קִרְבוּ אֵלַי שִׁמְעוּ זֹאת אֲנִי הוּא אֲנִי הוּא קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל דְּבָרִי עֹמֵד לְעוֹלָם׃

CHAPTER 24
THE CAUSATIVES: HIPH'IL, HOPH'AL

24.1. Introduction: This chapter assumes and builds on chapter 22.

24.2. Forming the Causative Stems – Hiph'il, Hoph'al.

To form the Causative Stems properly, follow the same three steps of 23.2.

1. Memorize the boxes by spelling the stems properly (22.2 and 22.3). Remember the Hiph'il is mostly an Haph'il except in the Perfect.

	Hiph'il (Haph'il)	Hoph'al (A/A)
Perfect	□□□הְ	□□□הָ
Imperfect	□□□יַ	□□□יָ
Imperative	□□□הַ	
Infinitive	□□□הַ	
Participle	□□□מַ	□□□מָ

long T

2. Memorize the thematic vowels: *the Hiph'il never reduces thematic vowels.*

	Hiph'il (Haph'il)	Hoph'al
Perfect/Imperfect-Imperative	A-i/I-e	A/A
Infinitive Absolute	E	_
Infinitive Construct	I	_
Participles	I	A

3sp, 3fp Impv MS 7+Impf (3s) Jussive

The lower case "i" in the Perfect (A-i) stands for all third person forms. In the Hiph'il, there are four special "Sere" forms: the Sere thematic vowel occurs in the Jussive third person singular forms, the Vav-Consecutive of the third person singular forms, the Imperative 2ms, and the Infinitive Absolute. *Memorize these special "Sere" forms.*

3. Know the Qal stem thoroughly: especially, the preformative and sufformative elements of the root.

24.3. Examples of Forming the Causative Stems

1. Hiph'il Perfect 3cp of קטל

1.	Boxes:	□□□הְ (Hiph'il)	הִקְטַל
2.	Colors:	A-i/I-e	הִקְטִיל
3.	Qal stem:	קָטַל	הִקְטִילוּ
	Answer:		הִקְטִילוּ

Hiph'il - Impf 3fp of שׁבר

1. □□□יַ → יִשְׁבַּר
2. A-i/I-e → יַשְׁבִּר
3. וַתַּשְׁבֵּרְנָה → וַתַּשְׁבֵּרְנָה

They (fp) will cause to keep
D. object

Parsing מָקְטָלוֹת (קטל)

1. מָקְטָלוֹת - Hoph'al Participle
2. Hoph'al Participle A/A
3. מָקְטָלוֹת → Hoph'al Part fp of קטל - Causing to be killed

1. Step one derives the boxes from the stem name Hiph'il: a preformative ה with a Hireq, followed by a silent shewa under the first root letter.
2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (Hireq-Yod for all third persons in the Hiph'il Perfect).
3. Step three adds the 3cp pronominal ending of the Perfect, as memorized in the Qal. *In the Hiph'il, thematic vowels never reduce.*

2. Hiph'il Imperative 2ms of קטל

1.	Boxes:	□□□הַ□ִ (Haph'il)	הַקְטֵל
2.	Colors:	a special Sere form (24.2.2)	הַקְטֵל
3.	Qal stem:	קְטֹל	———
	Answer:		הַקְטֵל

1. Step one: The boxes derive from the stem name Haph'il.
2. Step two adds the thematic vowel: Sere, a memorized form.
3. Step three adds nothing because the Qal is without preformatives or sufformatives.

3. Hoph'al Imperfect 1cp of קטל

1.	Boxes:	□□□ְ□ָ	יְקְטַל
2.	Colors:	A/A	יְקְטַל
3.	Qal stem:	נְקְטֹל	נָקְטַל
	Answer:		נָקְטַל

1. Step one derives the boxes from the stem name Hoph'al: a preformative ה with a Qames-Hatuf, followed by a silent shewa under the first root letter.
2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (Patah).
3. Step three adds the 1cp pronominal prefix of the Imperfect, as memorized in the Qal.

24.4. Parsing the Causative Forms: Hiph'il, Hoph'al

Parsing is a process of elimination. Try to eliminate possibilities with each step.

1. תַּקְטַלְנָה

1.	Boxes:	□□□ַ□ְ	Hiph'il Imperfect
2.	Colors:	E (A-i/I-e)	Eliminates all Imperfects except 2fp, 3fp
3.	Qal stem:	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	2fp, 3fp
	Answer:	Hiph'il Imperfect 2fp or 3fp of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes of the Hiph'il (Haph'il) Imperfect.
2. Step two eliminates all Imperfect forms except 2fp, 3fp.
3. Step three confirms step two.

2. הַקְטִיל

1.	Boxes:	□□□הַ□ִ	Hiph'il Imperative or Infinitive Construct or Infinitive Absolute
2.	Colors:	green (Hireq-Yod – A-i/I-e)	Eliminates Imperative 2ms, 2fp, and Infinitive Absolute
3.	Qal stem:	קְטֹל	Eliminates Imperative 2fs, 2mp
	Answer:	Hiph'il Infinitive Construct of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes: Hiph'il Imperative or Infinitives.
2. Step two eliminates the Imperative 2ms, 2fp and the Infinitive Absolute.
3. Step three eliminates the Imperative 2fs, 2mp.

3. מָקְטָלִים

1.	Boxes:	□□□מָ□ִ	Hoph'al Participle
2.	Colors:	red (irreducible long)	Hoph'al Participle
3.	Qal stem:	קְטָלִים	Eliminates all Participles except Masculine Plural
	Answer:	Hoph'al Participle mp of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes as a Hoph'al Participle.
2. Step two confirms step one.
3. Step three eliminates all Participles except masculine plural.

24.5. The Meaning of the Causative Stems

Both the Hiph'il and the Hoph'al are causative in meaning. Of course, not every Hiph'il verb will be translated with "cause" – הִשְׁלִיךְ to throw, cast.

1. Hiph'il
   1. Transitive (with direct object) – הִכְשִׁיל אֶת־הָאָדָם he caused the man to stumble.
   2. Intransitive (without direct object): this is also called the Inner Causative: the subject is also the object – הִשְׁמִין he caused (himself) to become fat, that is, he became fat.

2. Hoph'al: The passive of the Hiph'il.

הִפְקִיד Hiph'il: to cause (someone) to be an overseer; הָפְקַד Hoph'al: he was caused to be an overseer, that is, he was made an overseer.

EXERCISE TWENTY-FOUR

I. Questions

1. What are the Causative Stems?
2. What are the three steps for creating the Causative Stems?
3. What are the special Sere forms of the Hiph'il?
4. Do Hiph'il thematic vowels reduce?
5. What are the three steps to parse the Causative Stems?
6. What is the meaning of the Hiph'il and Hoph'al?

II. Vocabulary

מַמְלָכָה	kingdom (Construct מַמְלֶכֶת [*a*])	שׁחת	Niph'al: be marred, spoiled, corrupted
אַבְנֵר	Abner		Pi"el: spoil, ruin, destroy
בֶּטֶן (*i*)	womb		Hiph'il: spoil, ruin, destroy, corrupt, act corruptly
בָּבֶל	Babylon		
פקד	Qal: pay attention to, observe, visit, appoint	שׁכם	Hiph'il (only): rise early, make an early start
	Niph'al: Passive of Qal	שׁלך	Hiph'il: throw, cast (down, away, off)
	Hiph'il: set (over), cause (one) to be an overseer, entrust	סגר	Qal: shut
יצב	Hithpa"el (only): station oneself, take one's stand		Niph'al: be closed, shut
			Pi"el: deliver up (make closed up)
אבד	Qal: perish, die, vanish		Hiph'il: deliver up, close up
	Pi"el: make perish (destroy), make die (kill), make vanish	כשׁל	Qal: stumble
שׁמד	Niph'al: be annihilated, exterminated		Hiph'il: cause to stumble
	Hiph'il: annihilate, exterminate	שׂכל	Qal: be wise
פֶּה	mouth		Hiph'il: give attention to, ponder, have insight, give insight, act wisely, have success

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

וַיִּבְךְּ גָּלוּי תִּשְׁבְּרֻנוּ הִשְׁתַּמֵּר

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Article

   חֹשֶׁק חָמוֹץ הָבְנִי

   Preposition כ

   הָאֲדָמָה הֶרָיוֹן יְרוּשָׁלַיִם

   Preposition מן

   הָרָן זֶבַח מוֹרֶה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. mp absolute חָכָם
   2. mp construct קִבֵּר (*i*)
   3. fs construct אַלְמָנָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 2mp	פָּעַל (*o*)	3. 3fp	חֶרֶב (*a*)
2. 3ms	מְזִמָּה	4. 1cs	חָצִיר

5. Attach the Boxes with suffixes to the prepositions and translate
   1. 2ms תַּחַת
   2. 3mp לִפְנִים
   3. 2fp כ
   4. 3fs אֵת (direct object)

6. Verb
   1. Create: Give the three steps, the final answer, and translate
      Hiph'il
      1. Imperfect 2fs זכר
      2. Imperative 2ms כנס
      3. Participle fs שׁמד
      4. Jussive 3ms סחר
      Hoph'al
      1. Perfect 3fs סחר
      2. Imperfect 3fs (+Vav-Consecutive) קרשׁ
      3. Cohortative sg. מלך

Pi"el

1. Imperfect 3ms (+Vav-Consecutive) קדשׁ
2. Infinitive Construct שׁבר

Pu"al

1. Imperfect 2fp בקשׁ
2. Perfect 1cp קדשׁ

Hithpa"el

1. Infinitive Construct צדק
2. Perfect 3cp שׁדל

2. Parse: Give the three steps (eliminating forms in each step) and all possible answers, and translate all vocabulary words

1. הַבְדֵּל
2. אָקְדַּשׁ
3. הַקְדִּישִׁי
4. בִּקְשׁוּ
5. תִּנַּבֵּא
6. נִזְכַּרְתָּ
7. הָשְׁמַדְתִּי
8. מַכְנִיסָה

7. Translation

1. אָמַר יהוה לִירְמְיָהוּ הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה הִפְקַדְתִּי אֹתְךָ לְנָבִיא עַל־הַגּוֹיִם וְעַל־הַמַּמְלָכוֹת לְדַבֵּר מִשְׁפָּטַי וְלִכְתֹּב דְּבָרַי:

2. וְהָיָה כִּי יְדַבֵּר יְהוֹשֻׁעַ אֲלֵיכֶם לַעֲבֹר אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן וְנָתַן יהוה מַלְכֵיהֶם בְּיָדֶךָ וְאִבַּדְתֶּם אֶת־שְׁמָם מִתַּחַת הַשָּׁמַיִם לֹא יִתְיַצֵּב אִישׁ בְּפָנֶיךָ עַד אֲשֶׁר אִבַּדְתָּם אֹתָם:

3. אָמַר דָּוִד אֶל־אַבְנֵר הֲלֹא אִישׁ אַתָּה וּמִי כָמוֹךָ בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל וְלָמָּה לֹא שָׁמַרְתָּ אֶל־אֲדֹנֶיךָ הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי בָא אִישׁ לְהַשְׁחִית אֶת־הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲדֹנֶיךָ:

4. וַיַּשְׁכֵּם אֲבִימֶלֶךְ בַּבֹּקֶר וַיִּקְרָא לְכָל־עֲבָדָיו וַיְדַבֵּר אֶת־כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּאָזְנֵיהֶם וַיִּתְפַּלְלוּ אֶל־יהוה וַיִּשְׁמַע יהוה אֶת־תְּפִלָּתָם:

5. עָלֶיךָ הָשְׁלַכְתִּי יהוה כִּי מִבֶּטֶן אִמִּי אֱלֹהַי אָתָּה:

6. שִׂפְתֵי[125] כֹהֵן יִשְׁמְרוּ דַּעַת וְתוֹרָה יְבַקְשׁוּ מִפִּיהוּ כִּי מַלְאַךְ יהוה־צְבָאוֹת הוּא וְאַתֶּם הְכִשַּׁלְתֶּם רַבִּים בַּתּוֹרָה:

[125] Feminine Dual Plural Construct of שָׂפָה.

CHAPTER 25
THE REFLEXIVE/PASSIVE NIPH'AL

25.1. Introduction: This chapter assumes and builds on chapter 22.

25.2. Forming the Niph'al

To form the Niph'al properly, follow the same three steps in 23.2 and 24.2.

1. Memorize the boxes by properly spelling the stem for the Perfect and Participle (22.2 and 22.3).[126]

	Niph'al
Perfect	□□□נְ□
Imperfect	□□□יִ□
Imperative	□□□הִ□
Infinitive	□□□נְ□ Infinitive Absolute / □□□הִ□ Infinitive Absolute-Construct
Participle	□□□נְ□

2. Memorize the thematic vowels.

Perfect/Imperfect-Imperative	A/E-a
Infinitive Absolute	O
Infinitive Construct	E
Participle	A

3. Know the Qal stem thoroughly: especially, the preformative and sufformative elements on the root.

25.3. Examples of Forming the Niph'al

1. Niph'al Perfect 2mp of קטל

1.	Boxes:	□□□נְ□ (Niph'al)	נִקְטַל
2.	Colors:	A/E-a	נִקְטַל
3.	Qal stem:	קִטַלְתֶּם	נִקְטַלְתֶּם
	Answer:		נִקְטַלְתֶּם

Niph'al Imperative 2mp of שׁמר

1. הִשָּׁמְרוּ → הִ□□□וּ
2. A/E → הִשָּׁמְרוּ
3. הִשָּׁמְרוּ → ⓗ ⓘ ⓚ ⓛ ⓜ

"Be on guard" or "guard yourselves"

   1. Step one derives the boxes from the stem name Niph'al: a preformative נ with a Hireq, followed by a silent shewa under the first root letter.
   2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (Patah).

[126] For the Niph'al, the boxes are difficult to memorize because the Nun of the Niph'al assimilates to the first root letter in the Imperfects, Imperatives, Infinitive Construct, and one option of the Infinitive Absolute.

3. Step three adds the 2mp pronominal ending of the Perfect, as memorized in the Qal.

2. Niph'al Imperative 2fs of קטל

1.	Boxes:	□□□ֶה	הִקָּטֶל
2.	Colors:	A/E-a	הִקָּטֶל
3.	Qal stem:	קְטֹלִי	הִקָּטְלִי
	Answer:		הִקָּטְלִי

1. Step one is the boxes memorized. A preformative ה with a Hireq precedes a Dagesh Forte in the first root letter and a Qames under the first root letter. The word "Niph'al" only helps with the Dagesh Forte (the נ of the Niph'al) in the first root letter.
2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (Sere).
3. Step three adds the vocalic ending of the Imperative 2fs (Hireq-Yod), thus reducing the thematic vowel (originally a Hireq) to a vocal shewa.

25.4. Parsing the Niph'al

Parsing is a process of elimination. Try to eliminate possibilities with each step.

1. נִקְטָל

1.	Boxes:	□□□ָל	Niph'al Perfect or Participle
2.	Colors:	red (irreducible long)	Eliminates all Perfect forms
3.	Qal stem:	קָטֵל or קָטוּל	
	Answer:	Niph'al Participle ms of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes as a Niph'al Perfect or Participle.
2. Step two eliminates the Perfect (Perfect 3ms pausal would be נִקְטָל).
3. Step three eliminates nothing because the Qal furnishes only preformatives or sufformatives.

2. תִּקָּטֵל

1.	Boxes:	□□□ֵל	Niph'al Imperfect
2.	Colors:	A/E-a	Eliminates 2fp, 3fp
3.	Qal stem:	תִּקְטֹל	Eliminates all except Imperfect 2ms or 3fs
	Answer:	Niph'al Imperfect 2ms or 3fs of קטל	

1. Step one identifies the boxes as a Niph'al Imperfect.
2. Step two identifies the thematic vowel as a Niph'al Imperfect and eliminates 2fp, 3fp forms.
3. Step three eliminates all forms except the 2ms or 3fs.

25.5. The Meaning of the Niph'al

The Niph'al is the reflexive or passive of the Qal.

1. Reflexive
   - שׁמר – Qal: to guard, Niph'al: to guard oneself
   - סתר – Qal: to hide, Niph'al: to hide oneself
2. Passive
   - קבר – Qal: to bury, Niph'al: to be burried
   - ילד – Qal: to bear, bring forth, Niph'al: to be born

EXERCISE TWENTY-FIVE

I. Questions

1. Write the boxes for the Niph'al. Why are these boxes difficult to learn?
2. Describe the three steps to form and to parse the Niph'al.
3. What are the meanings of the Niph'al?

II. Vocabulary

עַמּוֹן	Ammon	פֶּן	lest
לֵוִי	Levi	שׁאר	Niph'al: be left over, remain Hiph'il: cause (something or someone) to be left over, spare
נְאֻם	utterance, declaration		
שְׁאֵרִית	(abs. and const.) remainder, remnant	נחם	Niph'al: be sorry, repent, suffer grief, be comforted Pi"el: comfort, console
לחם	Niph'al: fight		
שׁבע	Niph'al: put oneself under oath, that is, swear Hiph'il: cause to swear, adjure	שׂרף	Qal: burn Niph'al: be burned
		סתר	Niph'al: hide oneself, be hid; Hiph'il: hide, conceal
שׁמר	Qal: keep Niph'al: keep oneself, take heed, be careful		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

כָּל־חָכְמָתָם בַּנְּחָלִים כְּשֶׁלָּה מֵעֲוֹנֹתֵיהֶם

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Interrogative מה

חָרָשׁ　　הֵרוֹן　　רָבִיב

Conjunctive ו

יְבֶמֶת　　אֲרָמִית　　יְדַעְנִי

Interrogative ה

שָׁאַלְתִּי　　עֵיָם　　תְּחִנָּה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1. ms construct נַעַר (*a*)
2. fs construct מַשְׂאָה
3. ms absolute חֶרֶשׁ (*a*)

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 2ms	נַעַר (*a*)	2. 2fp	מַלְבֵּן

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1. 1cs לְמַעַן
2. 3fp מִן
3. 2mp אֵת (direct object)
4. 1cp אֶל

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the three steps, the final answer, and translate
      Niph'al
      1. Infinitive Absolute שׁפך
      2. Participle mp לחם
      3. Infinitive Construct סחר
      4. Cohortative sg. קטל
      5. Imperfect 3fp שׁמד
      Hiph'il
      1. Perfect 3cp שׁחת
      2. Imperative 2fp קדשׁ
      Hoph'al
      1. Imperfect 1cp קהל
      2. Perfect 3cp שׁלך

Hithpa"el

1. Imperative 2fp פלל
2. Imperfect 3ms (+Vav-Consecutive) הלך

Pi"el

1. Participle mp דבר
2. Imperative 2mp בקשׁ

Pu"al

1. Participle ms שׁבר
2. Perfect 3ms בקשׁ

2. Parse: Give all possible answers, and translate all vocabulary words

1. שִׁבַּרְתִּי
2. נִקְטַל
3. הִקְטַל
4. מַשְׁמִידוֹת
5. יִשָּׁמְרוּן
6. הִקָּטֵל
7. הַסְתֵּר
8. נִשְׁפָּכָה

7. Translation

1. נִלְחַם יוֹאָב בְּעִיר בְּנֵי־עַמּוֹן וַיִּשְׁלַח אֶל־דָּוִד מַלְאָכִים לֵאמֹר נִלְכְּדָה הָעִיר וּבָאֵשׁ תִּשָּׂרֵף׃
2. אָמַר מֹשֶׁה אֶל־הָעָם נָתַן יהוה לָכֶם אֶת־הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּע לַאֲבוֹתֵיכֶם׃
3. וְעַתָּה הִשָּׁמְרוּ לָכֶם פֶּן־תִּשְׁכְּחוּ אֶת־יהוה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עִמָּכֶם חֶסֶד וְעִם־בְּנֵיכֶם׃
4. יִקְרְאוּ אֶל־יהוה וַיהוה הִסְתִּיר אֶת־פָּנָיו מֵהֶם בָּעֵת הַהֵיא כִּי לֹא קִדְּשׁוּ אֶת־שְׁמוֹ הַגָּדוֹל׃
5. וַיִּנָּחֵם יהוה כִּי הִמְלִיךְ אֶת־שָׁאוּל לְמֶלֶךְ עַל־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְלֹא אָדָם הוּא לְהִנָּחֵם׃
6. לָכֵן כֹּה אָמַר יהוה עַל־אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר הַהֵיא עַל־הַמְבַקְשִׁים אֶת־נַפְשׁ הַנָּבִיא עַל־הָאֹמְרִים אֵלָיו לֹא תִנָּבֵא בְּשֵׁם יהוה׃
7. בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם הַגּוֹיִם יְבַקְשׁוּ אֶת־יהוה וּשְׁאֵרִית עַמּוֹ תִּקָּבֵץ יַחְדָּו׃

CHAPTER 26
THE RELATIVE CLAUSE
CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES
COMPARATIVE-SUPERLATIVE

26.1. Introduction: This chapter summarizes the syntax of the Relative clause, the Circumstantial clause, and Comparative-Superlative.

26.2. Relative Clause

A relative clause *relates* a clause to another word (the antecedent). A relative clause modifies a substantive (like an adjective) or functions as a substantive (10.10). The relative particle אֲשֶׁר (Gen. 12:1) usually introduces relative clauses, but sometimes, especially in poetry, the אֲשֶׁר can be dropped (Psalm 34:9), as in English: "This is the book which I wrote" or "This is the book I wrote."

1. Syntax of the relative clause –
    1. Frequently, a relative clause describes or modifies a substantive (10.10).
    הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר בְּתוֹךְ הַגָּן – The tree which (is) in the midst of the garden.
    The noun "tree" is defined or described as the tree "which is in the midst of the garden." The relative clause modifies the word "tree."

    2. Sometimes the relative clause acts like a noun (10.10, substantive use of the relative clause), functioning usually as a direct object.
    וַאֲשֶׁר הוּא עֹשֶׂה יהוה מַצְלִיחַ – And that which he was doing, the Lord was prospering.
    The relative clause "and that which he was doing" is the direct object of the verb מַצְלִיחַ. The Accusative Marker אֵת (Micah 6:1) may precede a relative clause functioning as a direct object.

2. Retrospective Pronouns and Adverbs
    The relative pronoun, probably a mere connecting link in Hebrew, often used pronouns and adverbs to define more closely the relation of the relative clause to its antecedent. In English, these Retrospective Pronouns and adverbs are superfluous.
    1. Retrospective Pronouns (frequent before an adjective, a participle, or a negative sentence)
        1. Subject
        כָּל־רֶמֶשׂ אֲשֶׁר הוּא חַי – Every creeping thing which it (is) alive.
        The retrospective pronoun (הוּא) occurs before the adjective חַי. The retrospective pronoun "looks back" to the antecedent "every creeping (thing)." English omits the Retrospective Pronoun: "Every creeping thing that is living."

2. Genitive (Possessive pronoun)
הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר לֹא־תִשְׁמַע לְשֹׁנוֹ – The man who you will not hear his tongue (language).
The Retrospective Pronoun (3ms suffix on לְשֹׁנוֹ), a possessive pronoun, makes the relative clause possessive: "The man whose language you will not hear." The 3ms suffix "looks back" to "the man."

3. Object
אֲנִי יוֹסֵף אֲשֶׁר מְכַרְתֶּם אֹתִי – I am Joseph whom you sold me.
The Retrospective Pronoun (אֹתִי) "looks back" to "Joseph." English omits the Retrospective Pronoun – "I am Joseph whom you sold."

2. Retrospective adverb שָׁם, שָׁמָּה, מִשָּׁם
   1. שָׁם:
   The adverb שָׁם more closely defines the relation of the relative clause to its antecedent.
   הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה שָׁם – The place which you (are) there = The place where you are.
   The Retrospective Adverb שָׁם combines with אֲשֶׁר to mean "where."
   The Adverb שָׁם "looks back" on הַמָּקוֹם.

   2. שָׁמָּה:
   הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה בָּאִים שָׁמָּה – The place which you are coming to there = The place where you are coming.
   שָׁמָּה ... אֲשֶׁר = where, to which

   3. מִשָּׁם:
   הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה יֹצֵא מִשָּׁם – The place which you are going out from there = The place from which you are going out.
   מִשָּׁם ... אֲשֶׁר = from which

26.3. Circumstantial Clauses

Circumstantial clauses express the circumstances under which the action of the verb happens. English expresses these clauses by dependent clauses or phrases. Circumstantial clauses are adverbial, modifing the (main) verb by answering the questions: how? when? where? why? to what extent? Circumstantial clauses are usually nominal clauses, that is, a clause without a finite verb (Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative).[127]

[127] Of course, not every nominal clause is a circumstantial clause, nor is every circumstantial clause a nominal clause.

1. Vav + noun (pronoun) followed by a Participle
   A Vav connected to a noun (pronoun) followed by a Participle frequently introduces a circumstantial clause.
   וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל חַנָּה לִפְנֵי־יהוה וְעֵלִי שֹׁמֵר אֶת־פִּיהָ – And (then) Hannah prayed before the Lord while (as) Eli was watching her mouth.
   The circumstantial clause ... – וְעֵלִי שֹׁמֵר אֶת־פִּיהָ – furnishes the circumstances under which the action of the verb happens: "While (as) Eli was watching her mouth" is the circumstances under which "Hannah prayed." This circumstantial clause modifies the main verb, answering the question – when? "Hannah prayed," when? "while Eli was watching her mouth."

   The Vav-Consecutive construction expresses a different meaning.
   וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל חַנָּה לִפְנֵי־יהוה וַיִּשְׁמֹר עֵלִי אֶת־פִּיהָ – And then Hannah prayed before the Lord and then Eli watched her mouth.
   The second clause is an independent clause that continues the story: "Hannah prayed before the Lord and then Eli watched her mouth."

2. Vav + noun followed by noun(s)
   בָּנָה מִגְדָּל וְרֹאשׁוֹ בַּשָּׁמָיִם – He built a tower and its top (is) in the heavens = He built a tower *with* its top in the heavens.
   This circumstantial clause וְרֹאשׁוֹ בַּשָּׁמָיִם answers the question – How? "He built the tower," how? "*with* its top in the heavens."

26.4. Comparative and Superlative

Hebrew lacks comparative and superlative forms (smaller, smallest).

1. Comparative
   1. Hebrew commonly expresses the comparative with an adjective (or Stative Verb) followed by the מִן of comparison.
      מַה־מָּתוֹק מִדְּבַשׁ – What is sweet (apart) from honey? = What is sweeter than honey?
   2. Hebrew expresses the correlative comparatives – greater-less – by a definite adjective הַגָּדוֹל: the greater (Gen. 1:16).

2. Superlatives
   1. With adjective:
      1. Simple definite adjective – הַקָּטֹן the small(est)
      2. Definite attributive adjective – בְּנוֹ הַקָּטֹן His son, the small one = his youngest son.
      3. Adjective (without article) as the first member of a construct package.
         קְטֹן בָּנָיו – The small (one) of his sons = the youngest of his sons.

2. With nouns:

A construct package with two nouns of the same word, with the last word of the package in the plural, expresses the superlative.
שִׁיר הַשִּׁירִים – The song of songs = the most excellent song.

EXERCISE TWENTY-SIX

I. Questions

1. Define a relative clause.
2. What are the two main functions of a relative clause?
3. What are Retrospective Pronouns and Adverbs? When do Retrospective Pronouns frequently occur?
4. How do you translate relative clauses with Retrospective Pronouns as the subject, object, or Genitive? How should the Retrospective Adverbs – שָׁם, מִשָּׁם, and שָׁמָּה – be translated in relative clauses?
5. Define a circumstantial clause. Define a nominal clause. Are these clauses the same?
6. List two kinds of circumstantial clauses (Vav + ... etc.).
7. How does Hebrew commonly express the comparative? The correlative comparative?
8. List the ways that adjectives and nouns express the superlative.

II. Vocabulary

אֲרָם	Aram	יִשַׁי	Jesse
רִבְקָה	Rebecca	כָּל־, כֹּל	all (with suffix כֻּלּוֹ)
מאס	reject, despise	גְּבוּל	boundary, territory
צלח	Qal: be successful	אֹכֶל (*a*), אָכְלָה	food
	Hiph'il: succeed, prosper, cause	קָטָן, קָטֹן	(adj.) small, little, young
	to be successful	טָהוֹר	(adj.) clean
שָׂדֶה	field	מוֹעֵד	appointed time, place, meeting

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

מִמֶּנּוּ אֲנִיּוֹת שָׁמְרֵנִי מִגְרָשָׁה

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

עָצָב חִתִּי מִצְרִי

Preposition ב

הַגּוֹיִם חָכְמָה יֶלֶל

Interrogative ה

אָסַרְתִּי דִּבֶּר עַם

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	mp construct	יְלֶדֶת (*a*)	3.	fp construct	מַשְׂאָה
2.	fs construct	מִצְוָה	4.	mp absolute	מֶלֶךְ (*a*)

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	3ms	מַלְכּוֹ (*a*)	3.	2fs	קָדְשֵׁךְ (*o*)
2.	1cp	אַדָמָה	4.	1cs	תְּפִלָּה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	2ms	לְמַעַן	3.	2mp	מִן
2.	3mp	אֶל	4.	1cs	עִם

6. Verb
   1. Create: Give the three steps, the final answer, and translate
      1. Pi"el Participle mp Absolute בקשׁ
      2. Pu"al Perfect 2mp בקשׁ
      3. Pu"al Participle fp Construct דבר
      4. Hithpa"el Imperative 2fs קטל
      5. Hithpa"el Perfect 3ms שׁבר
      6. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms (+Vav-Consecutive) שׁמד
      7. Hiph'il Infinitive Construct מלך
      8. Hiph'il Imperative 2mp פּשׁט
      9. Hoph'al Imperfect 3fs כנס
      10. Hoph'al Imperfect Jussive 3ms שׁמד
      11. Niph'al Imperative 2fp שׁמר

12. Niph'al Infinitive Construct קטל

2. Parse: Give the three steps (eliminating forms in each step) and all possible answers, and translate all vocabulary words

1.	נִקְטַל	5.	הַמֶּלֶךְ
2.	תִּתְקַדְּשִׁי	6.	תַּקְהֵלְנָה
3.	מְבֻקָּשָׁה	7.	יַקְטֵל
4.	תִּצְטַדְּקִי	8.	הַמְבַקְּשִׁים

7. Translation

1. הָלַךְ עֶבֶד אַבְרָהָם אַרְמָה וְכָל־טוּב אֲדֹנָיו בְּיָדוֹ וְשָׁם מָצָא אֶת־רִבְקָה וַיִּשְׁאַל אֹתָהּ בַּת־מִי אָתְּ׃

2. בָּא אֶל־הָעִיר וְרִבְקָה יֹשֶׁבֶת עַל־עַיִן וַיְדַבֵּר לָהּ וַיִּשְׂמַח שִׂמְחָה גְּדוֹלָה כִּי עָשָׂה יהוה עִמּוֹ חֶסֶד׃

3. נָתַן יהוה לָנוּ מִכָּל־הַבְּהֵמָה הַטְּהוֹרָה לְאָכְלָה וְהַבְּהֵמָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא טְהוֹרָה הִיא לֹא נָתַן לָנוּ אֹתָהּ׃

4. גַּם מִן־אַרְצָם יֵצְאוּ וִידֵיהֶם עַל־רֹאשָׁם כִּי מָאַס יהוה אֹתָם וְלֹא הִצְלִיחַ דַּרְכָּם׃

5. נָתַן אַבְרָהָם לִפְנֵיהֶם לֶחֶם וְיַיִן אֲשֶׁר־עָשָׂה אֹתָם וְהוּא עֹמֵד עֲלֵיהֶם תַּחַת הָעֵץ׃

6. שָׁאַל שְׁמוּאֵל אֶת־יִשַׁי הֲבֵן אַחֵר לָךְ וַיְדַבֵּר יִשַׁי אֶל־שְׁמוּאֵל לֵאמֹר לִי בֵּן אַחֵר דָּוִד קְטַן בָּנָיו׃

7. וַיְהִי בַבֹּקֶר כִּי יָצָא יְהוֹנָתָן אֶל־הַשָּׂדֶה לְמוֹעֵד דָּוִד וְנַעַר עִמּוֹ קְטַן עֲבָדָיו׃

CHAPTER 27
ATTACHING PRONOMINAL SUFFIXES TO THE VERB: THE PERFECT

27.1. Introduction

Hebrew can express a pronominal direct object in two ways: with the Definite Direct Object Marker (Accusative Marker אֵת) or with the pronominal suffix directly attached to a verb. Sections 27.2-27.5 specifically apply to the Qal Perfect, and generally to the Pi"el Perfect and Hiph'il Perfect (27.6).

27.2. Proto-Hebrew Forms of the Perfect

Learn the Proto-Hebrew forms of the Perfect for forming and for parsing verbal forms with suffixes.

1. Patahs were the original vowels under the first and second root letters in all Standard verbs – *קַטַל. In Stative Verbs, third person verbs restore the original Hireq under the second root letter (*אַהֵב), other persons have Patah like the Standard verb.

2. 2fs קָטַלְתְּ (originally *קַטַלְתְּ): Hebrew dropped final short vowels and lengthened the Patah under the first root letter in the opened pretonic position: קָטַלְתְּ. When attaching suffixes to the 2fs form, restore and lengthen the Hireq to Hireq-Yod (*קַטַלְתִּי, compare Biblical Aramaic 2fs קְטַלְתִּי) and attach the suffixes directly to the verb.[128] Now the 1cs and the 2fs Perfects with pronominal suffixes are identical – context distinguishes the forms.
   2fs Perfect with 3ms suffix (also 1cs Perfect with 3ms suffix) – קְטַלְתִּיהוּ

3. 3fs קָטְלָה (originally *קַטַלַת): Like the feminine noun (תּוֹרָה < *תּוֹרַת), the 3fs Perfect originally ended in ת_. Restore the original feminine form *קַטַלַת and attach suffixes to the original form.
   3fs Perfect with a 1cs suffix – קְטָלַתְנִי

4. 2mp קְטַלְתֶּם (originally *קַטַלְתוּ, compare Biblical Aramaic 2mp קְטַלְתּוּן): When attaching suffixes, restore the original form and attach suffixes directly to the verb.
   2mp Perfect with a 1cs suffix – קְטַלְתּוּנִי

27.3. Accent and Vowel Reduction Patterns

1. Accent
   1. All third persons (3ms, 3fs, 3cp) accent the third root letter (R_3).

[128] Without connecting vowels, see 14.2.1; 27.4.

3ms Perfect with 3ms suffix – שְׁמָרוֹ (Exception: 3ms verb and 2ms suffix שְׁמָרְךָ)
3fs Perfect with 1cs suffix – שְׁמָרַתְנִי
3cp Perfect with 3ms suffix – שְׁמָרוּהוּ

2. All other persons accent on the pronominal element of the verb ת or נ:
1cs Perfect with 2ms suffix שְׁמַרְתִּיךָ
1cp Perfect with 2ms suffix שְׁמַרְנוּךָ

2. Vowel Reduction Pattern
The Qal Perfect with suffixes follows the *noun reduction pattern* (6.3).

27.4. Attaching Suffixes

	Suffixes attached directly to the verb[129]	Suffixes attached with connecting vowels to the verb
1cs	נִי	◌ַנִי
2ms	ךָ	◌ְךָ
2fs	ךְ	◌ֶךְ (or ◌ָךְ with 3fs verbs)
3ms	הוּ	◌ֹו
3fs	הָ	◌ָהּ
1cp	נוּ	◌ֵנוּ
3mp	ם	◌ֵם (or ◌ָם with 3fs verbs)
3fp	ן	◌ֶן (or ◌ָן with 3fs verbs)

Note the 1cs ending is נִי instead of ◌ִי. In the left column, the 3ms and 3fs suffixes are הוּ and הָ instead of ◌ֹו and ◌ָהּ (review 14.5.3). In the right column, the 2fs box with Sere follows the noun boxes; the 1cp box with Qames follows the suffixes with the prepositions (14.2.1).

1. General Principles
   1. Verbs ending in an historic long vowel (1cs, 1cp, 3cp, and 2fs, 2mp; 27.2.4) and the 3fs verb with syllabic suffixes[129] attach pronominal suffixes directly to the verb, without connecting vowels:
   3cp Perfect with 1cs suffix – שְׁמָרוּנִי
   3fs Perfect with 1cs suffix – שְׁמָרַתְנִי

[129] The suffixes may be syllabic (opened syllables: 1cs, 2ms, 3ms, 3fs, 1cp), or the suffixes may be alphabetic, which closes a syllable: 2fs, 3mp, 3fp.

2. The remaining verbs (2ms, 3ms, and the 3fs with alphabetic suffixes[129]) require connecting vowels:
   2ms Perfect with 1cs suffix קְטַלְתָּנִי
   3fs Perfect with 2fs suffix קְטָלָתֵךְ

2. Specific Problems
   1. 3fs verb: The original Patah under the third root letter (*קְטַלַתְ the implicit silent shewa becomes explicit, before suffixes that directly attach – קְטָלַתְנִי 3fs Perfect with 1cs suffix) lengthens to Qames in opened syllables (with alphabetic suffixes: 2fs, 3mp, 3fp). 3fs Perfect with 2fs suffix – קְטָלָתֵךְ.
   2. 2ms verb: The connecting vowel of the suffixes replaces the original Patah under the pronominal ת (*קְטַלְתַ) of the 2ms Perfect with a 1cs suffix: קְטַלְתַנִי.

3. Contracted or Assimilated Forms
   1. 3ms suffix
      1. With the 1cs Perfect, two forms are possible – קְטַלְתִּיהוּ and the contracted form – קְטַלְתִּיו (the ה drops and the Shureq becomes a consonantal Vav).
      2. With the 3fs Perfect, the ה of the suffix assimilates to the feminine ת of the verb – *קְטָלַתְהוּ > קְטָלָתּוֹ.

   2. 3fs suffix with the 3fs Perfect: The ה of the suffix assimilates to the feminine ת of the verb – *קְטָלַתְהָ > קְטָלָתָה (the final ה is phony).

27.5. Attaching Pronominal Suffixes to the Perfect

1. Follow four steps
   1. Restore the proto-form of the Perfect (27.2): bring back the original Patahs (or Hireq in the Stative Verb) under the first and second root letters and the original forms of the 2fs, 3fs, and 2mp.
   2. Attach the appropriate suffix box (27.4) and establish accent (27.3.1): according to the verb, choose the suffix that attaches to the verb directly or indirectly with connecting vowels. Third person verbs accent the third root letter (3ms verb with 2ms suffix is the exception); other persons accent the pronominal ת or נ of the verb.
   3. Work the rules of syllables (27.3.2). Qal Perfects with pronominal suffixes follow *the noun reduction pattern* (6.3).
   4. Adjust for specific problems (27.4.2)
      1. 3fs lengthens the original Patah under the R_3 letter in an opened syllable.

2. The connecting vowel of the suffix replaces the original Patah under the pronominal ת in the 2ms.
3. Contraction: 3ms suffix with 1cs, 3fs verbs; 3fs suffix with 3fs verb.

2. Examples
   1. 3fs Perfect with 2ms suffix קטל
      1. Restore the proto-form of the verb – קַטַלַתְ
         The restored feminine ending has an implicit silent shewa (footnote 18).
      2. Attach the appropriate suffix and establish the accent – קַטַלַתְךָ
         The suffix directly attaches, with implicit silent becoming explicit – the shewa is actually medial. Third person verbs accent R_3.
      3. Work the rules of syllables – קָטַלַתְךָ (6.3.2; 6.3.5).
      4. Adjust for specific problems: None
         Answer קָטַלַתְךָ She killed you (ms)

   2. 1cs Perfect with 3ms suffix קטל
      1. Restore the proto-form of the verb – קַטַלְתִי
      2. Attach the appropriate suffix and establish the accent – קַטַלְתִּיהוּ (27.3.1.2)
         The 1cs Perfect, with its historic long Hireq-Yod, attaches suffixes directly to the verb (27.4.1.1).
      3. Work the rules of syllables – קָטַלְתִּיהוּ (6.3.3; 6.3.5)
      4. Adjust for specific problems.
         The suffix may contract: The ה drops between vowels and the final Shureq becomes a consonantal Vav – קָטַלְתִּיו
         Answer קָטַלְתִּיהוּ or קָטַלְתִּיו

27.6. Other Stems: Pi"el and Hiph'il Perfect[130]

1. Pi"el (and Hithpa"el): The Pi"el is like the Qal Perfect (27.2; 27.5), with a notable exception: *in an opened pretonic syllable, the thematic vowel reduces to vocal shewa (verb reduction pattern).*
   Pi"el Perfect 3ms with 1cs suffix – בִּקְּשַׁנִי
   Pi"el Perfect 3ms with 2ms suffix: The thematic vowel reduces in the opened pretonic position – *בִּקַּשְׁךָ. The shewa fight produces a Segol – בִּקֶּשְׁךָ – to avoid consecutive Hireqs.

[130] Pronominal suffixes rarely occur with the Niph'al, Pu"al, or Hoph'al.

2. Hiph'il: The Hiph'il is like the Qal Perfect (27.2; 27.5), with a notable exception: *the thematic vowels never reduce in the Hiph'il* because the thematic vowel is either historic long or short in a closed unaccented syllable.
Hiph'il Perfect 3ms with 1cs suffix – הִשְׁלִיכֵנִי
Hiph'il Perfect 1cp with 2ms suffix – הִשְׁלַכְנֻךָ

27.7. Parsing Forms with Pronominal Suffixes

1. Five steps
    1. Identify boxes (if there is no box, the form is Qal).
    2. Identify proto-forms (restore all Qames and vocal shewas to Patah; Sere to Hireq) and the root (and any Qal preformatives or sufformative characteristics).
    3. Identify the suffix.
    4. Look for the accented syllable and the vowel reduction pattern.
    5. Adjust for specific problems.

2. Example
קְטָלַתְּהָ
    1. Identify boxes: there is no box – the form is a Qal.
    2. Identify the proto-form – *קְטַלַתְ 3fs Perfect.
    3. Identify the suffix: the suffix is not readily identified; the form is probably contracted or assimilated.
    4. The accent and the reduction pattern confirm the 3fs form.
    5. Adjust for specific problems: The Dagesh Forte in the restored feminine תּ indicates an assimilated form. The possibilities are: 3ms or 3fs suffix on a 3fs Perfect (27.4.2.1; 27.4.3.1.2). The 3fs suffix הָ explains the form better than the masculine suffix הוּ (27.4.3.2). The 3ms suffix on a 3fs Perfect would be קְטָלַתּוּ. The ה of the suffix assimilated to the תּ of the 3fs. Then a phony ה was added to read the long Qames under the תּ.
    Answer: Qal Perfect 3fs with 3fs suffix.

See Appendix VI, pages 300-301 for paradigm.

Exercise Twenty-Seven

I. Questions

1. What are the original vowels under the first and second root letters of a Standard Verb and Stative Verb in the Perfect?
2. What is the proto-form of the Perfect 3fs, 2fs, 2mp?
3. Where is the accent on the Perfect with pronominal suffixes?
4. What is the reduction pattern of the Qal Perfect with pronominal suffixes?

5. What are the two ways in which pronominal suffixes attach to the Perfect?
6. Discuss the specific problems of attaching pronominal suffixes to the 3fs and 2ms Perfect.
7. Which pronominal suffixes contract? With which verbs do they contract?
8. Describe the steps for attaching pronominal suffixes.
9. What is the reduction pattern of the Pi"el Perfect?
10. Discuss the special problem of the 2ms suffix on the Pi"el Perfect 3ms.
11. Discuss the reduction pattern of the Hiph'il Perfect.
12. Describe the steps for parsing forms with pronominal suffixes.

II. Vocabulary

מֶרְכָּבָה	chariot	רֶכֶב (*i*)	chariots (collective)
מַטֶּה	staff, tribe	חֶרְפָּה	reproach, disgrace
חֲמוֹר	(male) donkey	כפר	Pi"el: cover over; make propitiation
מַחֲנֶה	camp, army	עָוֹן	iniquity, guilt, punishment
גֶּפֶן (*a*)	vine	רכב	Qal: mount, ride
זֶרַע (*a*)	seed, offspring		Hiph'il: cause to mount, cause to ride
קֶרֶב (*i*)	(preposition) middle of בְּקֶרֶב in the middle of		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   הַיִּתָּה לַיְלָה

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words

   Interrogative מה

   עֲרִיץ שָׁלוֹם

   Preposition ל

   יְדֵיהֶם אֲדָמָה

   Preposition מן

   חֶרְפָּה עִם

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. fp construct מִלְחָמָה
   2. mp construct עָמָל

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	3fp	בֶּגֶד (*i*)	3.	1cp	צְדָקָה
2.	2fs	תּוּשִׁיָּה	4.	2fp	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate
   1. 1cs תַּחַת
   2. 2ms מִן
   3. 1cp ב
   4. 3fp אֵת (direct object)

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the three steps, the final answer, and translate
      1. Niph'al Perfect 3fs לחם
      2. Pi"el Participle fs Construct בקשׁ
      3. Pu"al Imperfect 1cp שׁבר
      4. Hithpa"el Imperative 2fp שׁמר
      5. Hiph'il Perfect 3cp קהל

   2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps, and translate all vocabulary words
      1. מַקְטֶלֶת
      2. הִסְתַּתְּרוּ
      3. שְׁבַרְתְּ
      4. קְטוֹלִי
      5. אָקְטְלָה

7. Attach Pronominal Suffixes to the Perfect: list the four steps
   1. 1cs suffix on the 3ms Qal of קטל
   2. 2ms suffix on the 3fs Qal of אהב (A-e/A)
   3. 1cp suffix on the 2ms Qal of קטל
   4. 3fs suffix on the 2fs Qal of שׁמר
   5. 3mp suffix on the 3fs Qal of רדף
   6. 3ms suffix on the 1cs Qal of קטל
   7. 1cs suffix on the 2mp Qal of רדף
   8. 3fs suffix on the 3fs Qal of קטל
   9. 1cp suffix on the 3cp Qal of שׁמר
   10. 3fp suffix on the 1cp Qal of אהב (A-e/A)
   11. 3ms suffix on the 2ms Pi"el of בקשׁ

12. 2ms suffix on the 1cs Hiph'il of קטל

8. Parse – List the steps, and translate all vocabulary words

1. קְטָלוֹ
2. קִטְּלוּנִי
3. רִדַּפְתִּינוּ
4. הִקְטִילָם
5. שְׁמָרַתּוּ
6. קִטַּלְתַּנִי
7. בִּקַּשְׁתֶּךָ
8. שְׁמַרְתִּוּהוּ
9. שְׁמָרָנוּ
10. הִמְלִיכַתְנִי

9. Translation

1. שִׁמְעוּ אֶת־הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יהוה עֲלֵיכֶם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל יהוה אֱלֹהִים אֱמֶת הוּא אֱלֹהִים חַיִּים וּמֶלֶךְ עוֹלָם:
2. אָמַר הַנָּבִיא יהוה כַּפֵּר עֲוֹנֵנוּ וְחֶרְפָּתֵנוּ אַל תִּזְכֹּר אֱלֹהִים:
3. צִוָּה יְהוֹשֻׁעַ אֶת־רָאשֵׁי הָעָם לֵאמֹר עִבְרוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַמַּחֲנֶה וַאֲמַרְתֶּם אֲלֵיהֶם מָחָר אַתֶּם עֹבְרִים אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן הַזֶּה:
4. וּשְׁלֹמֹה בֶּן־דָּוִד הִמְלִיכוּ יהוה עַל־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְהָעָם כִּבְּדוּ:
5. קְדוֹשָׁיו לְעוֹלָם נִשְׁמְרוּ וְזֶרַע רְשָׁעִים נִכְרָת:
6. עִבְדוּ אֶת־יהוה בְּשִׂמְחָה כִּי יהוה הוּא אֱלֹהִים הוּא עָשָׂה אֹתָנוּ וְלוֹ אֲנָחְנוּ:

3ms Adj - קְדוֹשָׁיו

CHAPTER 28
ATTACHING PRONOMINAL SUFFIXES TO THE VERB: THE IMPERFECT, IMPERATIVE, AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCT

28.1. Introduction: Pronominal suffixes can attach directly to the Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive Construct.[131]

28.2. The Imperfect

1. Proto-forms: In the Imperfect, only the proto-forms of the thematic vowels are important:

Thematic Vowel	Proto-Form (short vowel)
Holem	Qames-Hatuf
Sere	Hireq
Patah	Patah

2. Accent and vowel reduction pattern
   1. Accent
      1. The 2mp and 2fp suffixes (כֶם, כֶן) always take the accent. The 2ms suffix (ךָ) takes the accent except with verbs ending in an historic long vowel: 3cp Imperfect with 2ms suffix – יִקְטְלוֹךְ.
      2. All other forms take the accent over the R_3 letter: 3ms Imperfect with 1cs suffix – יִקְטְלֵנִי.

   2. Vowel reduction patterns:
      1. Holem/Sere: Original Qames-Hatuf and Hireq thematic vowels *reduce* to vocal shewa in opened pretonic syllables: *the verb reduction pattern* (17.3.3.2).
         3ms Imperfect with 1cs suffix – יִקְטְלֵנִי
      2. Patah: Patah thematic vowels *lengthen* to Qames in opened pretonic syllables: *the noun reduction pattern* (6.3).
         3ms Imperfect with 1cs suffix – יִלְבָּשֵׁנִי

[131] The Participle attaches the pronominal suffixes of nouns and adjectives (Chapters 12 and 13) and has the *reduction pattern of verbs*, 17.3.3.2; 19.2.1.3, Participle mp with 3fs suffix – יֹשְׁבֶיהָ.

3. Attaching suffixes and boxes

	Suffixes attached directly to verb	Boxes attached to verb with connecting vowels	Boxes attached to verb with connecting vowels and Energic Nun
	2mp, 2fs 3mp	2ms	
1cs	ני	◌ִני	◌ִנִּי
2ms	ךָ	◌ְךָ	◌ְךָ
2fs	ךְ	◌ֵךְ	
3ms	הוּ	◌ֵהוּ	◌ֵנּוּ
3fs	הָ	◌ָהּ or ◌ֶהָ	◌ֶנָּה
1cp	נוּ	◌ֵנוּ	◌ֵנּוּ
2mp	כֶם	◌ְכֶם	
2fp	כֶן	◌ְכֶן	
3mp	ם	◌ָם	
3fp	ן	◌ָן	

1. General Principles
   1. Left column: Verbs ending in an historic long vowel (2fs, 2mp, 3mp) attach the suffixes directly to the verb: 3mp Imperfect with 3ms suffix – יִקְטְלוּהוּ.

   2. Middle column: Other verbs attach suffixes to the verb with a box and connecting vowel: 3ms Imperfect with 3ms suffix – יִקְטְלֵהוּ.

   3. Right column: A variant form of the middle column has an Energic Nun, which originally gave energy or emphasis to the verb, but it is usually without emphasis in the Old Testament. The Energic Nun assimilates to the suffixes of the 1cs, 2ms, and 1cp:

      1cs *◌ְנִנְי > ◌ֶנִּי – יִקְטְלֵנִי 3ms Imperfect with 1cs suffix (energic)

      The ה of the suffix assimilates to the Energic Nun in the 3ms and 3fs:

      3ms *◌ְנֵהוּ > ◌ֶנּוּ – יִקְטְלֵנּוּ 3ms Imperfect with 3ms suffix (energic)

      Occasionally, the energic Nun does not assimilate: Qal Imperfect 3ms with 3ms with energic Nun – יַעַבְרֵנְהוּ.

2. Specific Problems
   1. Qames-Hatuf: When attached to verbs with connecting vowels (middle column), the 2ms, 2mp, and 2fp suffixes shift the accent to the end of the word. The original Qames-Hatuf remains in a closed unaccented syllable: 3ms Imperfect with 2ms suffix – יִקְטָלְךָ (no Metheg).

2. Patah: Patah thematic vowels lengthen to Qames in opened pretonic syllables: 3ms Imperfect with 2ms suffix – יִלְבָּשֶׁךָּ (Metheg).

4. Attaching suffixes and boxes to the Imperfect
   1. Follow four steps (27.5)
      1. Restore the proto-vowel of the thematic vowel (28.2.1).
      2. Attach appropriate suffix/box (28.2.3) and establish the accent (28.2.2.1).
      3. Work the rules of syllables (28.2.2.2).
      4. Adjust for specific problems (28.2.3.2).

   2. Examples
      1. 3ms suffix with a 3fs Imperfect of קטל (A/O)
         1. The proto-vowel is Qames-Hatuf – תִּקְטָל
         2. Attach the appropriate box ־ֶהוּ (middle column) and establish the accent – תִּקְטָלֶהוּ
         3. Work the *verb reduction pattern* – תִּקְטָלֶהוּ
         4. Adjust for specific problems: None
            Answer תִּקְטָלֶהוּ

      2. 3fs suffix with a 2fs Imperfect of לבש (A-e/A)
         1. The proto-vowel is Patah – תִּלְבַּשִׁי
         2. Attach the appropriate suffix ָה and establish the accent – תִּלְבַּשִׁיהָ
         3. Work the *noun reduction pattern* – תִּלְבָּשִׁיהָ
         4. Adjust for specific problems: None
            Answer תִּלְבָּשִׁיהָ

28.3. Imperative

The Imperative generally follows the Imperfect: accenting the third root letter, reducing Holem and Sere thematic vowels, lengthening Patah thematic vowels, and attaching the same suffixes/boxes.

1. Proto-form
   1. Qames-Hatuf thematic vowel
      1. 2ms: The proto-form of the 2ms Imperative with suffixes is *קָטְלְ.[132]
         2ms Imperative with 1cs suffix – קָטְלֵנִי

[132] The Emphatic Imperative (קָטְלָה 18.4.2) has the same proto-form – *קָטְלְ.

2. 2fs and 2mp: The proto-form of the 2fs and 2mp Imperative with suffixes is *קְטָל[133] (Qames-Hatuf). With suffixes, these forms reduce the Qames-Hatuf in the opened pretonic position, insuring a shewa fight.
קְטָלִיהוּ > קְטְלִיהוּ קְטְלִיהוּ 2fs Imperative with 3ms suffix
The Qames-Hatuf reduces to medial shewa in the 2fs, 2mp forms, so the third root letter, if a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter, does not receive Dagesh Lene: 2fs with a 1cs suffix – עִבְדִּינִי (Medial, Political Shewa).

2. Patah thematic vowel: Patah thematic vowels have a single proto-form (*שַׁלַח). The Patah thematic vowel, as in the Imperfect, lengthens to Qames in the opened pretonic position.
שׁלח (A/A) 2ms + 1cs suffix שְׁלָחֵנִי
2fs + 1cs suffix שְׁלָחִינִי
2mp + 1cs suffix שְׁלָחוּנִי

2. Attaching the suffixes and boxes to the Imperative
Follow the same four steps (as the Imperfect, 28.2.4).
Example: 2ms Imperative with 3ms suffix of קטל (A/O)
1. Restore the proto-form of the verb (28.3.1.1): 2ms with suffixes – קָטְלְ
2. Attach appropriate box (28.2.3), ־הוּ and establish the accent – קָטְלֵהוּ
Most Imperfect/Imperative forms accent R_3 (28.2.2.1).
3. Work the rules of syllables – קָטְלֵהוּ (6.3.3).
4. Adjust for specific problems: None
Answer קָטְלֵהוּ

28.4. Infinitive Construct

1. Proto-form
The Infinitive Construct, like the Imperative, varies the vowel of the proto-forms between R_1 and R_2 or between R_2 and R_3.
1. *קָטְלְ: This is the usual proto-form of the Infinitive Construct with suffixes.
קָטְלוֹ Killing him or his killing (context decides)

2. *קָטָל: This is a variant proto-form of the Infinitive Construct with 2ms, 2mp, and 2fp suffixes: Infinitive Construct with 2ms suffix – קָטָלְךָ.
*קָטָל is also the proto-form of the Infinitive Construct without suffixes – קְטֹל.

[133] The Imperative 2ms form קְטֹל (without suffixes) has the same proto-form – *קָטְלְ.

2. Attaching suffixes

Being a verbal noun, the Infinitive Construct *takes the pronominal suffixes of the singular noun/adjective* (12.2 left column).

1. General principles
   1. The suffixes usually attach to the proto-form – קָטְלְ* (28.4.1.1); קָטְלוֹ Infinitive Construct with 3ms suffix.
   2. Translate the Infinitive Construct with suffixes – קָטְלוֹ his killing (or) killing him. Context determines the appropriate choice.

2. Specific problems
   1. 1cs:
      The 1cs suffix has a variant box ִי or ֵנִי. These forms frequently distinguish meaning – קָטְלִי my killing, קָטָלַנִי killing me.

   2. 2ms and 2mp:
      Variant forms exist:

	קָטְלְ*	קָטַלְ*
2ms	קָטְלֵךְ	קָטָלְךְ
2mp	קָטְלְכֶם	קָטָלְכֶם

      Translate: "your killing" or "killing you," context determines.

3. Attaching the boxes

Follow the same four steps (28.2.4; 28.3.2)

Example: Infinitive Construct with 1cp suffix עבד

1. Restore proto-form (28.4.1) – עָבְדְ
2. Attach appropriate box (12.2; 28.4.2.2.1) and establish the accent (follow the accent of the boxes in 12.2 left column) ֵנוּ – עָבְדֵנוּ
3. Work the rules of syllables (6.3.3) – עָבְדֵנוּ
   No Dagesh Lene in R_3 (28.3.1.1.2 medial shewa)
4. Adjust for specific problems: None
   Answer עָבְדֵנוּ

28.5. Derived Stems: Pi"el and Hiph'il

1. Pi"el (Hithpa"el)
   1. The Imperfect and the Imperative: these reduce the thematic vowel with an attached pronominal suffix.
      Imperfect 3ms with 1cs suffix – יְבַקְּשֵׁנִי
      Imperfect 3ms with 2ms suffix – יְבַקֶּשְׁךָ (Compare 27.6.1)
      Imperative 2ms with 3ms suffix – בַּקְּשֵׁהוּ (See footnote 24)

2. Infinitive Construct: The Pi"el Infinitive Construct takes *suffixes of the nouns* (like the Qal) and reduces the thematic vowel.
   Infinitive Construct with 3ms suffix – בַּקְּשׁוֹ (Compare with the Imperative 2ms with 3ms suffix – בַּקְּשֵׁהוּ)
   Infinitive Construct with 2ms suffix – בַּקְּשֵׁךְ (Compare 27.6.1)

2. Hiph'il: *The Hiph'il never reduces thematic vowels.*
   1. Imperfect:
      Imperfect 3ms with 1cs suffix – יַמְלִיכֵנִי
      Imperfect 3mp with 3ms suffix – יַמְלִיכוּהוּ

   2. Imperative: Without a pronominal suffix, the 2ms Imperative is a "Sere" form, הַקְטֵל; with a pronominal suffix, the 2ms Imperative takes Hireq-Yod for the thematic vowel – הַמְלִיכֵנִי 2ms Imperative with 1cs suffix.

   3. Infinitive Construct: The Hiph'il Infinitive Construct takes *pronominal suffixes of the noun* (12.2 left column).
      Infinitive Construct with 3ms suffix – הַמְלִיכוֹ

Attaching suffixes to the Pi"el, Hithpa"el, and Hiph'il is identical to the Qal (28.4.3). *The Hiph'il never reduces thematic vowels.*

28.6. Parsing Forms with Pronominal Suffixes

Follow 27.7.1.

1. Process:
   1. Identify boxes (if there is no box, the form is Qal).
   2. Identify the proto-form and the root (and Qal preformatives or sufformatives).
   3. Identify the suffix.
   4. Identify the accented syllable and the reduction pattern.
   5. Adjust for specific problems.

2. Example
   קָטְלוֹ
   1. Identify the box.
      There is no box, the form is Qal.
   2. The restored proto-form – *קָטְלְ
      The Imperative 2ms or Infinitive Construct.
   3. Identify the suffix.
      3ms suffix of the noun suffixes (28.4.2.); therefore, the form is an Infinitive Construct with a 3ms suffix.
   4. Accented syllable and reduction pattern: Not applicable.

5. Adjust for specific problems.
   Remember: Infinitive Constructs take the suffixes of the nouns.
   Answer: Qal Infinitive Construct with 3ms suffix.

EXERCISE TWENTY-EIGHT

I. Questions

1. Give the proto-forms of the thematic vowels of the Imperfect.
2. Where does the accent occur in the Imperfect?
3. Describe the vowel reduction patterns of the Imperfect.
4. What is the Energic Nun?
5. Discuss the specific problem of attaching a 2ms, 2mp, and 2fp suffix to a 3ms verb.
6. Describe attaching suffixes/boxes to the Imperfect.
7. Describe the proto-form of the Imperative with A/O verbs. Give the proto-form for קטל of the Qal Imperative 2ms with suffix, and the Qal Imperative 2fs with suffix.
8. Describe the proto-form of the Imperative with A/A verbs.
9. Describe attaching the suffixes/boxes to the Imperative.
10. Describe the proto-forms of the Infinitive Construct.
11. Which suffixes have two forms with the Infinitive Construct?
12. Give the options for translating קָטְלוֹ.
13. The Infinitive Construct takes which suffixes?
14. Discuss the Hiph'il Imperative 2ms with and without a pronominal suffix.
15. Discuss parsing the Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive Construct with pronominal suffixes.

II. Vocabulary

גִּבּוֹר	warrior, mighty man	רֶגֶל (*a*)	(f) foot
יַעֲקֹב	Jacob	כַּף	(f) palm (of hand), sole (of foot)
מִדְיָן	Midian		(כַּפּ with suffix)
מִדְיָנִי	Midianite	שֶׁמֶן (*a*)	oil
שֵׁבֶט (*i*)	rod, staff, tribe	מִנְחָה	gift, offering
בּוֹר	pit		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

יִקְטָלֵךְ　　בַּגִּלְגָּל

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

רֶכֶב חָזָק

Preposition כ

יהוה חָכְמָה

Interrogative ה

שָׁמַר חֹלֶק

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
1. mp construct עֶבֶד (*a*) 2. mp construct כּוֹכָב

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
Singular Nouns Plural Nouns
1. 3ms עֶבֶד (*a*) 2. 2fs תּוֹרָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate
1. 3mp כ 2. 3ms אֵל

6. Verb
1. Create: Give the three steps, the final answer, and translate
1. Niph'al Imperfect 2fp כתב
2. Pi"el Infinitive Absolute בקשׁ
3. Hithpa"el Participle mp Absolute קטל
4. Hiph'il Imperative 2ms שׁמד

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps, and translate
1. אָהֵב 4. כְּבַד
2. קִטְּנִי 5. כַּתֹּב
3. הַשְׁמֵד 6. מָשְׁלָה

7. Attach Pronominal Suffixes to the Perfect: list the four steps
1. 1cp suffix on the 3ms Qal of שׁמר
2. 3ms suffix on the 3cp Qal of קטל
3. 2ms suffix on the 3ms Pi"el of בקשׁ

8. Attach Pronominal Suffixes to the Imperfect: list the four steps
   1. 3ms suffix (energic) on the 3ms Qal of קטל (A/O)
   2. 2mp suffix on the 1cs Qal of לבשׁ (A/A)
   3. 1cp suffix on the 3ms Pi"el of בקשׁ

9. Attach Pronominal Suffixes to the Imperative: list the four steps
   1. 1cs suffix on the 2mp Qal of שׁמר (A/O)
   2. 1cp suffix on the 2ms Hiph'il of מלך
   3. 1cs suffix on the 2ms Qal of לבשׁ (A/A)

10. Attach Pronominal Suffixes to the Infinitive Construct: list the four steps and all possible answers
   1. 3ms suffix on the Qal Infinitive Construct of קטל
   2. 2ms suffix on the Pi"el Infinitive Construct of בקשׁ
   3. 3ms suffix on the Hiph'il Infinitive Construct of שׁמר

11. Parse – List the steps, and translate all vocabulary words

1.	יִשְׁמֶרְךָ	5.	תִּקְטָלֵךְ
2.	הַמְלִיכוּנִי	6.	הַשְׁמִירֵנִי ★
3.	שְׁמָרַתּוּ	7.	קְטָלוֹ
4.	בִּקְּשֵׁנִי	8.	שָׁמְרוֹ

12. Translation

3ms P
his God

1. צַדִּיק אֹהֵב מִשְׁפָּט תּוֹרַת אֱלֹהָיו בִּלְבּוֹ׃
2. וַיְהִי כְשָׁמְעוֹ אֶת־דִּבְרֵי אִשְׁתּוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרָה אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר כַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עָשָׂה לִי עַבְדֶּךָ וַיִּרְדֹּף אַחֲרֵי עַבְדּוֹ כָּל־הַלָּיְלָה׃
3. וַיְהִי בִּימֵי שְׁפֹט הַשֹּׁפְטִים וַיְהִי רָעָב בָּאָרֶץ וַיִּקְבֹּץ שְׁמוּאֵל אֶת־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל יְרוּשָׁלַיְמָה לִשְׁאֹל בַּיהוה׃
4. מִן־חַטָּאוֹת שָׁמְרֵנִי יהוה אַל תִּמְשְׁלְנָה בִּי׃ (Jussive)
5. מִשְׁפְּטֵי יהוה אֱמֶת בְּשָׁמֶרֶם בְּרָכָה גְּדוֹלָה׃

MORPHOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES: WEAK VERBS

CHAPTER 29
OVERVIEW OF THE WEAK VERB
R_1-GUTTURAL (PE GUTTURAL) VERBS

29.1. Introduction and Overview of the Weak Verb

The Weak Verb (22.1) is the mount Everest of Hebrew. Learn it thoroughly and you will conquer the most challenging mountain of Hebrew. Weak Verbs classify into ten categories:

1. R_1-Guttural עבד
2. R_1-Alef Special Cases אכל
3. R_2-Guttural ברך
4. R_3-Guttural שלח
5. R_3-Alef מלא
6. R_1-Nun נפל
7. R_1-Vav/Yod ישב
8. R_2-Vav/Yod קום
9. R_3-Vav/Yod גלה (< גלו or גלי)
10. Geminate verbs סבב

Doubly Weak Verbs are also possible: חטא – R_1-Guttural and R_3-Alef.

Forming and parsing Weak Verbs (Boxes, Colors, Qal, 23.3) usually affect the boxes (or the first syllable in the Qal Imperfect) or the colors (or the thematic vowel in the Qal), and sometimes, both the boxes and the colors. The boxes affect the beginning (or the first syllable) of a word; the colors, the end of the word (or the last syllable). R_1 and some R_2 weaknesses affect the first syllable; R_3 weaknesses, the second syllable.

Weak Verbs classified by affected syllable

Boxes (first syllable)	Colors (second or rarely third syllable)	Boxes and Colors (all syllables)
R_1-Guttural	R_3-Guttural	R_1-Alef Special Cases
R_2-Guttural	R_3-Alef	R_2-Vav/Yod
R_1-Nun	R_3-Vav/Yod	Geminate verbs
R_1-Vav/Yod		

In the Weak Verbs, the Intensive stems are most regular; the Niph'al, Hiph'il, and Hoph'al are generally regular; and the Qal is nuts. Knowing the Strong Verb (chapters 22-25) is essential for understanding the Weak Verb.

The first Weak Verb, the R_1-Guttural verb has a Guttural for the first root letter – עזב. R_1-Guttural verbs affect the boxes and frequently the first syllable of the Qal.

29.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_1-Guttural Verbs

1. Dagesh Forte: Gutturals (including ר) will not take Dagesh Forte (5.7.2).
2. Vocal shewa: Gutturals (excluding ר) will not take a simple vocal shewa, but only a composite shewa (5.7.1).
3. Silent shewa:
    1. Gutturals (excluding ר) often take a composite shewa even in the silent shewa position (footnote 28).
    2. Gutturals taking a silent shewa often affect (change) the preceding preformative vowel.

29.3. Strong Areas of the R_1-Guttural Verbs

When the R_1-Guttural has a vowel under it and is not in a position to take a Dagesh Forte, the R_1-Guttural verbs are "strong."

The strong areas include:

Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el,
Qal Perfect (except for 2mp, 2fp)
Qal Imperative 2fs, 2mp (עִבְדִי, עִבְדוּ)[134]
Qal Participle Active
Qal Infinitive Absolute

If the composite shewa in the vocal shewa position is considered strong, then most of the Qal would be "strong."

Qal Perfect (All)
Qal Imperative (All)
Qal Participle Active and Passive
Qal Infinitive Absolute and Construct

29.4. Remedy for the Infirmity of Dagesh Forte

The weakness of the Dagesh Forte occurs only in the Niph'al Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive Construct and Absolute. In Strong Verbs, the Nun of the Niph'al assimilates in the Imperfect, Imperative and Infinitives (22.3.2.3 and footnote 126); however, R_1-Guttural verbs reject Dagesh Forte and lengthen the preceding Hireq to Sere[135] (Compare 7.2.2.1).

Strong Verb: *יִנְשְׁמֹר > יִשָּׁמֹר
R_1-Guttural: *יִנְעְזֹב > יֵעָזֹב

[134] These forms are strong like שִׁמְרִי, שִׁמְרוּ. One expects *עַבְדִי, *עַבְדוּ after the shewa fight, but the Hireq is an exception to the shewa rule (3.2.2.1).

[135] Rarely, R_1-Gutturals may have an implicit Dagesh Forte – וַיֶּחֱלְקֵם (Compare 7.2.2.2).

29.5. Remedy for the Infirmity of Vocal Shewa

Instead of receiving a simple vocal shewa, R_1-Gutturals take composite shewa (5.7.1), usually Hatef-Patah (ֲ) or Hatef-Segol (ֱ), in the Qal Imperative 2ms and Infinitive Construct of R_1-Alef verbs.

Strong Verb: כְּתֹב
R_1-Guttural: עֲזֹב
R_1-Guttural (א): אֱמֹר

29.6. Remedy for the Infirmity of the Guttural Rejecting Silent Shewa (see 29.9)

1. Niph'al, Hiph'il, Hoph'al
   1. Patah: Forms taking a Patah under a preformative (Hiph'il Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitives, and Participle) retain the Patah under the preformative and take a Hatef-Patah (ֲ) under the R_1-Guttural.
      Strong Verb: יַקְטִיל R_1 P[136]
      R_1-Guttural: יַעֲבִיר G_1 P[137]
   2. Hireq / Segol: Forms taking a Hireq under a preformative (Niph'al Perfect, Infinitive Absolute, Participle; Hiph'il Perfect) change the preformative vowel to Segol and take a Hatef-Segol (ֱ) under the R_1-Guttural.
      Strong Verb: נִקְטַל R_1 P
      R_1-Guttural: נֶעֱזַב G_1 P
   3. Qames Hatuf: Forms taking a Qames Hatuf under a preformative (Hoph'al) retain the Qames Hatuf under the preformative and take a Hatef-Qames Hatuf under the R_1-Guttural.
      Strong Verb: הָקְטַל R_1 P
      R_1-Guttural: נָעֳזַב G_1 P
2. Qal Imperfect
   The Qal Imperfect takes Segol or Patah for the preformative vowel (and the corresponding Hatef vowel for the R_1-Guttural).
   1. Segol
      1. All first common singular (1cs) forms: G_1 אֶ אֶעֱבֹר
      2. All verbs, Stative and Standard, with a Patah thematic vowel (/A): G_1 P יֶאֱהַב
      3. All Standard, R_1-Alef verbs (/O) G_1-א: אֶ P יֶאֱסֹר

[136] R_1 represents the first root letter; P represents "Preformative."

[137] G_1 represents a Guttural in the first root position.

2. Patah
    1. Standard verbs (/O) that are G_1-ה, ח, ע: יַעֲבֹר (G_1 P)
    2. Standard verbs (/O) G_1-א that are non-pausal forms with vocalic endings (יַאַחְרוּ) and most forms with pronominal suffixes (יַאַסְּרֵנִי).

29.7. Remedy for the Infirmity of the Silent Shewa (see 29.9)

R_1-Gutturals sometimes retain silent shewa, but the preformative vowel changes as if the composite shewa had replaced the silent shewa.

Niph'al Perfect 3ms:	נֶחְבָּא (instead of *נְחְבָּא) as if from *נֶחֱבָא
Qal Imperfect 3ms:	יַחְתֹּם (instead of *יְחְתֹּם) as if from *יַחֲתֹם

With forms that retain silent shewa, work the form with the composite shewa and then restore the silent shewa: *יַחֲתֹם > יַחְתֹּם.

Remember: All these remedies are general – There are exceptions.

29.8. Final Considerations: Vocalic Endings (17.3.3.2; 18.2.3.2)

1. With vocalic endings, thematic vowels reduce, leaving consecutive vocal shewas – *יַעֲזֹבוּ > *יַעֲזְבוּ. The composite shewa under the R_1-Guttural becomes the vowel of composite shewa – *יַעֲזְבוּ > יַעַזְבוּ. The shewa under the second root letter, a Political (Medial) Shewa, leaves the B^{e}gad K^{e}fat in the third root position without Dagesh Lene – יַעַזְבוּ.

2. Pronominal Suffixes with Imperfect of R_1-Guttural Verbs
Most Imperfects of R_1-Guttural Verbs have Patahs for the Preformative and R_1, יַאַסְּרֵנוּ, but sometimes Segols are possible נֶאֱסָרֵךְ.

29.9. Summary of Adjustments to the Boxes (Summary of 29.6; 29.7)

Because a Guttural in the R_1-position affects the vowels under the preformative and the R_1-letter, the boxes are slightly adjusted:

1. Hiph'il A.i / I.e

	Strong Verb	R_1-Guttural with silent Shewa	R_1-Guttural with composite Shewa
Perfect	□□□הְ	□□□הְ	□□□הֱ
Imperfect	□□□יְ	□□□יַ	□□□יֱ
Imperative	□□□הַ	□□□הַ	□□□הֲ
Infinitive	□□□הַ	□□□הַ	□□□הֲ
Participle	□□□מַ	□□□מַ	□□□מֲ

2. Hoph'al A/A

	Strong Verb and R_1-Guttural with silent Shewa	R_1-Guttural with composite Shewa
Perfect	□□□הָ	□□□הֳ
Imperfect	□□□יָ	□□□יֳ
Participle	□□□מָ	□□□מֳ

3. Niph'al

	Strong Verb	R_1-Guttural with silent Shewa	R_1-Guttural with composite Shewa
Perfect	□□□נְ	□□□נַ	□□□נֱ
Imperfect	□□□יִ	□□□יַ	□□□יֱ
Imperative	□□□הִ	□□□הַ	□□□הֱ
Infinitive	□□□הִ/נְ	□□□הַ/נַ	□□□הֱ/נֱ
Participle	□□□נִ	□□□נַ	□□□נֱ

4. Qal Imperfect: Although the Qal Imperfect does not have boxes, note the following patterns.

Strong Verb	R_1-Guttural with silent Shewa	R_1-Guttural with composite Shewa
□יְ	□יַ or □יַ for the proper option, see 29.6.2.	□יֱ or □יֲ for the proper option, see 29.6.2.

29.10. Forming the Qal in Weak Verbs

Follow three steps:

1. Write the form as a Strong Verb.
2. Identify the weakness: especially the area of the verb affected (R_1, R_2, R_3 or thematic vowels, and so forth.).
3. Make the proper adjustments (from steps one and two).

29.11. Forming R_1-Guttural Verbs

Follow the three steps for working Strong Verbs (23.2), and adjust the boxes when necessary.

Examples of Forming R_1-Guttural Verbs

1. Hiph'il Perfect 1cs עבר
   1. Boxes: □□□הְ□ > □□□הֶ□ הֶעֱבַר
   2. Colors: A-i/I-e הֶעֱבַר
   3. Qal stem: קָטַלְתִּי הֶעֱבַרְתִּי

   Answer: הֶעֱבַרְתִּי
      1. Step one applies the boxes adjusted for R_1-Guttural. □□□הְ□ > □□□הֶ□ (or □□□הָ□).
      2. Step two adds the thematic vowel (A/)
      3. Step three adds the Qal sufformative תִּי.

2. Qal Imperfect 2ms עבר (A/O)
   1. Write the form as a Strong Verb – תִּעְבֹּר
   2. Identify the weakness: R_1-Guttural – ע; R_1 and the preformative are affected.
   3. Make adjustments: the Qal Imperfect has two possibilities: Segol or Patah. R_1-ע (A/O) verbs take Patah (unless 1cs, 29.6.2.2).

      Answer: תַּעֲבֹר

29.12. Parsing the Qal in Weak Verbs

Follow three steps:

1. Eliminate boxes or colors
2. Identify the Qal preformatives and sufformatives
3. Identify the weakness of the verb (R_1, R_2, R_3 or thematic vowels, and so forth.).

29.13. Parsing R_1-Guttural Verbs

The steps are like the Strong Verbs (23.4)[138]

1. Boxes (adjusted)

[138] Context is the fourth step when reading the Hebrew Bible. Context determines the correct parsing of identical forms – קְטֹל Imperative 2ms or Infinitive Construct: context decides.

2. Colors
3. Qal stem (preformatives / sufformatives)

Remember your verb will have three root letters (for now).

Examples

1. הֶעֱבַרְתִּי
   1. Boxes: □□□הֶ□□ > □□□הְ□□ Hiph'il Perfect
   2. Colors: A (A-i/I-e) Eliminates all third persons: 3ms, 3fs, 3cp
   3. Qal stem: קָטַלְתִּי Eliminates all except Hiph'il Perfect 1cs

   Answer: Hiph'il Perfect 1cs

2. עֲבֹר
   1. Eliminate boxes or colors (of derived stems): The thematic vowel (Holem) suggests the Qal
   2. Qal stem – קְטֹל: Imperative 2ms or Infinitive Construct
   3. Weakness of the verb: The verb is a R_1-Guttural (ע), making a Hatuf-Patah necessary under R_1.

   Answer: Qal Imperative 2ms or Infinitive Construct

3. יַעְבֹּר
   1. Boxes (?): Hiph'il Imperfect □□□יַ□□ or Qal pattern □יְ□ (29.9)
   2. Colors: Holem Eliminates the Hiph'il Imperfect and vocalic endings of the Qal Imperfect

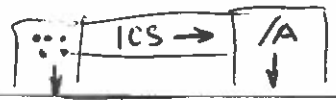
   Now switch to the Qal steps (29.12)
   1. Eliminate boxes or colors: The colors eliminate the boxes of the Hiph'il
   2. Qal stem – יִקְטֹל Qal Imperfect 3ms
   3. Weakness: The R_1-Guttural, although taking the silent shewa, changes the usual preformative vowel Hireq to Patah.[139]

[139] More accurately, the original Patah remains (see footnote 158).

R_1-Guttural (Pe Guttural) Verbs

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el Pu"al Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
Perfect	Strong 29.3. (or ֶ in 2mp, 2fp)	◌ֲ◌ (◌ֲ◌) 29.6.1.2.		◌ֲ◌ (◌ֲ◌) 29.6.1.2.	
Imperfect	1cs ◌ֲ◌ Stative ◌ֲ◌ R_1-א ◌ֲ◌ R_1-ה, ח, ע Non-1cs and non-Stative forms ◌ַ◌ (exception: vocalic, non-pausal or with suffixes ◌ַ◌)	Dagesh rejection Hireq to Sere 29.4.	Strong 29.3.	◌ַ◌ (◌ַ◌) 29.6.1.1.	◌ָ◌ (◌ָ◌) 29.6.1.3.
Imperative	Vocal shewa position: ◌ֶ R_1-ה, ח, ע; ◌ֱ R_1-א (אֱ) 2fs, 2mp are strong 29.5.				
Infinitive Construct	◌ֲ for R_1-א ◌ַ for R_1-ה, ח, ע 29.5.				
Infinitive Absolute	Strong 29.3.	◌ָה◌ or ◌ָנ◌			
Participle Active		◌ֲ◌ (◌ֲ◌) 29.6.1.2.			
Participle Passive	◌ַ 29.5.				

QAL IMPERFECT (29.6.2)



	STANDARD (/O)							STATIVE (/A) 29.6.2.1.2. or Standard with Patah thematic vowels	
	R_1-א 29.6.2.1.3.	R_1-ה 29.6.2.2.1.		R_1-ח 29.6.2.2.1.		R_1-ע 29.6.2.2.1.			
		Composite Shewa	Silent Shewa	Composite Shewa	Silent Shewa	Composite Shewa	Silent Shewa	Composite Shewa	Silent Shewa
1cs 29.6.2.1.1.	אֶאְסֹר	אֶהְרֹג	אֶהְדֹּף	אֶחְלֹף	אֶחְתֹּם	אֶעְזֹב	אֶעְשֹׂר	אֶאְמַץ	אֶחְסַר
2ms	תֶּאְסֹר	תַּהְרֹג	תַּהְדֹּף	תַּחְלֹף	תַּחְתֹּם	תַּעְזֹב	תַּעְשֹׂר	תַּאְמַץ	תַּחְסַר
3ms	יֶאְסֹר	יַהְרֹג	יַהְדֹּף	יַחְלֹף	יַחְתֹּם	יַעְזֹב	יַעְשֹׂר	יַאְמַץ	יַחְסַר
2fs Non-pausal 29.6.2.2.	תֶּאְסְרִי	תַּהַרְגִי	תַּהַדְּפִי	תַּחַלְפִי	תַּחַתְמִי	תַּעַזְבִי	תַּעֲשֹׂרִי	תַּאַמְצִי	תַּחַסְרִי
2fs Pausal	תֶּאְסֹרִי	תַּהַרְגִי	תַּהַדְּפִי	תַּחַלְפִי	תַּחַתְמִי	תַּעַזְבִי	תַּעֲשֹׂרִי	תַּאַמְצִי	תַּחַסְרִי
2/3fp Pausal and Non-pausal	תֶּאְסֹרְנָה	תַּהַרְגֹנָה	תַּהַדֹּפְנָה	תַּחַלֹפְנָה	תַּחַתֹּמְנָה	תַּעַזֹּבְנָה	תַּעֲשֹׂרְנָה	תַּאַמֹּצְנָה	תַּחַסֹּרְנָה

Chart courtesy of Isaac Jerusalmi

Note: Usually, suffixed forms are like vocalic, non-pausal forms – יַאַסְרֻנוּ.

Any green form with a suffix will go red.

EXERCISE TWENTY-NINE

I. Questions

1. Define a Weak Verb. What are the weak letters?
2. What does an R_1 weakness affect? What does an R_3 weakness affect?
3. In the Weak Verb, what stems are regular, generally regular, and most difficult?
4. Describe the weaknesses of the R_1-Guttural verbs.
5. What part of the verb is affected in R_1-Guttural verbs?
6. In what areas are R_1-Guttural verbs completely strong?
7. Where does the Dagesh Forte problem occur? How is it solved?
8. Where does the vocal shewa problem occur? How is it solved?
9. Where does the silent shewa problem occur? How is it solved?
10. When do Qal Imperfects follow the Segol pattern and when do they follow the Patah pattern for the preformatives?
11. When the R_1-Gutturals retain the silent shewa under an R_1-Guttural letter, how does this affect the preformative vowel?
12. What further complication occurs when the Qal Imperfect has a vocalic ending?
13. With a Guttural in the R_1 position, how are the boxes adjusted? How is the Qal Imperfect adjusted?
14. Describe the forming and the parsing of Weak Verbs.
15. Describe the forming and the parsing of Weak Verbs in the Qal.

II. Vocabulary

בָּרַךְ	Qal: bless Pi"el: bless, pronounce a blessing on	אָסַר	Qal: bind, tie, imprison Niph'al: passive of Qal
אָמַן	Niph'al: make firm, sure, establish Hiph'il: trust, believe (sometimes with בְּ, to believe in)	אָסַף	Qal: gather, collect Niph'al: passive of Qal
		חָפֵץ	Qal: delight in, take pleasure (with בְּ)
חָצֵר	settlement, enclosure	חָזַק	Qal: be strong, be firm, prevail Pi"el: put in a strong state, make strong Hiph'il: cause to be strong, seize, take hold (with בְּ)
חָשַׁב	Qal: think, account, plan, reckon, impute Niph'al: passive of Qal Pi"el: think upon, plan, derive, reckon	אֱמֶת	truth (with 3ms suffix אֱמִתּוֹ, root אמן)
חָרַם	Hiph'il: devote to the ban, exterminate, destroy Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il	חַיִל	strength, mighty man, ability, army, wealth
נַחֲלָה	inheritance	עָזַר	Qal: help, aid Niph'al: Passive of Qal

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   מְצִיּוֹן יָדַע

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Interrogative מה

   חָזוֹן הֵם

   Preposition ב

   אֱמֶת טְהוֹן

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. mp construct נַעַר (*a*) 2. fs construct מִלְחָמָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 3ms	מִלְחָמָה	3. 2ms	גֵּנֶב
2. 3mp	בֹּשֶׁת (*o*)	4. 1cp	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate
   1. 2fs ל 3. 3ms לְמַעַן
   2. 1cp מִן 4. 3mp אֵת (with)

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps, the final answer, then translate all vocabulary words
      1. Qal Imperfect 3mp אזר (A/O)
      2. Hiph'il Participle mp Absolute אכל
      3. Hoph'al Perfect 3cp עמד
      4. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive עמד
      5. Qal Imperfect 3fs (shewa) חסר (A/A)
      6. Qal Imperfect 2ms (shewa) הדף (A/O)
      7. Niph'al Imperfect 3fp אדר
      8. Qal Imperfect 2ms +1cp suffix אסף (A/O)
      9. Qal Infinitive Construct +2ms suffix עמד(A/O)
      10. Hiph'il Imperative 2mp +1cs suffix עבר

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps, then translate all vocabulary words

1.	יַחְתֹּם	6.	חֲזַק
2.	יַעְמְדוּן	7.	הַעֲבִירֵהוּ
3.	יַעֲמֵד	8.	וַיֵּהָרְסָהּ
4.	נַעֲמֹד	9.	יַעַבְרֻנֵהוּ
5.	הָעָזְבָה	10.	הַעֲמֵד

7. Translation

1. אָמַר בָּרוּךְ יהוה אֱלֹהֵי אֲדֹנִי אַבְרָהָם אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָזַב חַסְדּוֹ וַאֲמִתּוֹ מֵעִם אֲדֹנִי:
2. הֶאֱמִין בַּיהוָה וַיַּחְשְׁבֶהָ לוֹ צְדָקָה:
3. וַיַּעְזְרֵם יהוה וַיְמַלְּטֵם מֵרְשָׁעִים כִּי יהוה בְּקִרְבָּם:
4. וְנִתָּנָם יהוה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לְפָנֶיךָ וְאִבַּדְתֶּם הַחֲרֵם תַּחֲרִים אֹתָם לֹא תִכְרֹת לָהֶם בְּרִית:
5. כִּי עַם קָדוֹשׁ אַתָּה לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ בְּךָ בָּחַר יהוה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לוֹ לְעַם מִכֹּל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר עַל־פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה:
6. קָרָא יוֹסֵף בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל אִסְרוּהוּ וַיַּאַסְרוּהוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם:

CHAPTER 30
R_1- GUTTURAL א (PE ALEF)
SPECIAL CASES
אמר, אכל, אבד, אפה, אבה, (אחז)

30.1. Introduction: R_1-Guttural א (Special Cases) present unique problems only in the Qal Imperfect.[140] Elsewhere, the verbs are like other R_1-Guttural verbs. The verbs with these problems are אמר, אכל, אבד, אפה, אבה[141] (and occasionally אחז, and other verbs rarely). R_1-Guttural א (Special Cases) affects the preformative vowel (and R_1) and the thematic vowel.

30.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_1-Guttural א Verbs (Special Cases)

The R_1-Guttural א quiesces and changes:

1. The preformative vowel (ā > ō)
2. The thematic vowel (various dissimilations)

30.3. Remedy for the Preformative Vowel

1. 1cs

   *אֲאָכָל ('a'kol) > *אַאָכָל > *אָאָכָל > *אֹכַל
   1 2 3 4

   The original form (1) of the 1cs quiesces the second Alef (2) (the Alef of the root) and lengthens the original Patah to Qames (3). The Qames becomes Holem by Canaanite Shift (ā > ō), and the quiesced Alef drops (4).

2. All other forms

   *יֲאָכָל (ya'kol) > *יַאָכָל > *יָאָכָל[142] > *יֹאכַל Qal Imperfect 3ms
   1 2 3 4

   All other forms follow the same steps as the 1cs, except the quiesced Alef is retained in spelling (4).

---

[140] The Qal Infinitive Construct of אמר with ל preposition is also a problem: the Alef quiesces, and the Segol under the ל preposition lengthens to Sere by compensation – *לֶאֱמֹר > לֶאמֹר (8.2.5.1).

[141] The Weak Verbs אפה and אבה are doubly weak: the first syllable follows the remedies of 30.3; the final syllable follows chapter 37.

[142] Compare the first syllable of וַיֹּאצֶל (Num. 11:25).

30.4. Remedy for the Thematic Vowel

The thematic vowel dissimilates from the vowel of the preformative.

*אָכָל ('ōkol) > אֹכַל ('ōkal) Qal Imperfect 1cs

1 2

The Qames-Hatuf (1) dissimilates from the Holem of the preformative and becomes a Patah (2).

Various dissimilations are possible (See chart at the end of the chapter.):[143]

1. In regular (that is, forms without Vav-Consecutive • וְ), non-pausal forms, the Qames-Hatuf becomes Patah – תֹּאמַר
2. In regular, pausal forms, the Qames-Hatuf becomes Sere – תֹּאמֵר
3. In Vav-Consecutive (• וְ), non-pausal forms, the Qames-Hatuf becomes
   1. Segol (for אמר, note the shift of accent, see footnote 109 – וַתֹּאמֶר)
   2. Patah (for אכל and 1cs of אמר, note the accent does not shift – וַתֹּאכַל, וָאֹמַר)
4. In Vav-Consecutive (• וְ), pausal forms, the Qames-Hatuf becomes Patah – וַתֹּאמֶר, וַתֹּאכֶל

30.5. Forming R_1-Guttural א Verbs (Special Cases)

1. Replace the preformative vowel with Holem (For the 1cs, quiesce the initial Alef and drop the R_1-Guttural א of the root).
2. Dissimilate the thematic vowel according to 30.4.
   Example: Qal Imperfect 3ms pausal of אמר
   1. יֹאמָר
   2. יֹאמֵר (30.4.2.)

30.6. Parsing R_1-Guttural א Verbs (Special Cases)

Follow the same steps in 29.12.

Example

וַיֹּאמֶר

1. Eliminate boxes or colors: There are no boxes
2. Qal (Preformatives / Sufformatives): Imperfect 3ms
   The Vav-Consecutive with the pointing • וְ also indicates an Imperfect.
3. Weakness: The Preformative Holem comes from the queisced Alef; the Segol is the dissimilated vowel (30.4.3.1)
   Answer: Qal Imperfect 3ms + Vav-Consecutive of אמר

[143] The 2fp, 3fp forms – the invariable forms – always take Patah.

30.7. אכל with Pronominal Suffixes

Only אכל takes pronominal suffixes in the Qal Imperfect in R_1 Guttural א Verbs (Special cases). The original thematic vowel (Qames-Hatuf) will always reduce with pronominal suffixes (28.2.2.2.1):

יֹאכְלֶנּוּ Qal Imperfect 3ms +3ms energic.

DISSIMILATION OF THEMATIC VOWELS (30.4.)
אמר, אכל, אבד, (אחז)

	REGULAR (without Vav-Consecutive • וַ)	VAV-CONSECUTIVE • וַ
NON-PAUSAL (contextual)	יֹאמַר יֹאכַל יֹאבַד (יֹאחֵז) 30.4.1.	וַיֹּאמֶר וַיֹּאחֶז וַיֹּאכַל (וָאֹמַר 1cs only) 30.4.3.
PAUSAL	יֹאמֵר יֹאכֵל יֹאבֵד 30.4.2.	וַיֹּאמֶר וַיֹּאכַל 30.4.4.

ֶ (ֵ) 30.4.1.	ַ / ָ 30.4.3.
ֵ 30.4.2.	ֶ 30.4.4.

Notes:

1. Bracketed words are exceptions.
2. אבד never occurs with Vav-consecutive (• וַ).
3. יֹאחֵז / אחז (30.4.1) is like the regular, pausal form (30.4.2; 30.4.3) – וַיֹּאחֶז.
4. אבה, אפה – third weak verbs do not dissimilate thematic vowels.
5. 2, 3fp (invariable forms) are always Patah.

EXERCISE THIRTY

I. Questions

1. List the verbs that are special cases R_1-Guttural א.
2. Where do the unique problems of R_1-Guttural א occur? How are these verbs treated elsewhere?
3. What part of the verb is affected in R_1-Guttural א Special cases verbs?
4. Describe the two weaknesses of these verbs.
5. Discuss the remedies for these two weaknesses (trace the development of the 1cs and the 2ms).
6. What are the various dissimilation possibilities?
7. Which forms invariably have Patah?
8. Discuss the forming and the parsing of these verbs.
9. Which verb takes pronominal suffixes? Which reduction pattern does it follow?

II. Vocabulary

אַךְ	only, surely, but	אַיִל	ram
פְּלִשְׁתִי	Philistine	מְלָאכָה	work
פתח	Qal: open	דּוֹר	(pl. דרות) generation
	Niph'al: be opened, loosened	הפך	Qal: turn, turn over, overthrow
	Pi"el: loosen, free, open		Niph'al: reflexive of Qal
פֶּתַח (*i*)	opening, gate, entrance	אחז	Qal: grasp, take hold of
לְבַד	alone (with suffix, לְבַדִי; with מִן: מִלְבַדִי besides, apart from)		(frequently with ב or Accusative)
נֶגֶד (*e*)	before, in front of, opposite to (with suffix נֶגְדִי)	חוּץ	(noun) the outside, street
		ערך	Qal: arrange in order

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   אֹיְבִי הַסַּבָּינָה

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Article

   הָאֵבֶל צַדִּיק

Preposition ל

שִׁמוֹ עֶרֶבִי

Interrogative ה

הָיָה מִלִּיצָה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. mp absolute סֵפֶר (*i*)
   2. fp absolute חֲפַרְפָּרָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 1cs	חֹרֶף (*o*)	3. 3ms	תְּנוּבָה
2. 2mp	נַעַר (*a*)	4. 1cs	נָחָשׁ

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1. 1cs	עַל	3. 2mp	מִן
2. 2fs	אֵת (direct object)	4. 3ms	אַחַר

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Qal Imperfect 3ms +3ms suffix (energic) אכל
      2. Qal Imperative 2ms אכל
      3. Qal Imperfect 1cs אבד
      4. Qal Imperfect 3fs +Vav-Consecutive אמר
      5. Qal Imperfect 1cp (pausal) אבד
      6. Qal Imperfect 2ms +Vav-Consecutive (pausal) אכל
      7. Niphal Perfect 3ms (shewa) אדר
      8. Qal Imperfect 3fs חזק (A/A)
      9. Qal Imperative 2fs חלף (A/O)
      10. Qal Perfect 3ms +1cs suffix הרג

   2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1.	חֲרוּצִים	6.	וַתֹּאכַלְנָה
2.	יֹאמַר	7.	יְמַנְּעֵנִי
3.	הַעֲבִירֻנִי	8.	וַיֹּאמֶר
4.	אֶכֹל	9.	הֵאָסְרוּ
5.	אַסְפֵּכֶם	10.	תְּעַמַּדְנָה

7. Translation

only in Qal Niphal Inf ABS

1. וַיַּהֲפֹךְ אֶת־הֶעָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְאֵת כָּל־הַכִּכָּר וְאֵת כָּל־יֹשְׁבֵי הֶעָרִים: Gen 19:25
וַיַּשְׁכֵּם אַבְרָהָם בַּבֹּקֶר אֶל־הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר עָמַד שָׁם אֶת־פְּנֵי־יְהוָה: Gen 19:27

2. וַיֹּאמֶר הַמַּלְאָךְ לְדָוִד וָאֹחֵז בְּשָׁאוּל וָאֶהֱרְגֵהוּ וַיְדַבֵּר דָּוִד אֶל־נְעָרָיו וַיַּהַרְגוּהוּ:

3. פִּי־צַדִּיק יְדַבֵּר חָכְמָה וּלְשׁוֹן רְשָׁעִים תִּכָּרֵת:

4. דִּבֶּר שָׁאוּל אֶל־עֲבָדָיו לֵאמֹר דַּבֵּר אֶל־דָּוִד הִנֵּה חָפֵץ בְּךָ הַמֶּלֶךְ וְכָל־עֲבָדָיו אֲהֵבוּךָ וַיְדַבְּרוּ עַבְדֵי־שָׁאוּל בְּאָזְנֵי דָוִד אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה:

5. יְהוָה בַּבֹּקֶר תִּשְׁמַע קוֹלִי בַּבֹּקֶר אֶעֱרָךְ־לְךָ וְאֶצְפֶּה:

CHAPTER 31
R_2-GUTTURAL (AYIN GUTTURAL) VERBS

31.1. Introduction: Guttural problems usually involve the Dagesh and shewa (5.7.1; 5.7.2). For R_2-Guttural verbs, the Dagesh problem is limited to the Intensive Stems, the Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el; whereas, the shewa problem occurs whenever the thematic vowel reduces. R_2-Guttural verbs primarily affect the boxes (the R_2-Guttural also prefers composite shewas, 31.5).

31.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_2-Guttural Verbs

1. Dagesh Forte: Gutturals (including ר) will not take Dagesh Forte (5.7.2). This problem is limited to the Intensives: Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el.
2. Vocal shewa: Gutturals reject simple vocal shewa and take a composite shewa (almost always ֲ Hatef-Patah).

31.3. Strong Areas of R_2-Guttural Verbs

All stems outside the Intensives are virtually strong with a Hatef-Patah (ֲ) for a reduced thematic vowel.

31.4. Remedies for the Infirmity of the Dagesh Forte

(1) The R_2-Guttural rejects the Dagesh, and the preceding short vowel lengthens by compensation (compare 7.2.2.1), or (2) the R_2-Guttural implies the Dagesh Forte (compare 7.2.2.2).

1. The R_2-Guttural rejects the Dagesh, and the preceding short vowel lengthens.

	Strong Verb		R_2-Guttural Verb: Dagesh rejected (Boxes adjusted)	
Piel Pf	□◉□	קִדֵּשׁ	□□□	בֵּרֵךְ
Piel Impv Inf	□◉□	קַדֵּשׁ	□□□	בָּרֵךְ
Pual Pf	□◉□	קֻדַּשׁ	□□□	בֹּרַךְ

2. The Guttural implies the Dagesh Forte

Strong Verb		R_2-Guttural Verb: Dagesh implied (Boxes adjusted)	
□◉□	קִדֵּשׁ	□■□	נִחֵם
□◉□	קַדֵּשׁ	□■□	נַחֵם
□◉□	קֻדַּשׁ	□■□	נֻחַם

The following chart indicates when the Dagesh Forte is rejected or implied. These are general patterns – there are exceptions:

R: Rejects Dagesh with compensatory lengthening

I : Implies Dagesh

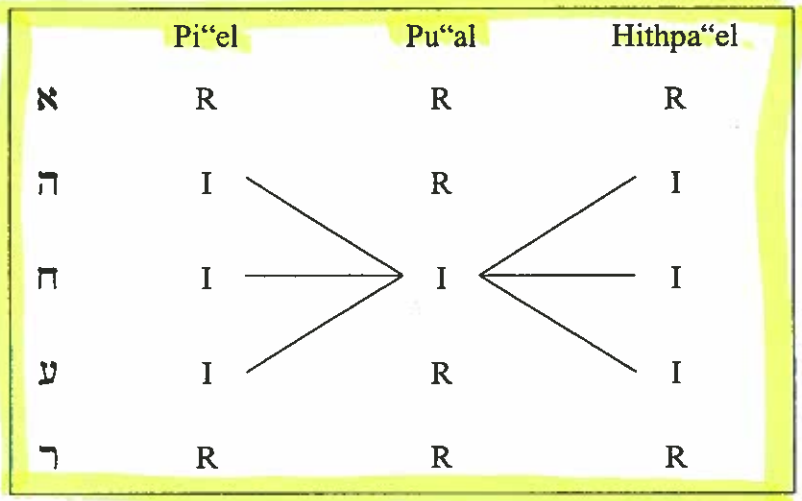


Chart courtesy of Isaac Jerusalmi

31.5. Remedy for the Infirmity of the Vocal Shewa

The thematic vowel reduced, the R_2-Guttural takes a Hatef-Patah (ֲ).

Strong Verb – קִדְּשׁוּ

R_2-Guttural verb – מֵאֲנוּ

31.6. Final Considerations

1. In the Qal Imperfect-Imperative of R_2-Guttural verbs, almost all thematic vowels are Patah (/A).

   Qal Imperfect 3ms – יִבְחַר

   Qal Imperative 2ms – בְּחַר

2. In R_2-Guttural verbs, the Qal Imperative and the Qal Infinitive differ (In most paradigms, such as the Strong Verb, they are identical – קְטֹל, Qal Imperative 2ms or Qal Infinitive Construct).

	Qal Imperative	Qal Infinitive
2ms	בְּחַר	בְּחֹר
2fs	בַּחֲרִי (< *בְּחֲרִי Two vocal shewas: R_1 takes corresponding short vowel.)	בְּחָרִי[144] (with 1cs suffix)

[144] בְּחָרִי comes from *בְּחֳרִי, but the Guttural rejects the simple vocal shewa and takes a composite shewa that echoes the Qames-Hatuf (compare 29.6.1.3).

2mp בְּחַרוּ (pausal בְּחָרוּ)
2fp בְּחַרְנָה

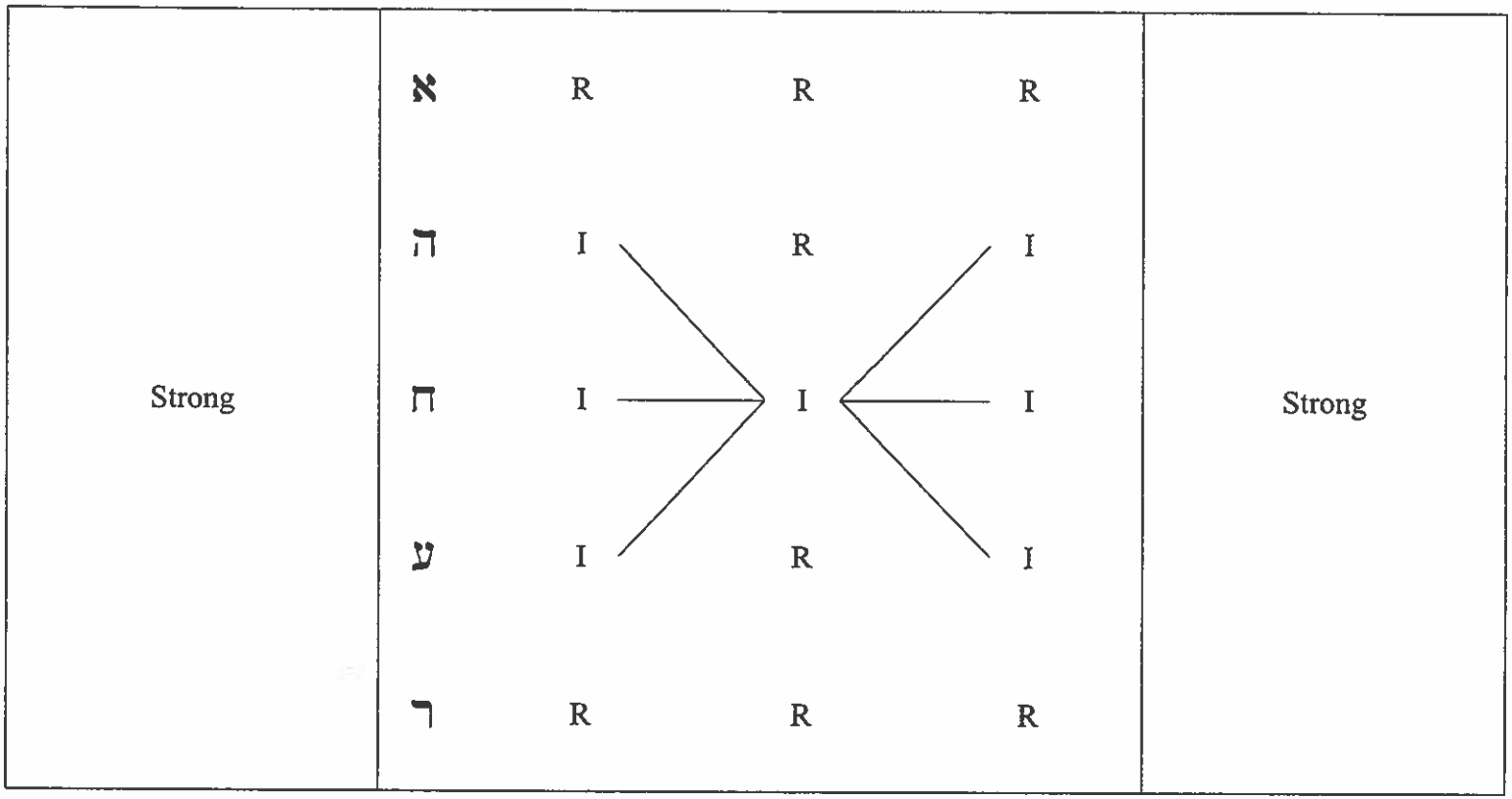
31.7. Forming and Parsing R_2-Guttural Verbs

Follow 29.10-29.13 Like R_1-Guttural verbs, the boxes are adjusted for R_2-Guttural verbs.
Examples:

1. Pi"el Imperative 2ms בָּרֵךְ
   1. Boxes: □⊙□ > □□□ *בָּרֵךְ > בָּרֵךְ
   2. Colors: A-e/E בָּרֵךְ
   3. Qal: קָטַל
   Answer: בָּרֵךְ
   In step one, R_2-ר rejects the Dagesh Forte and lengthens the Patah to Qames, 31.4.

2. נָחַם
   1. Boxes: □□□ > □⊙□ Pu"al Perfect
   2. Color: A/A Pu"al Perfect (excluding 3fs, 3cp)
   3. Qal: קָטַל Pu"al Perfect 3ms
   Answer: Pu"al Perfect 3ms of נחם

R_2-Guttural (Ayin Guttural) Verbs



R: Rejects Dagesh Forte with compensatory lengthening

I : Implies Dagesh Forte

Chart courtesy of Isaac Jerusalmi

EXERCISE THIRTY-ONE

I. Questions

1. What part of the verb is primarily affected in R_2-Guttural verbs?
2. Describe the weaknesses of R_2-Guttural verbs. Which conjugations are affected by these weaknesses?
3. Discuss the remedies for these weaknesses.
4. When is the Dagesh rejected or implied? (Reproduce the chart)
5. What is the thematic vowel for nearly all R_2-Guttural verbs in the Imperfect-Imperative of the Qal?
6. How does the thematic vowel differ between the Imperative and the Infinitive Construct of R_2-Guttural verbs?
7. Discuss the forming and the parsing of R_2-Guttural verbs.

II. Vocabulary

זְרוֹעַ	arm	פעל	Qal: do, make
חָזָק	(adj.) strong, hard, mighty	צעק	Qal: cry, cry out, call
גאל	Qal: redeem, act as a kinsman redeemer		Niph'al: passive of Qal
	Niph'al: reflexive and passive of Qal		זעק is the same word
בער	Qal: burn, consume	שׁרת	Pi"el: minister, serve
	Pi"el: make burn (kindle), consume, destroy		(Participle: minister, officer)
	Pu"al: passive of Pi"el	כבס	Pi"el: wash clothes (by treading)
	Hiph'il: cause to burn (kindle), burn up, destroy		Poetically – wash or cleanse a soul
טָהֵר	Qal: be clean (ceremonially or morally)	רָצוֹן	favor, will, pleasure, acceptance
	Pi"el: put in a clean state, cleanse, purify	חֵמָה	heat, wrath, anger
	Hithpa"el: reflexive of Pi"el	כעס	Qal: be vexed, angry, irritated
			Pi"el: put in a vexed condition, anger
			Hiph'il: vex, anger, provoke anger

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   יָמָיו בִּתָּהּ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Interrogative מה

   עָב מֶּלֶךְ

   Conjunctive ו

   בָּכָה יְשִׁימוֹן

   Preposition מן

   פִּתְאֹם יִתּוֹר

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. fs construct חֲמַר 2. mp construct חֹמֶס

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	3fp	צְדָקָה	3.	2ms	סֵפֶר (*i*)
2.	2mp	פֹּעַל (*o*)	4.	2fs	מִפְקָד

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	1cp	אֵת (with)	3.	3ms	כ
2.	3mp	ב	4.	3mp	תַּחַת

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Pu"al Perfect 1cp ברך
      2. Niph'al Participle ms הרג
      3. Pi"el Imperfect 3ms +2ms suffix ברך
      4. Qal Imperfect 2fs אמר
      5. Hiph'il Perfect 2mp אכל
      6. Pi"el Imperative 2ms +1cs suffix טהר

7. Qal Emphatic Imperative כעס
8. Qal Perfect 2fs +3fs suffix שׁמר
9. Qal Imperfect 2mp בהל
10. Qal Infinitive Construct דחף
11. Qal Imperfect 1cs +Vav-Consecutive אמר
12. Pi"el Infinitive Construct +1cp טהר

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. בְּעֵרָה
2. תְּשַׂחֵק
3. מְבֹעֶרֶת
4. בַּחֲרִי
5. יְבָרֲכֵם
6. טַהֲרוֹ
7. אֹכְלָה
8. מְאָסָם
9. חֲלָפוּ
10. הִצְטָרֵךְ
11. כְּעַסְתָּה
12. יֹאחֵז

7. Translation

1. לָכֵן אֱמֹר לִבְנֵי־יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲנִי יהוה וְהוֹצֵאתִי אֶתְכֶם מִתַּחַת סִבְלוֹת מִצְרַיִם וְהִצַּלְתִּי אֶתְכֶם מֵעֲבֹדָתָם וְגָאַלְתִּי אֶתְכֶם בִּזְרוֹעַ נְטוּיָה וּבִשְׁפָטִים גְּדֹלִים: Ex. 6:6

2. לָכֵן כֹּה־אָמַר אֲדֹנָי יהוה הִנֵּה אַפִּי וַחֲמָתִי אֶל־הַמָּקוֹם הַזֶּה עַל־הָאָדָם וְעַל־הַבְּהֵמָה וְעַל־עֵץ הַשָּׂדֶה וְעַל־פְּרִי הָאֲדָמָה וּבָעֲרָה וְאֻכְלָה כָּאֵשׁ:

3. בָּרְכוּ יהוה כָּל־צְבָאָיו מְשָׁרְתָיו פֹּעֲלֵי רְצוֹנוֹ:

4. וַיֹּאמֶר שְׁמוּאֵל אֶל־שָׁאוּל מָאַסְתָּ אֶת־דְּבַר יהוה וַיִּמְאָסְךָ יהוה מִמְלֹךְ עַל־יִשְׂרָאֵל: Isa 15:26

5. אֵלֶיךָ צָעֲקוּ וְנִמְלָטוּ בְךָ בָטְחוּ וְלֹא־יֹבֵשׁוּ:

6. עָשָׂה אַחְאָב אֶת־הָרָע בְּעֵינֵי־יהוה וַיַּכְעֵס אֶת־יהוה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל מִכֹּל מַלְכֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לְפָנָיו:

7. כַּבְּסֵנִי מֵעֲוֹנִי וּמֵחַטָּאתִי טַהֲרֵנִי: כִּי פְשָׁעַי אֲנִי יָדָעְתִּי וְחַטָּאתִי נֶגְדִּי תָמִיד:

CHAPTER 32
R_3-GUTTURAL (LAMED GUTTURAL) VERBS (EXCLUDING א AND ר)

32.1. Introduction: Because Gutturals prefer a Patah under them or before them (5.7.3), R_3-Guttural verbs pressure thematic vowels (especially Sere) to become Patah. If the R_3-Guttural fails to conform the thematic vowel to Patah, the R_3-Guttural takes a Furtive Patah (5.7.3). R_3-Guttural verbs affect the thematic vowels (colors).

32.2. Weakness or Infirmity of R_3-Guttural Verbs

R_3-Guttural verbs prefer a Patah or Qames thematic vowel.

32.3. Strong Areas of R_3-Guttural Verbs

All conjugations with Patah or (Qames) thematic vowels are like the Strong Verb:
Pu"al and Hoph'al A/A
Niph'al Perfect, Imperfect-Imperative A/(E)-a
Pi"el Perfect A-(e)/
Hithpa"el Perfect, Imperfect-Imperative 2, 3fp A-(e)/(E)-a
Hiph'il A-(i)/(I-e)

32.4. Remedies for the Infirmity of the R_3-Gutturals

1. Finite Verbal Forms (Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative)
    1. Sere Thematic Vowels
        1. In non-pausal forms, Sere thematic vowels become Patah.

	Strong Verb	R_3-Guttural verb
Pi"el Perfect 3ms	קִטֵּל	בִּקַּע
Hithpa"el Imperfect 3ms	יִתְקַטֵּל	יִתְבַּקַּע

        2. In pausal forms, restore Sere thematic vowels and place a Furtive Patah before the R_3-Guttural if it ends the word (5.7.4.2).

	Non-pausal	Pausal
Pi"el Perfect 3ms	בִּקַּע	בִּקַּע
Hithpa"el Imperfect 3ms	יִתְבַּקַּע	יִתְבַּקַּע
Hithpa"el Imperfect 3mp	יִתְבַּקְּעוּ[145]	יִתְבַּקְּעוּ[145]

[145] The R_3-Guttural is without Furtive Patah because the R_3-Guttural does not end the word.

2. Hireq-Yod thematic vowels (Hiph'il[146]) withstand the pressure of the R_3-Guttural and take a Furtive Patah.

	Strong Verb	R_3-Guttural verb
Hiph'il Perfect 3ms	הִקְטִיל	הִשְׁמִיעַ

2. Non-Finite Forms (Infinitive Absolute, Infinitive Construct, Participles – Active and Passive)

In both pausal and non-pausal forms, the non-finite forms retain the usual thematic vowels, and the R_3-Guttural takes a Furtive Patah (occasionally, the Sere thematic vowel becomes Patah).

	Strong Verb	R_3-Guttural verb
Qal Infinitive Construct	קְטֹל	שְׁלֹחַ
Qal Participle Active ms	קֹטֵל	שֹׁלֵחַ
Qal Participle Passive ms	קָטוּל	שָׁלוּחַ
Pi"el Infinitive Construct (Exception)	קַטֵּל	שַׁלַּח (Gen. 8:10)

32.5. Final Considerations

1. Like the R_2-Guttural verbs (31.6.1), almost all R_3-Guttural verbs have Patah for the thematic vowel in the Qal Imperfect-Imperative (/A).

Qal Imperfect 3ms	יִשְׁלַח
Qal Imperative 2ms	שְׁלַח

2. In all T-Form Participles, the R_3-Guttural changes the Segols into Patahs (5.7.3).

	Strong Verb	R_3-Guttural verb
Qal Participle Active fs T-Form	קֹטֶלֶת	שֹׁלַחַת

3. R_3-Gutturals in the silent shewa position take the silent shewa, not a composite shewa like R_1-Guttural verbs (29.6).

	Strong Verb	R_3-Guttural verb
Qal Perfect 1cs	קָטַלְתִּי	שָׁלַחְתִּי

[146] In the Hiph'il, three of the four special Sere forms (Jussive third person singular, Vav-Consecutive third person singular, and the Imperative 2ms) and the Imperfect-Imperative 2fp, 3fp change the Sere to Patah because of the R_3-Guttural (32.4.1.1.1). The Hiph'il Infinitive Absolute, a non-finite form, usually keeps the Sere.

4. In all conjugations, the Perfect 2fs form (without pronominal suffixes) adds a Patah under the R_3-Guttural (like Segolate nouns: *נַעֲרְ > נַעַר 15.2; 16.3).

	Strong Verb	R_3-Guttural verb
Qal Perfect 2fs	קָטַלְתְּ	שָׁלַחַתְּ[147]
Pi"el Perfect 2fs	קִטַּלְתְּ	שִׁלַּחַתְּ

32.6. Forming and Parsing R_3-Guttural Verbs (29.10-29.13)

These verbs primarily affect the colors.

Examples:

1. Niph'al Imperfect 3ms שלח

1.	Boxes:	□□□	יִשָּׁלַח
2.	Colors:	A/E-a (>A/A)	יִשָּׁלַח (32.4.1.1.1)
3.	Qal:	יִקְטֹל	יִשְׁלַח
	Answer:	יִשָּׁלַח	

2. נִשְׁלַח

1.	Boxes:	□□□	Pi"el Imperfect
2.	Colors:	A/A (A → E)	Pi"el Imperfect (excluding 2fs, 2mp, 3mp)
3.	Qal:	קְטֹל	Pi"el Imperfect 1cp שלח
	Answer:	Pi"el Imperfect 1cp שלח	

The R_3-ח changes the Sere to Patah, 32.4.1.1.1.

ע ח ה
Non-Pausal
Pf ɛ → A
Inf .. → –
Imv

Hpʿil - Ai / Iɛ → a - ff
Qal Inf-Imv ק״ט - /A
t-form Part שְׁתַּבֵּר → מִשְׁתַּבֵּר
Pf 2fs - שָׁלַחְתְּ
Pf 1cs שָׁלַחְתִּי
1-cs וְשָׁלַחְתִּי

[147] This is a rare exception of a vowel preceding a Dagesh Lene.

R_3-Guttural (Lamed Guttural) Verbs

Finite Forms (E > A : Sere > Patah, 32.4.1)

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	
Perfect	Patah 32.5.1.	A/E-a > A/A	A-e/E > A/A	A/A remains A/A	A-e/E-a > A/A	A-i/I-e > A-i/I-a (In Jussive, Vav-Consecutive and Imperative 2ms forms e>a)	A/A remains A/A	In pausal forms, the usual thematic vowel is retained and the R_3-Guttural receives a Furtive Patah
Imperfect								
Imperative								

Non-Finite Forms (32.4.2)

Infinitive Absolute	Usual thematic vowels are retained, and the R_3-Guttural receives a Furtive Patah (an occasional exception of Sere > Patah)	Pausal and Non-Pausal Forms
Infinitive Construct		
Participle		

R_3-Guttural (Lamed Guttural)Verbs (32.4)

	Non-Pausal	Pausal
Finite Forms (Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative)	Sere becomes Patah; Hireq-Yod takes Furtive Patah 32.4.1.1.1.	Sere thematic vowel restored, and Furtive Patah added when necessary 32.4.1.1.2.
Non-Finite Forms (Infinitives and Participles)	Pausal and Non-Pausal Thematic vowels retained, and Furtive Patah added when necessary 32.4.2.	

Chart courtesy of Isaac Jerusalmi

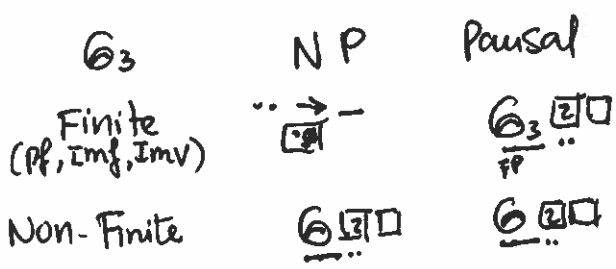
EXERCISE THIRTY-TWO

I. Questions

1. List the four characteristics of Gutturals (chapter 5) and identify the characteristic most important for R_3-Guttural verbs.
2. What part of the word do these verbs affect?
3. What is the weakness of R_3-Guttural verbs?
4. What is a Furtive Patah? When does it occur?
5. What areas of the R_3-Guttural verbs are like Strong Verbs?
6. Define finite verbal forms and non-finite verbal forms.
7. Discuss the remedies for the weakness of R_3-Guttural verbs.
8. What is the thematic vowel for almost all Qal Imperfect-Imperatives?
9. Does the R_3-Guttural reject silent shewa like R_1-Guttural verbs?
10. Discuss how R_3-Gutturals affect the T-Form Participles.
11. Which Perfect form behaves like a Segolate noun? Write and describe the form.
12. Describe the forming and the parsing of R_3-Guttural verbs (Emphasize the step where the weakness occurs).

II. Vocabulary

שָׂבַע	Qal: be satisfied, be in excess Hiph'il: cause to be satisfied, satisfy	בָּקַע	Qal: split, break open or through Niph'al: passive of Qal Pi"el: split into pieces
יָמִין	the right, right hand, right side, south	שְׂמֹאול (or שְׂמֹאל)	the left, left side, left hand, north
רָעֵב	Qal: be hungry (compare the noun רָעָב hunger, famine)	מָשַׁח	Qal: anoint (compare מָשִׁיחַ anointed one)
אֱלִישָׁע	Elisha	יֵהוּא	Jehu
זָרַע	Qal: sow, scatter seed Niph'al: be sown, be fruitful	שׁוֹפָר	horn, ram's horn
תָּקַע	Qal: thrust, drive, clap, blow (horn) Niph'al: passive of Qal	בָּלַע	Qal: swallow, engulf Pi"el: swallow up, confound, destroy
קָהָל	assembly, congregation	פָּרַשׂ	Qal: spread (out) Niph'al: be scattered, spread out



III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   לְאִסָּרְךָ יְחָכֶם

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Article

   חָדָשׁ הָדָר

   Preposition כ

   יִצְחָק אֱלֹהִים

   Interrogative ה

   אָמַרְתָּ יִצְחָק

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	mp construct	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	3.	Dual absolute	פַּעַם (*a*)
2.	mp construct	חָדָשׁ	4.	fs construct	פְּעֻלָּה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	1cs	פַּחְדָּה	3.	3mp	חָדָשׁ
2.	3ms	פֹּעַל (*o*)	4.	2fs	מַעֲרָצָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	2ms	מִן	3.	2fp	אֶל
2.	3ms	לְמַעַן	4.	3fs	ל

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps, the final answer, then translate all vocabulary words
      1. Qal Imperative 2ms סעד
      2. Hiph'il Imperative 2ms שׁבע
      3. Qal Imperfect 3ms +3ms suffix אסף
      4. Pi"el Imperfect 1cs (Pausal) שׁלח

5. Hiph'il Imperfect 1cp +3fs (energic) +Vav-Consecutive בקע
6. Hiph'il Jussive 3fs בטח
7. Qal Participle mp +3fs suffix אכל
8. Qal Participle fs (t) זרע
9. Niph'al Imperative 2ms (pausal) שבע
10. Qal Imperfect 2ms +Vav-Consecutive (pausal) אכל

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. זְרִחִי
2. הִשְׁבַּעְתָּנוּ
3. יִבְהַל
4. בְּטוֹחַ
5. יַאַסְפֵנִי
6. הַעֲמִידוֹ
7. וַיְבָרֶךְ
8. אֹכְלוֹת
9. אֹמַר
10. שָׁמֵעַ

7. Translation

1. הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אֶל־יִרְמְיָהוּ מֵאֵת יהוה בַּיָּמִים הָהֵם אֵזַרע אֶת־בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאֶת־בֵּית יְהוּדָה זֶרַע אָדָם וְזֶרַע בְּהֵמָה:

2. וַיְהִי בְּדַבֵּר מֹשֶׁה אֵת כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וַתִּבְקַע הָאֲדָמָה אֲשֶׁר תַּחְתֵּיהֶם: וַתִּפְתַּח הָאָרֶץ אֶת־פִּיהָ וַתִּבְלַע אֹתָם וְאֶת־בָּתֵּיהֶם וְאֵת כָּל־הָאָדָם אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם:

3. אִם יִתָּקַע שׁוֹפָר בְּעִיר וְעָם לֹא יֶחֱרָדוּ אִם תִּהְיֶה רָעָה בְּעִיר וַיהוה לֹא עָשָׂה:

4. הִרְשׁוּ יהוה וְעֻזּוֹ בַּקְּשׁוּ פָנָיו תָּמִיד: הוּא יהוה אֱלֹהֵינוּ בְּכָל־הָאָרֶץ מִשְׁפָּטָיו:

5. וַיַּעֲמֹד שְׁלֹמֹה לִפְנֵי מִזְבַּח יהוה נֶגֶד כָּל־קְהַל יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיִּפְרֹשׂ כַּפָּיו הַשָּׁמָיְמָה: וַיֹּאמַר יהוה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל אֵין־כָּמוֹךָ אֱלֹהִים בַּשָּׁמַיִם וּבָאָרֶץ שֹׁמֵר הַבְּרִית וְהַחֶסֶד לַעֲבָדֶיךָ הַהֹלְכִים לְפָנֶיךָ בְּכָל־לִבָּם:

CHAPTER 33
R_3-ALEF (LAMED ALEF) VERBS

33.1. Introduction: R_3-Alef verbs prefer Sere in the Perfect (contrast the R_3-Guttural which prefers Patah) and regularly lengthen Patah thematic vowels to Qames because the R_3-Alef quiesces in the silent shewa position. R_3-Alef verbs primarily affect the thematic vowels (colors).

33.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_3-Alef verbs

1. R_3-Alef quiesces in the silent shewa position (5.8 and footnote 29) and lengthens preceding short vowels.
2. The R_3-Alef usually replaces Patah with Sere in many Perfects.

33.3. Strong Areas of R_3-Alef Verbs

Outside the Perfect, R_3-Alef verbs are virtually Strong Verbs, with Patah thematic vowels usually lengthening to Qames.

33.4. Remedies for the Infirmity of the R_3-Alef Verbs

1. R_3-Alef quiesces: The R_3-Alef, in the silent shewa position, quiesces, and the thematic vowel, if short (Patah), lengthens by compensation (to Qames).

   Qal Perfect 1cs *מָצַאתִי > *מָצַאתִי > *מָצַאתִי > מָצָאתִי
   1 2 3 4

   The reconstructed strong form (1) quiesces the Alef in the silent shewa position (2), thus opening the syllable and omitting the Dagesh Lene in the ת (3). The Patah lengthens by compensation to Qames (4).

   Similarly, at the end of the word the R_3-Alef quiesces in the silent shewa position, and the preceding thematic vowel, if Patah, lengthens to Qames.

	Strong Verb	R_3-Alef verb
Pu"al Imperfect 3ms	*יְקֻטַּל	*יְמֻצַּא > *יְמֻצָּא > יְמֻצָּא
		1 2 3

   The reconstructed strong form (1) quiesces the R_3-Alef in the implied silent shewa position (2), and the Patah lengthens to Qames (3).

2. Perfects
   1. Mixed conjugations:
      Those conjugations with a Patah and a Sere (or Hireq-Yod) in the Perfect are mixed conjugations: Qal Stative A-e/ , Pi"el A-e/ , Hithpa"el A-e/ , Hiph'il A-i/ . In the Perfect of R_3-Alef verbs, mixed conjugations become pure

conjugations: E/ in the Qal Stative, Pi"el, Hithpa"el, Hiph'il (or E-i/ in the Hiphil).

			Strong Verb			R$_3$-Alef verb
Qal Stative	A-e/	3ms	כָּבֵד	E/	3ms	מָלֵא
		1cs	כָּבַדְתִּי		1cs	מָלֵאתִי
Pi"el	A-e/	3ms	קִטֵּל	E/	3ms	מִצֵּא
		1cs	קִטַּלְתִּי		1cs	מִצֵּאתִי
Hithpa"el	A-e/	3ms	הִתְקַטֵּל	E/	3ms	הִתְמַצֵּא
		1cs	הִתְקַטַּלְתִּי		1cs	הִתְמַצֵּאתִי
Hiph'il	A-i/	3ms	הִקְטִיל	E-i/	3ms	הִמְצִיא
		1cs	הִקְטַלְתִּי		1cs	הִמְצֵאתִי

2. Pure conjugations:
Those conjugations with only Patah in the Perfect are pure conjugations: Niph'al A/ , Pu"al A/ , Hoph'al A/ . In the Perfect of the R$_3$-Alef verbs, pure conjugations become mixed: E-a/ in the Niph'al, Pu"al, Hoph'al.

			Strong Verb			R$_3$-Alef verb
Niph'al	A/	3ms	נִקְטַל	E-a/	3ms	נִמְצָא
		1cs	נִקְטַלְתִּי		1cs	נִמְצֵאתִי
Pu"al	A/	3ms	קֻטַּל	E-a/	3ms	מֻצָּא
		1cs	קֻטַּלְתִּי		1cs	מֻצֵּאתִי

3. Qal Perfect (Standard verb):
The Alef quiesces, and the Patah lengthens to Qames.

		Strong Verb		R$_3$-Alef verb
Qal Standard	3ms	קָטַל	3ms	מָצָא
	1cs	קָטַלְתִּי	1cs	מָצָאתִי

33.5. Final Considerations

1. Outside the Perfect, thematic vowels are regular (like Strong Verbs).

2. Like R_2-Guttural and R_3-Guttural Verbs, R_3-Alef Verbs in the Qal Imperfect-Imperative take Patah (lengthened to Qames) thematic vowels.

		Strong Verb	R_3-Alef verb
Qal Imperfect	3ms	יִשְׁלַח	יִמְצָא

3. All 2, 3fp Imperfect-Imperative forms of all conjugations quiesce the Alef and take Segol for a thematic vowel (analogy to R_3-Vav/Yod verbs).

		Strong Verb	R_3-Alef verb
Qal Imperfect	2fp	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	תִּמְצָאנָה
Hiph'il Imperfect	2fp	תַּקְטִלְנָה	תַּמְצֶאנָה

4. All T-Form Participles quiesce the Alef and lengthen the preceding Segol to Sere.
*מִצֵּאת > *מִצְּאת > מִצֵּאת
1 2 3
The reconstructed strong form (1) quiesces the Alef (2) and lengthens Segol to Sere (3). (Compare *לֵאלֹהִים > *לֶאֱלֹהִים > לֵאלֹהִים and footnote 141)

33.6. Forming and Parsing R_3-Alef Verbs (29.10-29.13)

Examples:

1. Pi"el Perfect 2ms מִלֵּא
   1. Boxes: □⊡□ מִלֵּא
   2. Colors: A-e/E (>E/E) מִלֵּא
   3. Qal: קָטַלְתָּ *מִלֵּאתָ > מִלֵּאתָ
      The R_3-Alef quiesces in the silent shewa position (33.4.1).
      Answer: מִלֵּאתָ

2. הִמְצֵאתֶם
   1. Boxes: □□□הֶם Hiph'il Perfect
   2. Colors: E-i/I-e (A-i/I-e) Hiph'il Perfect (excluding 3ms, 3fs, 3cp)
   3. Qal: קְטַלְתֶּם Hiph'il Perfect 2mp, the Alef quiesces in silent shewa position.
      Answer: Hiph'il Perfect 2mp מצא

R_3-ALEF (LAMED ALEF) VERBS

	Qal		Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	
Perfect 33.4.2.	Standard A > Ā	Stative A-e>E	A>E-a	A-e>E	A>E-a	A-e>E	A-i>E-i	A>E-a	"Greening Effect"
Imperfect	**Red** 33.5.2.		All other thematic vowels are like Strong Verbs except, (1) When R_3-Alef ends the word, the Alef quiesces, and the short thematic vowel (Patah) lengthens (33.4.1) (2) All 2, 3fp Imperfect-Imperative forms quiesce the Alef and take Segol for the thematic vowel (33.5.3).						
Imperative									
Infinitive Absolute									
Infinitive Construct									
Participle	All T-Form Participles quiesce the R_3-Alef and lengthen preceding Segol to Sere: מֹצֵאת 33.5.4.								

Notes: R_3-Alef in the silent shewa position (also at the end of the word) quiesces, and the preceding vowel, if short, lengthens.

EXERCISE THIRTY-THREE

I. Questions

1. What part of the verb is affected in R_3-Alef Verbs?
2. Contrast the vowel preferences of the R_3-Guttural Verbs and of the Perfect of the R_3-Alef Verbs.
3. What are the weaknesses of R_3-Alef Verbs?
4. When are the R_3-Alef Verbs virtually like Strong Verbs?
5. Discuss the remedies for the infirmities of R_3-Alef Verbs.
6. What are pure conjugations in the Perfect? What are mixed conjugations in the Perfect? Where do they occur?
7. How do R_3-Alefs affect thematic vowels outside of the Perfect?
8. What is the thematic vowel of R_3-Alef Verbs in the Qal Imperfect-Imperative? What other Weak Verbs have the same thematic vowel?
9. What is the thematic vowel for the 2, 3fp Imperfect-Imperative of all conjugations of R_3-Alef Verbs?
10. Discuss T-Form Participles in R_3-Alef Verbs. How do they differ from Strong Verbs?
11. Describe the forming and the parsing of R_3-Alef Verbs.

II. Vocabulary

מִשְׁכָּן	dwelling place, tabernacle	טמא	Qal: be (or become) unclean, defiled
נָחָשׁ	snake		Niph'al: defile oneself, be defiled
חָמָס	violence, wrong		Pi"el: put in an unclean state, defile, pronounce unclean
פַּר	bull		Hithpa"el: put oneself in an unclean state, defile oneself
פָּרָה	cow		
צָפוֹן	north		
רַב	multitude, abundance		
רֵעַ	friend		
פלא	Niph'al: be (or do) extraordinary (things), be (or do) wonderful (things)	רפא	Qal: heal
			Niph'al: Passive of Qal
			Pi"el: heal
	Hiph'il: do wondrously, marvellously	מָלֵא	Qal: be full, fill
			Niph'al: Passive of Qal
שכן	Qal: dwell, settle (in a tent)		Pi"el: put in a full state, fill, fulfill, wholly devote to
	Pi"el: make settle, establish		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   וַתִּגְבַּהּ גָּבְהָא

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Interrogative מה

   עָרִיץ סִפְרָה

   Conjunctive ו

   נְדוּד כֵּן

   Preposition מן

   מַלְאָךְ חֶשְׁבּ

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	fs construct	נַחֲלָה	3.	mp absolute	נַעַר (*a*)
2.	fp absolute	נַחֲלָה	4.	mp construct	מַבָּט

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	2ms	פִּקֻּדָה	3.	3ms	פִּקּוּד
2.	2fs	עָוֹן	4.	2mp	קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	3fs	עַל	3.	2fs	ב
2.	1cp	תַּחַת	4.	3ms	את (direct object)

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Hoph'al Perfect 3ms מצא
      2. Qal Imperfect 1cs +Vav-Consecutive אמר
      3. Qal Imperfect 2fp מלא
      4. Pi"el Infinitive Construct שמח

5. Hiph'il Perfect 1cs פלא
6. Qal Imperfect 3ms +1cs שלח
7. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive מצא
8. Qal Imperative 2ms +3mp קטל (A/O)
9. Qal Imperfect 1cp שנא
10. Qal Imperfect 1cp (shewa) חשך (A/A)
11. Qal Imperative 2ms חטא
12. Pi"el Participle fs (t) טמא

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. יִמְצָאוּנָהּ
2. יִתְהַלָּכוּן
3. יַחֲרִימָהּ
4. תַּמְצֶאנָה
5. יַחְשְׁבֵנִי
6. יִשְׁלַח
7. מֵחֲטֹא
8. חָטָאת
9. נֶחֱטָא
10. מְצֹאָה
11. טַמַּאֲכֶם
12. מִלֹּאת

7. Translation

1. וַתִּשָּׁחֵת הָאָרֶץ לִפְנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים וַתִּמָּלֵא הָאָרֶץ חָמָס׃
2. עָשָׂה שָׁלֹמֹה הָרַע בְּעֵינֵי־יְהוָה וְלֹא מִלֵּא אַחֲרֵי יְהוָה כְּדָוִד אָבִיו׃
3. וְלֹא תְטַמֵּא אֶת־הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם יֹשְׁבִים בָּהּ אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי שֹׁכֵן בְּתוֹכָהּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה שֹׁכֵן בְּתוֹךְ בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל׃
4. וַיִּתְפַּלֵּל אַבְרָהָם אֶל־הָאֱלֹהִים וַיִּרְפָּא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־אֲבִימֶלֶךְ וְאֶת־אִשְׁתּוֹ׃
5. הַלְלוּ יְהוָה בְּכָל־לִבֵּךְ סַפְּרוּ כָּל־נִפְלְאוֹתָיו תָּמִיד׃
6. וַיֹּאמֶר אֶל־הָאִשָּׁה אַף כִּי אָמַר אֱלֹהִים לֹא תֹאכְלוּ מִכָּל־עֵץ הַגָּן׃ וַתֹּאמֶר הָאִשָּׁה אֶל־הַנָּחָשׁ מִפְּרִי עֵץ־הַגָּן נֹאכֵל וּמִפְּרִי הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר בְּתוֹךְ־הַגָּן אָמַר אֱלֹהִים לֹא תֹאכְלוּ מִמֶּנּוּ׃
7. שִׂנְאוּ רָע וְאֶהֱבוּ טוֹב וּמַלְאֲתָם אֶת־אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי׃

Piel
V-consec
ona Pf
Sim to V-Cons

CHAPTER 34
R_1-NUN (PE NUN) VERBS

34.1. Introduction: R_1-Nun in the silent shewa position frequently assimilates to the following consonant. When the R_1-Nun assimilates, only two root letters remain. Similarly, the following Weak Verbs (chapters 35-38) normally retain two root letters. R_1-Nun Verbs affect the boxes and often the first syllable of the Qal.

34.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_1-Nun Verbs

1. R_1-Nuns in the silent shewa position are unstable.
2. R_1-Nuns in the vocal shewa position of the Qal Imperative and Infinitive Construct are frequently unstable.

34.3. Strong Areas of the R_1-Nun Verbs

1. With a vowel under the R_1-Nun, the R_1-Nun is stable (like Strong Verbs): Pi"el, Pu"al, Hithpa"el, Niph'al Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitives, Qal Perfect, Participles, Infinitive Absolute.
   Pi"el Imperfect 3ms יְנַצֵּל

2. In the vocal shewa position, R_1-Nun is often stable: Qal Perfect 2mp, 2fp, Qal Imperative 2ms, 2fp (sometimes) and Infinitive Construct (sometimes).
   Qal Perfect 2mp נְפַלְתֶּם

3. In the silent shewa position, R_1-Nuns may be stable if R_2 is a Guttural letter.
   Hiph'il Perfect 3ms הִנְחִיל

34.4. Remedies for the Infirmities of the R_1-Nun Verbs

1. Nun Assimilates: R_1-Nuns in the silent shewa position assimilate[148] to the following consonant.
   $R_3\ R_2\ נְ > R_3\ R_2\ R_2\ ְ > R_3\ R_{1\&2}\ ְ$

   Qal Imperfect 3ms *יִנְפַּל > *יִפְפַּל > יִפַּל
   Niph'al Perfect 3ms *נִנְגַּשׁ > *נִגְגַּשׁ > נִגַּשׁ
   Hiph'il Perfect 3ms *הִנְפִּיל > *הִפְפִּיל > הִפִּיל
   Hoph'al (Huph'al[149]) Perfect 3ms *הָנְפַּל > *הָפְפַּל > הָפַּל

[148] See 9.2.1 and footnote 52.

[149] Hoph'al frequently becomes a Huph'al when the following letter has a Dagesh Forte – הָשְׁמַר, but הָפַּל.

The Hiph'il, Hoph'al, Niph'al Perfect, Participle, and Qal Imperfect assimilate the R_1-Nun.

2. Nun disappears (AWOL): In verbs with Patah or Sere (not Holem) thematic vowels in the Qal Imperative and Infinitive Construct, the R_1-Nun disappears (goes AWOL). (The form without the R_1-Nun may reflect an original biliteral root.)

	Orange (A/O)	Red (A/A)	Green (only נתן) (A/E)
Qal Imperfect (Assimilation)	יִפֹּל	יִנַּשׁ	יִתֵּן
Qal Imperative	נְפֹל	נַשׁ (Dagesh Lene)	תֵּן (Dagesh Lene)
Qal Infinitive Construct	נְפֹל	*נַשְׂאתְ > *נַשְׂאת > נְשֹׂאת (*i*)	*תִּנְתְ > *תִּתְתְ > תֵּתֶת (*i*)
3ms suffix with ל	לָנְשֹׂאת	נְשֹׂאתוֹ	לָתֵתֶת	תִּתּוֹ

1. Orange: Verbs with Holem thematic vowels are like Strong Verbs in the Qal Imperative and Infinitive Construct.

2. Red: Verbs with Patah thematic vowels are without the Nun in the Qal Imperative and the Infinitive Construct (AWOL). If the second root letter is a B^{e}gad K^{e}fat letter, it (נַשׂ) takes a Dagesh Lene (Dagesh Forte cannot begin a word, 4.3.5). The Qal Infinitive Construct adds a ת to the end of the word and imitates the Segolate pattern (15.2).

3. Green: Verbs with a Sere thematic vowel are without the Nun in the Qal Imperative and Infinitive Construct (AWOL). When the Nun disappears in the Qal Imperative, the second root letter (ת) takes a Dagesh Lene. The Qal Infinitive Construct adds a ת to the end of the word, but before the Segolate process begins, the added ת assimilates the R_3-Nun of the root, producing the final form – תֵּתֶת (a hovering Dagesh representing the R_3-Nun, which lands with pronominal suffixes: 3ms תִּתּוֹ. The Sere occurs under the first letter in closed accented syllables [6.3.1], and Hireq occurs in closed unaccented syllables [6.3.3]).

34.5. Final Considerations

1. נתן: The R_3-Nun may also assimilate in the silent shewa position.

Qal Perfect 1cs *נָתַנְתִּי > נָתַתִּי review קָטַנּוֹ (21.3.2)

2. לקח: In the Qal Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive Construct, לקח acts like a R_1-Nun verb – לקח > *נקח.

Qal Imperfect 3ms	יִקַּח
Qal Imperative 2ms	קַח
Qal Infinitive Construct	(לָ)קַחַת[150]

In other conjugations, לקח is regular:

Niph'al Perfect 3ms	נִלְקַח

3. נשׂא: Note the irregular Infinitive Construct:

Qal Imperfect 3ms	יִשָּׂא
Qal Imperative 2ms	שָׂא
Qal Infinitive Construct	(לָ)שֵׂאת or שְׂאֵת

34.6. Forming and Parsing R_1-Nun Verbs (29.10-29. 13)

R_1-Nun Verbs frequently affect the boxes.

Examples:

1. Hiph'il Perfect 1cs נפל
   1. Boxes: □□□הָ > □□הָ — הַנְפַל > הַפַל (34.4.1)
   2. Colors: A-i/I-e — הַפַל
   3. Qal: קָטַלְתִּי — הַפַלְתִּי
   Answer: הִפַּלְתִּי

2. Qal Infinitive Construct נגשׁ (A/A)
   1. Strong form – נִגַּשׁ (?)
   2. Identify weakness: R_1-Nun verb (A/A)
   3. Adjustments: The Qal Infinitive Construct loses the R_1-Nun, adds a ת to the end of the word, and imitates the Segolate pattern
   *נִגַּשׁ (?) > *גַּשׁ > *גַּשְׁתְּ > *גַּשְׁתּ > גֶּשֶׁת
   Answer: גֶּשֶׁת

[150] In the Qal Infinitive Construct, לקח follows the נַעַר (16.2.2) Segolate pattern. The Segols become Patah under the influence of the R_3-Guttural (ח) (5.7.3).

3. נִגַּשׁ

1. Boxes: □⊙נִ = □□□ִ or □⊙□ Niph'al Perfect / Participle, Pi"el Perfect, or Qal Imperfect
2. Colors: Qames Niph'al Participle ms Absolute
3. Qal: קָטַל or קָטוֹל _____

Answer: Niph'al Participle ms Absolute נגשׁ

The second step eliminates the Pi"el Perfect, the Qal Imperfect, and the Niph'al Perfect.

R_1-Nun (Pe Nun) Verbs

	Qal			Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
Perfect	Strong 34.3.1.			Assimilation 34.4.1.	Strong 34.3.1.			Assimilation 34.4.1.	
Imperfect	Assimilation 34.4.1.								
Imperative	(Orange) Strong 34.3.2.	(Red) Nun goes AWOL 34.4.2.2.	(Green) Nun goes AWOL 34.4.2.3.						
Infinitive Absolute	Strong 34.3.1.								
Infinitive Construct	(Orange) Strong 34.3.2.	(Red) Nun goes AWOL Plus Tav (Segolate) 34.4.2.2.	(Green) Nun goes AWOL Plus Tav 34.4.2.3.						
Participle	Strong 34.3.1.			Assimilation 34.4.1.					

EXERCISE THIRTY-FOUR

I. Questions

1. What part of the word is frequently affected in R_1-Nun Verbs?
2. Describe the weaknesses of R_1-Nun Verbs.
3. When are R_1-Nun Verbs like Strong Verbs?
4. Discuss the remedies for the weaknesses.
5. What is assimilation? When does it occur with R_1-Nun Verbs?
6. When does the R_1-Nun disappear?
7. When does a Hoph'al become a Huph'al (at least sometimes)?
8. Discuss the Segolate process in R_1-Nun Verbs. Where does it occur?
9. Discuss the special considerations for the following Verbs: נתן, לקח, נשׂא.
10. Describe the forming and the parsing of R_1-Nun Verbs.

II. Vocabulary

נסע	Qal: (pull up, out) set out, journey, depart Hiph'il: causative of Qal	מֵעִים	(the word only occurs in the Plural) internal organs; inward parts
קֶדֶם	before, front, east	יסד(ו)	Qal: establish, found
נצח	Pi"el: act as a leader, overseer		Niph'al: passive, reflexive of the Qal
נֵצַח (*i*)	eminence, glory, perpetuity		Pi"el: establish, found
זָכָר	male, man		Pu'al: passive of Pi"el
שׁקר	Pi"el: act falsely, lie (compare שֶׁקֶר)	נגע	Qal: touch (usually with ב), reach, strike
אִשֶּׁה	(Construct Singular אֵשֶׁת, Construct Plural אִשֵּׁי) offering by fire, fire offering		Hiph'il: cause to touch, reach, arrive, approach
נגד	Hiph'il: declare, tell	נצל	Niph'al: deliver oneself, be delivered
	Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il		Hiph'il: take away, deliver (from)
יֵשַׁע (*i*)	salvation, deliverance		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

לַיְלָה　　הַשָּׁאטִים

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
Article

הַמֶּלֶה מַהֲמִרָה

Preposition ב

יְמָנִי כִּבְשָׂה

Interrogative ה

עָנוּר נְפִלִים

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	ms construct	בָּכָל	3.	mp construct	אֹהֲל (*o*)
2.	fp absolute	מִבְרָלָה	4.	fs construct	זְוָעָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	3ms	מָלֶךְ (*a*)	3.	2fs	זְוָעָה
2.	3mp	כֶּסֶל (*i*)	4.	1cs	מַמְלָכָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	2fs	מִן	3.	2mp	כ
2.	1cp	אֶל	4.	2fp	אֵת (with)

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +3mp suffix נצל
      2. Qal Imperative 2ms +3ms (energic) לקח
      3. Huph'al Imperfect 2mp נגד
      4. Hiph'il Perfect 2fs נחל
      5. Qal Imperfect 3ms +2ms נתן (A/E)
      6. Qal Imperative 2fp נתן (A/E)
      7. Niph'al Perfect 1cp לקח
      8. Niph'al Imperfect 3mp +Vav-Consecutive נחם
      9. Qal Infinitive Construct לקח
      10. Qal Emphatic Imperative נגשׁ (A/A)
      11. Qal Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive אכל

12. Qal Imperfect 1cp נגף (A/O)

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. קְחָה
2. נְסָעָה
3. נִתַּתְּ
4. שְׂאֵת
5. וְהַנְּחָה
6. גְּשׁוּ
7. נִשְׂאת
8. קַח
9. לָטַעַת
10. יַגֵּשׁ
11. יִשְׂאוּ
12. יִטְּשֵׁנוּ

7. Translation

1. וַיִּבְחַר־לוֹט אֶת־כָּל־כִּכַּר הַיַּרְדֵּן וַיִּסַּע לוֹט מִקֶּדֶם וַיִּפָּרְדוּ אִישׁ מֵעַל אָחִיו: אַבְרָם יָשַׁב בְּאֶרֶץ־כְּנָעַן וְלוֹט יָשַׁב בְּעָרֵי הַכִּכָּר:

2. וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלָיו שְׁמוּאֵל קָרַע יהוה אֶת־מַמְלְכוּת יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵעָלֶיךָ הַיּוֹם וּנְתָנָהּ לְרֵעֲךָ הַטּוֹב מִמֶּךָּ: וְגַם נֵצַח יִשְׂרָאֵל לֹא יְשַׁקֵּר וְלֹא יִנָּחֵם כִּי לֹא אָדָם הוּא לְהִנָּחֵם: וַיֹּאמֶר חָטָאתִי עַתָּה כַּבְּדֵנִי נָא נֶגֶד זִקְנֵי־עַמִּי וְנֶגֶד יִשְׂרָאֵל:

3. שִׁמְעוּ־זֹאת בֵּית־יַעֲקֹב הַנִּקְרָאִים בְּשֵׁם יִשְׂרָאֵל וּמִמְעֵי יְהוּדָה יָצָאוּ הַנִּשְׁבָּעִים בְּשֵׁם יהוה וּבֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל יַזְכִּירוּ לֹא בֶאֱמֶת וְלֹא בִצְדָקָה: אַף יָדִי יָסְדָה אֶרֶץ וִימִינִי פֵּרְשָׂה שָׁמָיִם קֹרֵא אֲנִי אֵלֵיהֶם יַעַמְדוּ יַחְדָּו: הִקָּבְצוּ כֻלְּכֶם וְשִׁמְעוּ מִי בָהֶם הִגִּיד אֶת־אֵלֶּה:

CHAPTER 35
R_1-VAV AND YOD (PE VAV/YOD) VERBS

35.1. Introduction: R_1-Yod (original Vav)

R_1-Yod Verbs represent two verbs: R_1-Yod (original Vav) and R_1-Yod (original Yod). R_1-Yod (original Vav) Verbs retain the original Vav in Niph'al, Hiph'il, Hoph'al, and Hithpa"el. In the other conjugations (Pi"el, Pu"al, and some Qal forms) a Yod replaces the original Vav. R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs primarily obscure the boxes and frequently the first syllable of the Qal.

35.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_1-Yod (original Vav)

1. Forms retaining the original Vav (Niph'al, Hiph'il, and Hoph'al) usually contract the original Vav with the preceding short vowel.
2. The original Vav disappears in the Qal Imperfect, Imperative, and the Infinitive Construct (This probably reflects an original biliteral root 34.4.2).

35.3. Strong Areas of R_1-Yod (original Vav) Verbs

1. The original Vav remains in the:
   Niph'al Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitive (with the box □□הִ□ָ), and Hithpa"el (sometimes)
   Niph'al Imperfect 3ms יִוָּלֵד

2. Forms replacing the original Vav with a Yod are virtually strong:
   Qal Perfect, Participles, Infinitive Absolute
   Qal Perfect 3ms יָשַׁב

   Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el (sometimes)
   Pu"al Perfect 3ms יֻלַּד

35.4. Remedies for the Infirmities of the R_1-Yod (original Vav) Verbs

1. Forms retaining the original Vav usually contract the Vav with the preceding short vowel:
   1. Hoph'al > Huph'al: uw > ū *הָוּשַׁב > הוּשַׁב Perfect 3ms

   2. Hiph'il > Haph'il (The Hiph'il is a Haph'il throughout the paradigm in R_1-Yod [original Vav] Verbs): aw > ō *הַוְשִׁיב > הוֹשִׁיב Perfect 3ms

   3. Niph'al > Naph'al (The Niph'al is a Naph'al in the Perfect, Participle, and one Infinitive Absolute option [□□□ָנ]): aw > ō *נָוְעַץ > נוֹעַץ Perfect 3ms

2. The original Vav disappears in the Qal Imperfect, Imperative and Infinitive Construct

   1. Imperfect: The original Vav disappears, and the preformative Hireq lengthens to Sere by compensation.
      Qal Imperfect 3ms *יְוְשֵׁב* > *יִשֵׁב* > יֵשֵׁב

   2. Imperative: The Imperative drops the Vav (AWOL like R_1-Nun Verbs, 34.4.3).

		R_1-Yod (Vav)	R_1-Nun
Qal Imperative	2ms	*וְשֵׁב > שֵׁב	תֵּן
	2fs	שְׁבִי	תְּנִי
	2mp	שְׁבוּ	תְּנוּ
	2fp	שֵׁבְנָה	תֵּנָה

   3. Infinitive Construct: The Infinitive Construct drops the Vav (AWOL), adds ת, and imitates the Segolate pattern (like R_1-Nun Verbs, 34.4.2).

R_1-Yod (Vav): *וְשֵׁב > *שֵׁב > *שֵׁבְתְ > *שֵׁבֶת > שֶׁבֶת (*i*) 1cs suffix שִׁבְתִּי
R_1-Nun: *נְגַשׁ > *גַּשׁ > *גַּשְׁתְ > *גַּשֶׁת > גֶּשֶׁת

With a pronominal suffix, R_1-Yod (original Vav) Verbs take Hireq under the first letter – שִׁבְתִּי (ישב). R_1-Yod (Vav) / R_3-Guttural Verbs take Patah under the first letter – דַּעְתִּי (ידע) Qal Infinitive Construct with 1cs suffix.

35.5. Final Considerations

1. In R_1-Yod (original Vav) Verbs, the thematic vowels for the Qal are A/E-a – יָשַׁב / יֵשֵׁב – שֵׁב. Verbs ending in an R_3-Guttural change the thematic vowels to A/A – יָדַע / יֵדַע – דַּע.

2. A Vav-Consecutive (וַ•) with the Imperfect retracts the accent in the Qal, Hiph'il, and (sometimes) Niph'al when the final syllable is closed, and the penult is an opened syllable with a long vowel (footnote 109). Because the final syllable is closed and unaccented, the Sere shortens to Segol.

		Imperfect	With Vav-Consecutive (וַ•)
Qal	3ms	יֵשֵׁב	וַיֵּשֵׁב
Hiph'il (Jussive)	3ms	יוֹשֵׁב	וַיּוֹשֵׁב
Niph'al	3ms	יִוָּלֵד	וַיִּוָּלֵד
Qal	3mp	יֵשְׁבוּ	וַיֵּשְׁבוּ (The accent does not retract because the final syllable is opened.)

3. הלך also acts like an R_1-Yod (Vav) verb

Qal Perfect 3ms	הָלַךְ
Qal Imperfect 3ms	יֵלֵךְ
Qal Imperative 2ms	לֵךְ
Qal Infinitive Construct	לֶכֶת (*e*) with 1cs לֶכְתִּי
Hiph'il Perfect 3ms	הוֹלִיךְ

35.6. Introduction: R_1-Yod (original Yod)

The R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs (frequently יבשׁ, יטב, ילל, ימן, ינק, יעץ, ישׁר) occur in the Qal and Hiph'il. Like the R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs, the R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs obscure the box pattern.

35.7. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs

1. Hiph'il: The R_1-Yod contracts with the preceding short vowel.
2. Qal: In the silent shewa position (in the Imperfect), the Yod quiesces.

35.8. Strong Areas of the R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs

R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs are like Strong Verbs in the Qal Perfect, Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles.

35.9. Remedies for the Infirmities of the R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs

1. Hiph'il > Haph'il (the original R_1-Yod contracts with the preceding short vowel: ay > ē, 11.10.1)

   Hiph'il Perfect 3ms *הַיְטִיב > הֵיטִיב

   Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms *יַיְטִיב > יֵיטִיב with Vav-Consecutive וַיֵּיטֶב

   Hiph'il Imperative 2ms *הַיְטֵב > הֵיטֵב

2. Qal (Imperfect): The original R_1-Yod quiesces to form the vowel Hireq-Yod, compare 8.2.2.2 and footnote 46.

   Qal Imperfect 3ms *יַיְטַב > יִיטַב

35.10. Final Consideration: R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs are A/A (Stative) in the Qal.

35.11. Introduction: Mixed Forms

There are two mixed forms: (1) a few verbs follow both R_1-Yod (original Vav) and R_1-Yod (original Yod) patterns, and (2) R_1-Yod / R_2-Sade Verbs frequently follow R_1-Nun patterns.

35.12. Verbs Partly R_1-Yod (original Vav) and Partly R_1-Yod (original Yod): יראand ירשׁ

1. יראׂ

	R_1-Yod (Vav)	R_1-Yod (Yod)
Qal Imperfect 3ms		יִירָא
Qal Imperative 2ms		יְרָא
Qal Infinitive Construct		יְרֹאָה (irregular)
Niph'al Imperfect 3ms	יִוָּרֵא	

יראׂ follows R_1-Yod (Yod) pattern in the Qal and the R_1-Yod (Vav) pattern in the Niph'al.

2. ירשׁ:

	R_1-Yod (Vav)	R_1-Yod (Yod)
Qal Imperfect		יִירַשׁ
Qal Imperative	רֵשׁ	
Qal Infinitive Construct	רֶשֶׁת (*i*)	
Niph'al Imperfect	יִוָּרֵשׁ	
Hiph'il Perfect	הוֹרִישׁ	

ירשׁ follows R_1-Yod (Yod) pattern in the Qal Imperfect and R_1-Yod (Vav) pattern elsewhere.

35.13. Verbs R_1-Yod / R_2-Sade (יצנ, יצע, יצת, and frequently יצק, יצר but excluding יצא)

These verbs sometimes act like R_1-Nun Verbs: the Yod may assimilate to the following Sade (צ) when the R_1-Yod is in the silent shewa position (34.4.1). Moreover, in the Qal Imperative and Infinitive Construct, the R_1-Yod may disappear (34.4.2).

Qal Imperfect 1cs	*אִיצֹק > אֶצֹק (*יִנְפֹל > יִפֹּל)
Qal Imperative 2ms	יְצֹק (נְפֹל) or צַק[151] (נְשׂ)
Qal Infinitive Construct	צֶקֶת (נְשֹׂאת)
Hiph'il Imperfect 3mp	*יַיְצִיקוּ > יַצִּיקוּ

35.14. The Irregular Verb יָכֹל (O/A)

The Qal Stative verb יָכֹל (O/A) (to be able, prevail) has an irregular Qal Imperfect – יוּכַל (3ms).

35.15. Forming and Parsing R_1-Yod Verbs (29.10-29.13)

1. Hiph'il Imperative 2mp ישׁע
   1. Boxes: □□הָ□ > □□הוֹ *הַוְשׁע > הוֹשׁע (35.4.1.2)
   2. Colors: A-i/I-e הוֹשִׁיע

[151] Note the change in the thematic vowel from Holem to Patah (both irregular and irritating).

3. Qal: שְׁמְרוּ הוֹשִׁיעוּ
   Answer: הוֹשִׁיעוּ

2. Qal Imperfect 3ms יטב (י)
   1. Strong form – יִקְטֹל > יִיטֵב
   2. Weakness: The R_1-Yod (Yod) Verbs affect the boxes or the first syllable of the Qal. Moreover, all R_1-Yod (Yod) Verbs have a Patah thematic vowel in the Qal.
   3. Adjustments: R_1-Yod quiesces in the silent shewa position and forms a Hireq-Yod – *יִיטֵב > יִיטֵב (35.9.2)
      The thematic vowel is Patah (35.10) יִיטַב
      Answer: יִיטַב

3. הוֹשַׁע

1.	Boxes:	□□וֹ□ > □□□הַ□ (□□וֶ□)	Hiph'il Perfect, Imperative, Infinitives
2.	Colors:	A-i/I-e; with R_3-Guttural A-i/I-a and all Sere forms (a) (24.2.2; 32.4)	Hiph'il Imperative 2ms, 2fp Infinitive Absolute (irregular)
3.	Qal:	שְׁמֹר or שָׁמוֹר	Hiph'il Imperative 2ms or Infinitive Absolute (irregular)

Answer: Hiph'il Imperative 2ms of ישע

R_1-Yod (original Pe Vav) Verbs (35.1-5)

	Qal	Niph'al > Naph'al	Pi"el Pu"al Hithpa"el	Hiph'il > Haph'il	Hoph'al
Perfect	Strong – Yod replaces Vav 35.3.2.	aw > ō *נַוְשַׁב > נוֹשַׁב 35.4.1.3.	Strong (In Pi"el, Pu"al, the original Vav becomes Yod; Hithpa"el sometimes retain Vav; sometimes it becomes Yod) 35.3.2.	aw > ō *הַוְשִׁיב > הוֹשִׁיב *יַוְשִׁיב > יוֹשִׁיב etc. 35.4.1.2.	uw > ū *יֻוְשַׁב > יוּשַׁב etc. 35.4.1.1.
Imperfect	Impf./Impv. have thematic vowels /E-a. Impf. drops Vav and lengthens preceding Hireq to Sere 35.4.2.1.	Strong with Vav retained by Dagesh Forte יִוָּשֵׁב 35.3.1.			
Imperative	Drops Vav (like R_1-Nun Green/Red) 35.4.2.2.				
Infinitive Construct	Drops Vav, add ת and forms Segolate patterns (like R_1-Nun Green/Red) 35.4.2.3.				
Infinitive Absolute	Strong – Yod replaces Vav 35.3.2.				
Participle		aw > ō *נַוְשָׁב > נוֹשָׁב 35.4.1.3.			*מֻוְשָׁב > מוּשָׁב

הלך is a R_1-Yod (Vav) verb in the Qal Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitive Construct, and the Hiph'il. Elsewhere, it is regular – הֹלֵךְ Qal Participle ms Absolute, יִתְהַלֵּךְ Hithpa"el Imperfect 3ms (35.5.3).

	R_1-Yod (original Yod) (35.6-10)		Mixed Forms				Irregular Form
			ירא 35.12.1		ירש 35.12.2		יכל (O/A) 35.14
	Qal	Haph'il (< Hiph'il)	Qal R_1-Yod (Yod)	Derived Conjugations R_1-Yod (Vav)	Qal R_1-Yod (Yod)	Derived Conjugations R_1-Yod (Vav)	Qal
Perfect	Strong 35.8.		יָרָא		יָרַשׁ	Niph'al Perf. 3ms נוֹרַשׁ	יָכַל 3ms
Imperfect	Yod in silent shewa position quiesces: short Hireq lengthens to Hireq-Yod 35.9.2.		יִירָא		יִירַשׁ	Hiph'il Impf. 3ms יוֹרִישׁ	יוּכַל Imperfect 3ms
Imperative	All Impf./Impv. has Patah for thematic vowels 35.10.	ay > ē Perf. 3ms *הֵיטִיב > הַיְטִיב 35.9.1.	יְרָא	Niph'al Perf. 3ms נוֹרָא Niph'al Impf. 3ms יִוָּרֵא	R_1-Yod (Vav) רֵשׁ		
Infinitive Absolute			Strong		Strong		
Infinitive Construct	Strong 35.8.		*יְרֵאָה / יְרֹא		רֶשֶׁת		
Participle			Strong		Strong		

*irregular

EXERCISE THIRTY-FIVE

I. Questions

1. What part of the word is affected in R_1-Vav and Yod Verbs?
2. What are the two R_1-Yod Verbs?
3. Describe the weaknesses of the R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs.
4. When are R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs like Strong Verbs?
5. Discuss the remedies for the weaknesses of R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs.
6. Describe the changes in the names of the conjugations: Niph'al, Hiph'il, and Hoph'al. What do they become in R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs?
7. How are R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs similar to R_1-Nun Verbs in the Qal?
8. What are the thematic vowels in the Qal of R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs? What are the thematic vowels of R_1-Yod (Vav) / R_3-Guttural Verbs?
9. Explain the changes that the Vav-Consecutive (וַ•) makes to the Imperfect. When and where do these changes occur?
10. How is הלך associated with R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs?
11. Describe the weaknesses of the R_1-Yod (Yod) Verbs.
12. When do these weaknesses occur?
13. When are the R_1-Yod (Yod) Verbs like Strong Verbs?
14. Discuss the remedies for these weaknesses.
15. What are the thematic vowels in the Qal of R_1-Yod (Yod) Verbs?
16. Discuss the mixed forms יראּ and ירשׁ: when do they act like R_1-Yod (Vav) Verbs and when do they act like R_1-Yod (Yod) Verbs?
17. R_1-Yod / R_2-Sade Verbs are like which Weak Verb?
18. How is the Stative verb יָכֹל (O/A) irregular?
19. Discuss the parsing and the forming of R_1-Yod Verbs.

II. Vocabulary: R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs are marked with (י); consider all other R_1-Yod Verbs original Vav.

יסף	Qal: add Niph'al: be added, joined Hiph'il: add (יסף means "again" or "more" when followed by an infinitive or another verb – וַיֹּסֶף ... וַיִּקַּח And he added and took = he took again)	חדל	Qal: cease, come to an end, desist, fail
		מטר	Hiph'il: rain, cause rain to fall
		יצר	Qal: form, fashion, plan, foreordain (Participle: one who forms, a potter) Niph'al: passive of Qal
יכח	Hiph'il: decide, judge, reprove, correct, convict	יעץ (י)	Qal: advise, counsel Niph'al: consult together, exchange counsel

יטב	Qal: be good, be pleasing Hiph'il: do good (to), deal well (with), do thoroughly	מָטָר	rain
		עֵצָה	counsel, advice
		נָתָן	Nathan
ישע	Niph'al: be freed, saved Hiph'il: free, save, deliver, liberate	בַּת־שֶׁבַע	Bathsheba
		ירשׁ	Qal: take possession of, dispossess Hiph'il: cause to possess or inherit, cause to dispossess
יָכֹל (O/A)	Qal: be able, have power, prevail, endure		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

נָגוּעַ רָנִי

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words

Interrogative מה

פְּנֵה רָחָב

Conjunctive ו

וְרְחֹבוֹת פָּרַח

Preposition מן

הַמֶּלֶךְ כָּלָה

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words

1.	mp construct	צַדִּיק	3.	ms construct	פֹּעַל (*o*)
2.	fp construct	מִבְדָּלָה	4.	fs construct	יָשָׁר

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – lists all steps

Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns		
1.	3ms	מִשְׁפָּח	3.	3mp	פֹּעַל (*o*)
2.	1cs	עֶבֶת	4.	2ms	שֹׁרֶשׁ (*o*)

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	2mp	אֵת (direct object)	3.	3fs	בְּ
2.	3mp	אַחַר	4.	3mp	עִם

6. Verbs

1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
   1. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive נגע
   2. Hiph'il Perfect 2ms יצא
   3. Qal Infinitive Construct ירד
   4. Qal Imperfect 1cs +2ms +Vav-Consecutive ידע
   5. Hiph'il Imperative 2ms +1cs ידע
   6. Qal Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive ירד
   7. Qal Participle mp +3fs ישב
   8. Niph'al Imperative 2fp יתר
   9. Hoph'al Perfect 3fs ילד
   10. Qal Perfect 1cs +3ms (O/A) יכל
   11. Qal Infinitive Construct ידע
   12. Hiph'il Imperfect 3mp +2fs יעל
   13. Qal Imperfect 1cs יטב (י)
   14. Hiph'il Perfect 2fs יטב (י)

2. Parse: Give all possible answers

1.	הוֹדַע	8.	יָבֹשׁ
2.	דַּע	9.	דַּעְתְּךָ
3.	רֶדֶת	10.	יוּכְלוּ
4.	וַיִּיטֶב	11.	לְדָתָהּ
5.	תּוֹרְדָנָה	12.	יְלָדָתּוּ
6.	הֵיטַבְנוּ	13.	אַיְסִירֵם
7.	הוֹצֵא	14.	יוֹעַצְתּוֹ

7. Translation

1. וְעַתָּה יהוה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל שְׁמֹר לְעַבְדְּךָ דָוִד אָבִי אֵת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ לוֹ לֵאמֹר לֹא־יִכָּרֵת לְךָ אִישׁ מִלְּפָנַי יֹשֵׁב עַל־כִּסֵּא יִשְׂרָאֵל רַק אִם יִשְׁמְרוּ בָנֶיךָ אֶת־דַּרְכָּם לָלֶכֶת לְפָנַי כַּאֲשֶׁר הָלַכְתָּ לְפָנָי: וְעַתָּה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל יֵאָמֵן נָא דְּבָרְךָ אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ לְעַבְדְּךָ דָּוִד אָבִי:

2. וְנָתַתִּי אֶת־זַרְעֲךָ כַּעֲפַר הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר אִם יוּכַל אִישׁ לִסְפֹּר אֶת עֲפַר הָאָרֶץ גַּם־זַרְעֲךָ יִסָּפֵר:

3. רָאָה פַּרְעֹה כִּי־חָדַל הַמָּטָר וַיֹּסֶף לַחֲטֹא וַיְכַבֵּד לִבּוֹ הוּא וַעֲבָדָיו:
וַיֶּחֱזַק לֵב פַּרְעֹה וְלֹא שִׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה
בְּיַד־מֹשֶׁה:

4. וַיֹּאמֶר נָתָן אֶל־בַּת־שֶׁבַע אֵם שְׁלֹמֹה לֵאמֹר הֲלֹא שָׁמַעַתְּ כִּי מָלַךְ
אֲדֹנִיָּהוּ וַאֲדֹנֵינוּ דָּוִד לֹא יָדָע: וְעַתָּה לְכִי אִיעָצֵךְ נָא עֵצָה וּמַלְטִי
אֶת־נַפְשֵׁךְ וְאֶת־נֶפֶשׁ בִּנֵךְ שְׁלֹמֹה:

CHAPTER 36
R_2-VAV AND YOD (AYIN VAV/YOD) VERBS

36.1. Introduction: There are two "collapsed" verbs: R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs and Geminate Verbs (chapter 38). The Geminate Verbs collapse R_3 into R_2; R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs quiesce the R_2-Vav (Yod), and the verb collapses R_3 and R_1, now united by a thematic vowel. The preformative vowel, usually connected to R_1 (R_3R_2 R_1P_v), is now in an opened syllable with R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs (R_3R_1 P_v). For "collapsed" verbs, the Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el stems are usually replaced by Polel, Polal, and Hithpolel stems.[152]

36.2. Weaknesses or Infirmities of R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs
R_2-Vav (Yod) is very unstable and quiesces (or contracts), "collapsing" the verb.

36.3. Strong Areas of R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs: None[152]

36.4. Remedies for the Infirmities of R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs

1. Hoph'al/Hūph'al: The R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs in the Hoph'al become an R_1-Vav (Yod) verb (*קוֹם > *וקם, 35.4.1.1 uw > ū). Preformative : ה

Perfect 3ms	הוּקַם
Imperfect 3ms	יוּקַם
Participle ms Absolute	מוּקָם

2. Hiph'il I/A/A/I
   1. General observations
      1. Preformative vowels:[153] I (Hireq) – in the Perfect and the Participle; A – in all other conjugations.
      2. Thematic vowel uniting R_1 to R_3: Hireq-Yod (or Sere in the "Sere" forms).
   2. Specific observations
      1. Perfect: Vocalic endings attach directly to R_3; syllabic suffixes (17.3.3.2) unite to R_3 with a connecting Holem-Vav, sometimes written defectively as Holem.

---

[152] Occasionally, a strong Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el form is found. The Polel, Polal and Hithpolel insert Holem between R_1 and R_2 and unite R_2 and R_2 with Patah or Sere. See Appendix.

[153] All preformative vowels lengthen or reduce as necessary. As with the Strong Verbs, the Hiph'il has a preformative ה in the Perfect, Imperative and Infinitive; in the Imperfect and Participle, the ה is supplanted (footnote 120).

Vocalic endings (and 3ms)		Syllabic suffixes[154] (with connecting Holem [-Vav])	
3ms	הֵקִים	1cs	הֲקִימֹתִי
3fs	הֵקִימָה	2fs	הֲקִימֹת
3cp	הֵקִימוּ	2mp	הֲקִימֹתֶם

2. Imperfect: Note the "Sere forms." The Vav-Consecutive third person forms retract the accent (35.5.2), reducing the Sere to Segol in a closed unaccented syllable.

3ms	יָקִים
2fp, 3fp	תָּקֵמְנָה
3ms Jussive	יָקֵם
3ms Vav-Consecutive	וַיָּקֶם

3. Imperative / Infinitive:

Imperative 2ms and Infinitive Absolute	הָקֵם
Imperative 2fs	הָקִימִי
Infinitive Construct	הָקִים

4. Participle: The Participle (analogous to first syllable of the R_1-Yod verb, מֵיטִיב, 35.9.1) has a Hireq preformative.

Participle ms	מֵקִים
fs Absolute	מְקִימָה

3. Niph'al (> Naph'al in the Perfect / Participle) A/I/I/A

1. General observations
   1. Preformative vowel:[155] A – in the Perfect / Participle (Naph'al); I (Hireq) – in all other conjugations.
   2. Thematic vowel uniting R_1 to R_3: Holem-Vav (defectively, Holem)
2. Specific observations
   1. Perfect: Vocalic endings attach directly to R_3; consonantal suffixes unite to R_3 with a connecting Holem (-Vav). The thematic vowel

[154] Other (rare) forms analogous to the Strong Verb for the consonantal suffixes have Patah as the thematic vowel and are without the connecting Holem – הֲקַמְתִּי (1cs).

[155] The Niph'al preformative letters, like the Strong Verb, are נ in the Perfect and Participle; ה in the Imperative and Infinitive. The Imperfect has the אֵיתָן letters.

Holem (-Vav) may dissimilate to Shureq when followed by the connecting Holem (-Vav).

	Vocalic endings (and 3ms)		Syllabic suffixes (with connecting Holem [-Vav])
3ms	נָקוֹם	1cs	נְקוֹמֹתִי
3fs	נָקוֹמָה	2fs	נְקוֹמוֹת
3cp	נָקוֹמוּ	2mp	נְקוֹמֹתֶם

2. Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitive: These forms assimilate the Nun of Niph'al in R_1.
   Imperfect 3ms יָקוֹם
   Imperative 2ms and Infinitive Absolute / Construct הָקוֹם

3. Participle: (Naph'al)
   ms נָקוֹם
   fs Absolute נְקוֹמָה

4. Qal
   1. General observations
      1. Preformative vowels (Imperfect only):[156]
         Standard Verbs: Patah[157]
         Stative Verbs: Patah for A-e/Ū Verbs; Hireq for Ō/Ō Verbs

      2. Thematic vowels:[158]
         Standard Verbs: A-ā/Ū (R_2-Vav) and A-ā/Ī (R_2-Yod)
         Stative Verbs: A-e/Ū and Ō/Ō

   2. Specific observations
      1. Perfect: The smaller case letter of the thematic vowel stands for all third person verbs.

	Standard Verb	Stative Verbs	
	A-ā/	A-e/	Ō/
3ms	קָם	מֵת	בּוֹשׁ
3fs	קָמָה	מֵתָה	בּוֹשָׁה

[156] The preformative vowels will not be supplied for forming the verbs. The אֵיתָן letters are the preformative letters in the Qal.

[157] The Patah, the original preformative vowel of most Standard Verbs (still retained in R_1-Guttural verbs), changed later to Hireq – יִשְׁמֹר (attenuation).

[158] Thematic vowels will be supplied for forming the verbs.

3cp	קָמוּ	מֵתוּ	בּוֹשׁוּ
1cs	קַמְתִּי	מַתִּי[159]	בּוֹשְׁתִּי
2mp	קַמְתֶּם	מַתֶּם[159]	בּוֹשְׁתֶּם

2. Imperfect: The 2fp, 3fp connect R_3 to the suffix with Segol-Yod. The Jussive 3ms has a Holem (R_2-Vav) or Sere (R_2-Yod) thematic vowel. In the Vav-Consecutive (3ms, 3fs), the accent retracts, and the Holem or Sere reduces in a closed unaccented syllable. בּוֹשׁ has Holem throughout the Imperfect.

	Standard Verbs		Stative Verbs	
	/Ū (R_2-Vav)	/Ī (R_2-Yod)	/Ū	/Ō
3ms	יָקוּם	יָשִׂים	יָמוּת	יֵבוֹשׁ
2fp, 3fp	תְּקוּמְנָה	תְּשִׂימְנָה	תְּמוּתְנָה	תֵּבוֹשְׁנָה
Jussive 3ms	יָקָם	יָשֵׂם	יָמָת	יֵבוֹשׁ
Vav-Consecutive 3ms	וַיָּקָם	וַיָּשֶׂם	וַיָּמָת	וַיֵּבוֹשׁ
Vav-Consecutive 3mp	וַיָּקוּמוּ	וַיָּשִׂימוּ	וַיָּמוּתוּ	וַיֵּבוֹשׁוּ

3. Imperative: Form these by removing the preformative. Note the exceptional 2fp.

	Standard Verbs		Stative Verbs	
	/Ū	/Ī	/Ū	/Ō
2ms	קוּם	שִׂים	מוּת	בּוֹשׁ
2fs	קוּמִי	שִׂימִי	מוּתִי	בּוֹשִׁי
2mp	קוּמוּ	שִׂימוּ	מוּתוּ	בּוֹשׁוּ
2fp	קֹמְנָה	-----	-----	בּוֹשְׁנָה

4. Infinitive
   1. Absolute[160]

קוֹם	שׂוֹם	מוֹת	בּוֹשׁ

   2. Construct

קוּם	שִׂים	מוּת	בּוֹשׁ

5. Participle: The masculine singular is identical to the Perfect 3ms

ms	קָם	שָׂם	מֵת	בּוֹשׁ
fs	קָמָה	שָׂמָה	מֵתָה	בּוֹשָׁה

[159] מַתִּי and מַתֶּם are contracted from *מַתְתִּי and *מַתְתֶּם.

[160] The form is may be analogous to the last syllable of the Strong Verb – כָּתוֹב.

36.5. Accent

1. Normally, the thematic vowel uniting R_3 and R_1 takes the accent.
   Qal Perfect 1cs קָמְתִּי
   Qal Perfect 3fs קָמָה
   An exception is the Qal Imperfect 2fp, 3fp when the Segol-Yod takes the accent תְּשׁוּבֶינָה.

2. The Participles accent the end of the word (except with pronominal suffixes).
   Qal ms קָם
   Qal fs קָמָה (contrast with the Qal Perfect 3fs קָמָה)
   Niph'al ms נָקוֹם
   Niph'al fs נְקוֹמָה

3. In the Perfect of the Niph'al and Hiph'il, the connecting Holem (-Vav) takes the accent (except the 2mp, 2fp suffixes, which always take the accent).
   Hiph'il Perfect 1cs הֲקִימֹתִי
   Hiph'il Perfect 2mp הֲקִימֹתֶם

4. Pronominal suffixes shift the accent down the word (27.3.1 and 28.2.2).
   Qal Perfect 3cp +2ms שָׁמְרוּךָ
   Hiph'il Perfect 1cs +3mp הֲבִיאוֹתִים

36.6. The R_2-Vav / R_3-Alef Verb בוא

This standard verb is doubly weak: R_2-Vav / R_3-Alef.

1. Qal: Note the quiesced Alef in all forms except the 3fs, 3cp, 2fp, 3fp (chapter 33).
   1. Perfect 3ms בָּא 1cs בָּאתִי
      3fs בָּאָה 2mp בָּאתֶם
      3cp בָּאוּ
   2. Imperfect 3ms יָבוֹא (defectively יָבֹא)
      2fp תְּבוֹאֶינָה
      Vav-Consecutive 3ms וַיָּבוֹא (The Alef quiesces, and the accent does not retract, footnote 109.)
   3. Imperative 2ms בּוֹא
   4. Infinitive Absolute / Construct בּוֹא

5. Participle ms בָּא
   mp בָּאִים

2. Hiph'il
   1. Perfect: Outside the third persons, two forms exist (36.2.2.1 and footnote 154)
      2ms הֵבֵאתָ Alef quiesced, see footnote 154.
      or
      2ms הֲבִיאֹתָ Alef is alive and well, with connecting Holem (-Vav).
      3ms הֵבִיא
      3fs הֵבִיאָה
      3cp הֵבִיאוּ

   2. Imperfect
      3ms יָבִיא
      Jussive 3ms יָבֵא
      Vav-Consecutive 3ms (Alef quiesced, no retraction of stress) וַיָּבֵא

   3. Imperative
      2ms הָבֵא
      2fs הָבִיאִי

   4. Infinitives
      Absolute הָבֵא
      Construct הָבִיא

   5. Participle
      ms מֵבִיא
      fs Absolute מְבִיאָה

36.7. Forming and Parsing R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs

1. Forming

   Although the boxes are obscured, the preformatives of the boxes are still visible (footnotes 153 and 155). Nevertheless, replace the first step of boxes with "preformative vowel." Retain, of course, the preformative with the "preformative vowel." Replace colors with the "thematic vowel uniting R_1 and R_3." Add a fourth step for the accent and rules of syllables. In forming these verbs, remove the Vav and collapse the form in the first step. A fifth step may be necessary if a Vav-Consecutive is added.

Example: Hiph'il Imperfect 2mp קוּם

1. Preformative vowel with implied boxes: Patah יַקם
2. Thematic vowel uniting R_1 and R_3: Hireq-Yod יַקִים
3. Qal Imperfect 2mp (Strong Verb): תִּשְׁמְרוּ תַּקִימוּ
4. Accent and rules of syllables for the preformative vowel: תָּקִימוּ

   Answer: תָּקִימוּ

   1. Step one: The form is collapsed, and the preformative Patah is placed under an Imperfect preformative.
   2. Step two: The thematic vowel, Hireq-Yod, connects R_1 to R_3.
   3. Step three: The Qal preformative/sufformative is added.
   4. Step four: The accent is established (36.5) and the Patah under the preformative is lengthened to Qames (6.3.2).

2. Parsing: If the usual parsing steps are unsuccessful (29.10-29.13), the form has probably collapsed (R_2-Vav [Yod] or Geminate form).

   Examples:

   תָּקוּם

1.	Preformative vowel: Qames (< Patah)	Niph'al Perfect, Participle, Hiph'il Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitive, Qal Imperfect
2.	Thematic vowel uniting R_1 and R_3: Shureq	Qal Imperfect
3.	Qal: תִּשְׁמֹר	2ms, 3fs
4.	Accent and rules of syllables:	--------

   Answer: Qal Imperfect 2ms, 3fs of קוּם

   1. Step one: The Qames probably reflects an original Patah.
   2. Step two: The thematic vowel uniting R_1 and R_3 eliminates all forms except Qal Imperfect.
   3. Step three: Eliminates all Qal Imperfects except 2ms and 3fs.
   4. Step four: Confirms the answer.

   קָמְתְּ

1.	Preformative vowel: None	--------
2.	Thematic vowel uniting R_3 and R_1: Patah	Qal Perfect
3.	Qal: קָטַלְתְּ	2fs
4.	Accent and rules of syllables:	--------

   Answer: Qal Perfect 2fs of קוּם

   1. Step one: The verb does not have a preformative letter (אֵיתָן letters, or נ, ה, מ).
   2. Step two: The Patah indicates a Qal Perfect (A-ā/ or A-e/).

3. Step three: The Perfect suffix תְּ indicates a 2fs.
4. Step four: Confirms the answer.

R_2-Vav/Yod (Ayin Vav/Yod) Verbs

		Qal 36.4.4.				(Niph'al >) Naph'al 36.4.3.	Hiph'il 36.4.2.		Hoph'al 36.4.1.
Preformative Vowels		A		A or I		A (Perfect, Participle) or I	I (Perfect, Participle) or A		
		Standard		Stative					
Thematic vowels		A-ā/Ū (R_2-Vav)	A-ā/Ī (R_2-Yod)	A-e/Ū	Ō/Ō	O	I (E) Hireq-Yod	Patah	R_2-Vav
Perfect	3ms	קָם	שָׂם	מֵת	בּוֹשׁ	נָקוֹם	הֵקִים		verbs
	3fs	קָמָה	שָׂמָה	מֵתָה	בּוֹשָׁה		הֵקִימָה		become
	3cp	קָמוּ	שָׂמוּ	מֵתוּ	בּוֹשׁוּ		הֵקִימוּ		R_1-Vav
	1cs	קַמְתִּי	שַׂמְתִּי	מַתִּי	בּוֹשְׁתִּי	נְקוֹמֹתִי	הֲקִימֹתִי	הֲקַמְתִּי	verbs
Imperfect	3ms	יָקוּם	יָשִׂים	יָמוּת	יֵבוֹשׁ	יְקוֹם	יָקִים		הוּקַם
Jussive	3ms	יָקָם	יָשֵׂם	יָמֹת	יֵבוֹשׁ		יָקֵם		Perfect 3ms
Vav-Consecutive	3ms	וַיָּקָם	וַיָּשֶׂם	וַיָּמָת	וַיֵּבוֹשׁ		וַיָּקֶם		
Imperative	2ms	קוּם	שִׂים	מוּת	בּוֹשׁ	הְקוֹם	הָקֵם		
Infinitive	Absolute	קוֹם	שׂוֹם	מוֹת	בּוֹשׁ	הָקוֹם	הָקֵם		
	Construct	קוּם	שִׂים	מוּת	בּוֹשׁ	הָקוֹם	הָקִים		
Participle	ms	קָם	שָׂם	מֵת	בּוֹשׁ	נָקוֹם	מֵקִים		
	fs	קָמָה	שָׂמָה	מֵתָה	בּוֹשׁ	נְקוֹמָה	מְקִימָה		

R_2-Vav/Yod (Ayin Vav/Yod) Verbs

בּוֹא

		Qal 36.6.1.				Hiph'il 36.6.2.		
Perfect	3ms	בָּא	1cs	בָּאתִי	3ms	הֵבִיא	1cs: הֲבִיאֹתִי or הֲבֵיאֹתִי	
	3fs	בָּאָה	2mp	בָּאתֶם	3fs	הֵבִיאָה		
	3cp	בָּאוּ			3cp	הֵבִיאוּ		
Imperfect	3ms	יָבֹא				יָבִיא		
Jussive	3ms	יָבֹא				יָבֵא		
Vav-Consecutive	3ms	וַיָּבֹא				וַיָּבֵא		
Imperative	2ms	בּוֹא				הָבֵא		
Infinitive	Absolute	בּוֹא				הָבֵא		
	Construct	בּוֹא				הָבִיא		
Participle	ms	בָּא				מֵבִיא		
	fs	בָּאָה				מְבִיאָה		

EXERCISE THIRTY-SIX

I. Questions

1. What are "collapsed" verbs?
2. How does the R_2-Vav (Yod) Verb "collapse," and what is the result of the collapse? (What is the weakness of the R_2-Vav [Yod] Verb?)
3. What are the strong areas of R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs?
4. How do R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs behave in the Hoph'al/Huph'al?
5. What are "thematic vowels uniting R_1 and R_3" for the Hiph'il, Niph'al, and Qal?
6. What are the "preformative vowels" of the Hiph'il, Niph'al, and Qal?
7. How are vocalic endings attached to the Niph'al and Hiph'il Perfect? How are the syllabic suffixes connected? What additional complication occurs in the Niph'al when syllabic suffixes are attached? What is the other option the Hiph'il has in the Perfect instead of the connecting Holem (-Vav) forms?
8. Discuss the complications of the Qal and Hiph'il 3ms Imperfect Vav-Consecutive forms.
9. The Qal Participles are identical to what other form?
10. How are R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs accented?
11. Discuss the weaknesses of the verb בּוֹא (especially Qal Imperfect 3ms, Imperfect 3ms Vav-Consecutive, Hiph'il Perfect, Imperfect 3ms Vav-Consecutive).
12. Discuss the forming and the parsing of R_2-Vav (Yod) Verbs.

II. Vocabulary

שׁוּב	Qal: turn back, return, go back, come back (with another verb = again: to return and do = to do again) Hiph'il: cause to return, bring back	קוּם	Qal: arise, stand up, stand Hiph'il: cause to rise, arise, cause to stand, erect, raise up
		סוּר	Qal: turn aside, depart Hiph'il: cause to turn aside, depart, remove, take away
מוּת	Qal: die Hiph'il: cause to die, kill Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il	שִׂים	Qal: put, place, set, ordain
		נוּס	Qal: flee Hiph'il: cause to flee
בְּכוֹר	firstborn	חָלָל	slain, pierced, fatally wounded
מאן	Pi"el: refuse, reject	גִּלְבֹּעַ	Gilboa
בְּתוּלָה	virgin	דבק	Qal: cling, stick to, cleave Hiph'il: cause to cling, stick to
נטשׁ	Qal: leave, forsake, permit Niph'al: passive of Qal		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   בְּאָזְנֵי נְטוּיוֹת

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Article

   עָשׁוֹר רִצְפָּה

   Preposition לְ

   קַחַת יְשׁוּעָה

   Interrogative הַ

   עֲלִיז נַחַת

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

1.	ms construct	כֶּסֶל (*i*)	3.	fs construct	מַצֵּבָה
2.	Dual absolute	נְחֹשֶׁת (*u*)	4.	fp absolute	נַעֲרָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

	Singular Nouns			Plural Nouns	
1.	3fs	עֶרְבָּה	3.	2fp	נְגַע (*i*)
2.	2ms	עָוֹן	4.	3ms	מַמְלָכָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate

1.	2ms	לְ	3.	2mp	אֵת (direct object)
2.	2fs	לְמַעַן	4.	1cs	עַל

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Hiph'il Perfect 3ms +1cs מות
      2. Qal Infinitive Absolute מות
      3. Niph'al Imperative 2ms כון
      4. Hiph'il Participle ms נוף

5. Hiph'il Imperative 2ms +1cs +Vav-Conjunctive קום
6. Hiph'il Perfect 1cs בוא
7. Hiph'il Jussive 3ms נוע
8. Qal Perfect 3cp קום (A-ā)
9. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +3ms +Vav-Consecutive מות
10. Qal Imperative 2mp דין
11. Qal Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive סור
12. Hoph'al Imperfect 3ms שית
13. Qal Imperfect 3ms בוש (Ō/Ō)
14. Qal Imperfect 3ms קום (A-ā/Ū)

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. וַהֲקִמֹתוֹ
2. תָּרֹם
3. יְעֹרְרוּ
4. נָפֹוצוּ
5. מַתֵּן
6. בָּאַתְנוּ
7. הֵבֵאתִי
8. מְקִימָה
9. הֲרִימֹתָ
10. נְשׁוּב
11. תְּקוֹמֵינָה
12. הָבֵא
13. קְרוֹאֶיהָ
14. תֵּבוֹשׁ

7. Translation

1. וַיֹּאמֶר יהוה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה בְּמִדְיָן לֵךְ שֻׁב מִצְרָיִם כִּי מֵתוּ כָל־הָאֲנָשִׁים הַמְבַקְשִׁים אֶת־נַפְשֶׁךָ: וַיִּקַּח מֹשֶׁה אֶת־אִשְׁתּוֹ וְאֶת־בָּנָיו וַיַּרְכִּבֵם עַל־הַחֲמֹר וַיָּשָׁב אַרְצָה מִצְרָיִם וַיִּקַּח מֹשֶׁה אֶת־מַטֵּה הָאֱלֹהִים בְּיָדוֹ: וַיֹּאמֶר יהוה אֶל־מֹשֶׁה אֱמֹר אֶל־פַּרְעֹה כֹּה אָמַר יהוה בְּנִי בְכֹרִי יִשְׂרָאֵל: וָאֹמַר אֵלֶיךָ שַׁלַּח אֶת־בְּנִי וְיַעַבְדֵנִי וַתְּמָאֵן לְשַׁלְּחוֹ הִנֵּה אָנֹכִי הֹרֵג אֶת־בִּנְךָ בְּכֹרֶךָ:

2. שִׁמְעוּ אֶת־הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר אָנֹכִי נֹשֵׂא עֲלֵיכֶם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל: נָפְלָה לֹא תוֹסִיף קוּם בְּתוּלַת יִשְׂרָאֵל נִטְּשָׁה עַל־אַדְמָתָהּ אֵין מְקִימָהּ:

3. וְשַׂמְתִּי עֵינִי עֲלֵיהֶם לְטוֹבָה וַהֲשִׁבֹתִים עַל־הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְנָתַתִּי לָהֶם לֵב לָדַעַת אֹתִי וְשָׁבוּ אֵלַי בְּכָל־לִבָּם כִּי אֲנִי יהוה וְהָיוּ־לִי לְעָם:

4. וּפְלִשְׁתִּים נִלְחֲמוּ בְיִשְׂרָאֵל וַיָּנָס אִישׁ־יִשְׂרָאֵל מִפְּנֵי פְלִשְׁתִּים וַיִּפְּלוּ חֲלָלִים בְּהַר גִּלְבֹּעַ וַיִּדְבְּקוּ פְלִשְׁתִּים אַחֲרֵי שָׁאוּל וְאַחֲרֵי בָנָיו:

CHAPTER 37
R_3-VAV AND YOD (LAMED VAV/YOD) VERBS

37.1. Introduction: Traditionally, Grammarians designate R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs as R_3-He or Lamed He Verbs from the Qal Perfect 3ms – גָּלָה. This designation, however, is inaccurate: genuine R_3-He Verbs are R_3-Guttural Verbs ending in a He and Mappiq (תָּמַהּ, גָּבַהּ). Verbs ending with a He (in the Qal Perfect 3ms) without a Mappiq are actually R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs (שָׁלָה > *שָׁלוֹ; עָשָׂה > *עָשׂוֹ or *עָשׂוֹ). There are remnants of the R_3-Vav/Yod, such as שָׁלַוְתִּי and the Qal Passive Participle בָּנוּי. R_3-Vav (Yod) Verbs primarily affect the thematic vowels (colors).

37.2. Weakness or Infirmity of R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs

R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs contract or quiesce, obscuring the thematic vowel.

37.3. Strong Areas of R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs

		Strong	R_3-Vav/Yod
1.	Qal Passive Participle	שָׁמוּר	בָּנוּי
2.	Rare forms	שָׁמַרְתִּי	שָׁלַוְתִּי

37.4. Remedies for the Infirmities of R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs

Remedies for these verbs apply to all the stems: Qal, Niph'al, Pi"el, and so forth. The remedies, therefore, will follow the conjugations: Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles.

1. Perfect

1. All third persons have the following endings:

	Ending	Qal	Pi"el
3ms	ָה	בָּנָה	גִּלָּה
3fs	ָתָה	בָּנְתָה	גִּלְּתָה
3cp	וּ	בָּנוּ	גִּלּוּ

The 3ms and 3cp endings attach directly to R_2; in the 3fs, the original feminine marker ת is retained (compare the original feminine ת in the feminine construct – תּוֹרַת, footnote 66). Occasionally, pausal forms retain the original Yod in the 3cp in pause – נָטָיוּ, חָסָיוּ.

2. All other persons preserve the original Yod, contracted or quiesced as Hireq-Yod or Sere-Yod:[161]

[161] These are general patterns; there are exceptions. Those conjugations with Sere-Yod may take Hireq-Yod; those conjugations with Hireq-Yod may take Sere-Yod.

1. Hireq-Yod in the Qal, Pi"el, Hithpa"el, and Hiph'il
   Qal Perfect 1cs בָּנִיתִי (< *בָּנִיְתִי compare 8.2.2.2)
   Pi"el Perfect 1cs גִּלִּיתִי (< *גִּלִּיְתִי compare 8.2.2.2)

2. Sere-Yod in the Niph'al, Pu"al, and Hoph'al
   Niph'al Perfect 1cs נִגְלֵיתִי (< *נִגְלַיְתִי compare 11.10.1)
   Pu"al Perfect 1cs גֻּלֵּיתִי (< *גֻּלַּיְתִי compare 11.10.1)

2. Imperfect
   1. Non-Endings (18.2.3.3) end in הֶ
      Qal Imperfect 3ms יִבְנֶה
      Niph'al Imperfect 3ms יִגָּלֶה

   2. Vocalic endings (18.2.3.2) attach directly to R_2
      Qal Imperfect 3mp יִפְנוּ
      Hiph'il Imperfect 3mp יַרְבּוּ

   3. Syllabic endings (18.2.3.1) maintain the original Yod by contraction
      Qal Imperfect 2, 3fp *תִּגְלַיְנָה > *תִּגְלֵינָה > תִּגְלֶינָה
      1 2 3
      The original form (1) contracts, ay > ē (2), and the Sere becomes Segol because of the final Qames (3) (12.2.3).[162]

   4. Jussive and Vav-Consecutive forms: these forms remove the ending הֶ, forming a consonantal cluster, which may imitate the Segolate process (15.2) in the Qal and Hiph'il.

      1. Qal

	Imperfect	Jussive	Vav-Consecutive
Qal 3ms	יִגְלֶה	יִגֶל	וַיִּגֶל

      In the Qal Jussive and Vav-Consecutive, four forms are theoretically possible:

Hireq	Sere
יִגֶל	יִגֶל
יִגֶל	יֵגֶל (compare סֵפֶר [*i*])

[162] This Segol spreads to R_3-Alef, R_2-Vav/Yod, and Geminate Verbs – תִּמְצֶאנָה, תְּקוֹמֶינָה, תְּסֻבֶּינָה.

2. Hiph'il

	Imperfect	Jussive	Vav-Consecutive
Hiph'il 3ms	יַגְלֶה	יַגֶל	וַיַּגֶל / וַיַּגֶל

In the Hiph'il Jussive and Vav-Consecutive, two forms are theoretically possible:

Patah	Segol
יַגֶל	יַגֶל (compare מֶלֶךְ [*a*])

3. Other Conjugations[163]

		Imperfect	Jussive	Vav-Consecutive
1.	Niph'al 3ms	יִגָּלֶה	*יִגָּל	וַיִּגָּל
2.	Pi"el 3ms	יְגַלֶּה	יְגַל	וַיְגַל
3.	Pu"al 3ms	יְגֻלֶּה	*יְגֻל	וַיְגֻל
4.	Hithpa"el 3ms	יִתְגַּלֶּה	יִתְגַּל	וַיִּתְגַּל
5.	Hoph'al 3ms	יָגְלֶה	*יָגֶל	וַיָּגֶל

3. Imperatives

1. Non-Endings (18.2.3.3) ends in ה

Qal Imperative 2ms	בְּנֵה
Piel Imperative 2ms	כַּלֵּה

2. Vocalic endings (2fs, 2mp) attach directly to R_2

Qal Imperative 2fs	בְּנִי
Hiph'il Imperative 2fs	הַרְבִּי

3. Syllabic ending (2fp) maintains the original Yod by contraction (37.4.2.3).

Qal Imperative 2fp	בְּנֶינָה
Hiph'il Imperative 2fp	הַגְלֶינָה

4. Infinitives

1. Infinitive Absolute ends:
   1. ה in the Qal, Niph'al, Pi"el, and Pu"al

Qal Infinitive Absolute	בָּנֹה

[163] The asterisked forms are reconstructed. For the Jussive and Vav-Consecutive of the Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el, a hovering Dagesh occurs over R_2 – יְגַל (footnote 25).

2. ה ֵ in the Hiph'il, Hoph'al, and Hithpa"el
   Hiph'il Infinitive Absolute הַגְלֵה

2. Infinitive Construct ends in וֹת :
   Qal Infinitive Construct בְּנוֹת
   Pi"el Infinitive Construct כַּלּוֹת

5. Participles
   1. Active
      1. The Masculine Singular Absolute ends in ה ֵ
         Qal Participle ms בֹּנֶה

      2. The noun endings of the Feminine Singular, Feminine Plural, and Masculine Plural attach directly to R_2.

		Qal	Pi"el
Participle Active	mp	בֹּנִים	מְכַלִּים
	fs	בֹּנָה	מְכַלָּה
	fp	בֹּנוֹת	מְכַלּוֹת

      3. The Feminine Singular T-Form ends in ית ֵ (from יֵת ֵ). The Yod quiesces, and the Segol under R_2 lengthens to Sere (compare the R_3-Alef verb מֹצֵאת).

	R_3-Vav/Yod	R_3-Alef
Qal Participle fs (T-Form)	בֹּנֵית	מֹצֵאת

   2. Passive: the R_3-Yod is consonantal like a Strong Verb

		R_3-Vav/Yod	Strong
Qal Participle Passive	ms	בָּנוּי	שָׁמוּר
	fs	בְּנוּיָה	שְׁמוּרָה
	mp	בְּנוּיִם	שְׁמוּרִים
	fp	בְּנוּיוֹת	שְׁמוּרוֹת

37.5. Attaching Pronominal Suffixes to R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs

1. Perfect
   1. In the 3ms, suffixes attach to R_2:
      Qal Perfect 3ms +3ms גָּלָהוּ

2. Other forms follow the strong pattern of attaching to the pronominal endings.

Qal Perfect 3fs +1cs	גָּלָתְנִי
Qal Perfect 1cs +2ms	גָּלִיתִיךָ
Qal Perfect 3cp +1cs	גָּלוּנִי

2. Imperfect / Imperative: these attach suffixes directly to vocalic endings or to R_2.

Qal Imperfect 3ms +1cs	יִגְלֵנִי
Qal Imperfect 3mp +1cs	יִגְלוּנִי
Qal Imperative 2ms +1cs	גְּלֵנִי
Qal Imperative 2fs +1cs	גְּלִינִי

3. Infinitive Construct

Qal Infinitive Construct +3ms	בְּנוֹתוֹ

4. Participles

Qal Participle Active ms +1cs	גֹּלֵנִי

37.6. Forming and Parsing R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs

For these verbs, the boxes are regular. Replace the colors (and sometimes the Qal) with the endings for the R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs. The Qal preformatives and sufformatives are essentially the same.

1. Hiph'il Perfect 3fs הגלה
   1. Boxes: □□□ה הִגְלָה
   2. Ending תָה הִגְלְתָה
   3. Qal: שָׁמְרָה, but the second step also replaces the Qal

   The boxes are regular, the colors (and the Qal) are replaced with the ending.

   Answer: הִגְלְתָה

2. מְכַלֶּה
   1. Boxes: □⊙□ה Pi"el Participle
   2. Ending: ה Masculine Singular Absolute
   3. Qal: שֹׁמֵר --------

   The boxes and the ending indicate a Pi"el Participle Masculine Singular of כלה

   Answer: Pi"el Participle Masculine Singular Absolute of כלה

37.7. Nouns Derived from R_3-Yod (Vav) Roots

1. שָׂדֶה: The proto-form was שָׂדַי, which contracted to שָׂדֶה in the Absolute and שְׂדֵה in the contstruct. See Appendix ~~Three~~ for this noun with suffixes.

2. פְּרִי: The proto-form was *פַּרְיִ, which became *פַּרִי by adding the secondary vowel (15.2) Hireq. The form followed the Aramaic reduction pattern of reducing short vowels in opened syllables – פְּרִי. In suffixed forms, the original Patah under R_1 becomes Hireq or Segol in closed unaccented syllables, פִּרְיִי. See כְּלִי in Appendix three.

R_3-Vav/Yod (Lamed Vav/Yod) Verbs

Perfect 37.4.1

3's 3ms	הָ	בָּנָה
3fs	תָה	בָּנְתָה
3cp	וּ	בָּנוּ

Other forms preserve Yod: Hireq-Yod Qal, Pi"el, Hithpa"el, Hiph'il; Sere-Yod Niph'al, Pu"al, Hoph'al

Qal 1cs בָּנִיתִי Niph'al 1cs נִגְלֵיתִי

Imperfect 37.4.2.

(1) Without ending הָ : Qal 3ms יִבְנֶה

(2) Vocalic endings directly connect to R_2: Qal 3mp יִבְנוּ

(3) Syllabic ending 2, 3fp הָנָה : Qal 3fp תִּבְנֶינָה

Jussive, Vav-Consecutive forms drop the ending הָ and may have Segolatization

Qal יִגֶל, יִגֶל, יִגֶל, יִגְלְ (סַפֶּר [*i*])

Hiph'il יַגֶל, יַגֶל (מֶלֶךְ [*a*])

Imperative 37.4.3.

(1) 2ms הָ גְלֵה

(2) Vocalic endings 2fs, 2mp connect directly to R_2 בְּנִי, בְּנוּ

(3) Syllabic ending 2fp הָנָה גְלֶינָה

Infinitive Absolute 37.4.4.1.

(1) ה in Qal, Niph'al, Pi"el, Pu"al: Qal בָּנֹה

(2) הָ in Hiph'il, Hoph'al, Hithpa"el: Hiph'il הַגְלֵה

Infinitive Construct 37.4.4.2.

וֹת Qal בְּנוֹת

Participle 37.4.5.

Qal Active	ms	הֶ בֹּנֶה	fs	הָ בֹּנָה	T-Form	בִּנִּית
	mp	ים בֹּנִים	fp	וֹת בֹּנוֹת		
Qal Passive	ms	בָּנוּי	fs	בְּנוּיָה	The Yod is consonantal like a Strong Verb	
	mp	בְּנוּיִם	fp	בְּנוּיוֹת		

EXERCISE THIRTY-SEVEN

I. Questions

1. How are R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs traditionally designated?
2. What part of the verb is affected in R_3-Vav (Yod) Verbs?
3. What is the infirmity of R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs?
4. When are R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs like Strong Verbs?
5. Discuss the endings for the Perfect, Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles.
6. Discuss the possible forms for the Jussive (3ms) and the Vav-Consecutive (3ms) forms (especially in the Qal and Hiph'il). Also describe how these forms are "derived" from the Imperfect 3ms.
7. Discuss how Pronominal suffixes attach to R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs.
8. Describe the forming and the parsing of R_3-Vav/Yod Verbs.

II. Vocabulary

בַּעַד (*a*)	(construct בְּעַד separation) away from, behind, through, about, on behalf of	נֶגֶב (*e*)	south, Negev region
		גור	Qal: sojourn, journey, dwell for a time
חָיָה	Qal: live, have life Pi"el: preserve alive, revive Hiph'il: cause to be alive (preserve alive), revive	כלה	Qal: be complete, come to an end, fail, finish, fulfill Pi"el: make an end of, finish, complete
אֹזֶן (*o*)	ear	פנה	Qal: turn, face Hiph'il: cause to face, turn
רבה	Qal: be or become many, numerous, great	תעה	Qal: wander about, go astray, err Hiph'il: cause to wander, mislead
גלה	Qal: uncover (with אֹזֶן to uncover the ear = to reveal) Niph'al: reflexive and passive of the Qal: uncover oneself Pi"el: uncover, reveal Hiph'il: cause to depart, take into exile	כסה	Pi"el: cover, clothe, conceal, overwhelm Hithpa"el: reflexive of the Pi"el, to cover oneself

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   הָרִאשֹׁנוֹת וַתְּצַוּוּ

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Preposition כ

   אֱלֹהִים אֶסֹף

   Conjunctive ו

   הֵדֹם מַבּוּל

   Preposition מן

   יִצְקָה מִכְמָס

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. mp absolute בָּדָל 2. mp construct קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 3fp	כְּסֶל (*i*)	3. 1cp	סֵפֶר (*i*)
2. 3ms	דָּבָר	4. 2ms	אַדָמָה

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate
   1. 2mp תַּחַת 3. 3fs כ
   2. 3ms אֵל 4. 2fs את (with)

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Pi"el Infinitive Construct +3mp כלה
      2. Pi"el Perfect 3ms +3ms צוה
      3. Hiph'il Jussive 3ms גלה
      4. Niph'al Imperfect 2fp אפה
      5. Qal Imperfect 3ms עלה
      6. Qal Passive Participle ms גלה

7. Niph'al Perfect 3fs קום
8. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms נכה
9. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms עלה
10. Qal Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive עשׂה
11. Qal Perfect 1cs מות (A-e)
12. Niph'al Imperfect 2ms חבא
13. Qal Imperfect 2ms אמר
14. Qal Participle Active ms Absolute נגה

Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. כִּלָּתוּ
2. פְּדוּיֵי
3. רָאָה
4. הֶהָמֵת
5. וַיִּגֶל
6. וַיִּפְתְּ
7. וַיֵּרָא
8. צַוּוּ
9. וַיַּךְ
10. נִשְׁתִּי
11. הֵיטַבְנוּ
12. יֵרֵד
13. וַיָּשֶׁב
14. קָמָה

7. Translation: Genesis 20:1-8

v. 1	קָדֵשׁ	Kedesh
	שׁוּר	Shur
	גְּרָר	Gerar
v. 6	מֵחֲטוֹ	Irregular Infinitive Construct of חטא + מן – from sinning

CHAPTER 38
GEMINATE ($R_2R_3 = R_2R_2$; DOUBLE AYIN) VERBS

38.1. Introduction: Geminate (Twin) Verbs have the same letter for R_2 and R_3: סבב, קלל. Geminate Verbs frequently collapse R_3 into R_2. This collapsing obscures the boxes and shifts the thematic vowel[164] to unite R_2 to R_1. The preformative is now in an opened pretonic (or pro-pretonic) syllable.

38.2. General Weakness or Infirmity of Geminate Verbs

Geminate Verbs tend to collapse R_3 into R_2: סבב > סַבּ.

38.3. Strong Areas of Geminate Verbs

1. Qal Perfect third persons (sometimes)

3ms	סָבַב
3fs	סָבְבָה
3cp	סָבְבוּ

2. Qal Participles

Active ms	סֹבֵב
Passive ms	סָבוּב

3. Qal Infinitives

Absolute	סָבוֹב
Construct	סְבֹב

38.4. General Remedies Applying to all Conjugations

1. When the verb collapses, the thematic vowel shifts and unites R_2 to R_1. The preformative vowel, now in an opened pretonic syllable, lengthens.

*יְסְבַב > *יַסַב > יָסַב

1 2 3

The original form (1) collapses and shifts the thematic vowel between R_2 and R_1 (2), and the original Patah, in an opened pretonic syllable, lengthens to Qames (3).

[164] The Polel, Polal, and Hithpoel replace the Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el (usually), see footnote 152.

2. If the verb collapses and the R_2 ends the word, a hovering Dagesh represents R_3. If R_2 does not end the word, the hovering Dagesh lands.[165]

		Strong	Collapsed
Perfect	3ms	סָבַב	סַבּ
	3cp	סָבְבוּ	סַבּוּ

3. Syllabic suffixes (17.3.3.1; 18.2.3.1) require a connecting vowel (36.4.2.2.1) to unite the suffix to the root.

1. Perfect:	וֹ	Qal Perfect 2ms	סַבּוֹתָ
2. Imperfect/Imperative:	ִי	Qal Imperfect 2, 3fp	תְּסֻבֶּינָה

4. Accent (compare 36.5)
   1. Normally, the shifted thematic vowel uniting R_2 to R_1 takes the accent.

      Qal Perfect 3cp סַבּוּ
      Qal Imperfect 3mp יָסֻבּוּ

   2. Participles accent the end of the word.

      Niph'al Participle fs Absolute נִסָּבָה
      Hiph'il Participle fs Absolute מְסִבָּה

   3. The connecting vowels of consonantal suffixes take the accent (except the 2mp, 2fp suffixes of the Perfect, which always take the accent).

      Qal Perfect 1cs סַבּוֹתִי
      Qal Perfect 2mp סַבּוֹתֶם

   4. Pronominal suffixes shift the accent (usually over R_2).

      Qal Imperfect 3ms +3ms (energic) יְסֻבֶּנּוּ

38.5. Specific Remedies

1. Hoph'al
   1. General observations
      1. Preformative vowel: Ū (the first syllable follows the R_1-Vav [Yod] pattern: *הֻסְבַ > *הֻוסַב > *הוּסַב)
      2. Thematic vowels: A/A

[165] Compare the Geminate noun עַם (עמם) with a 1cs suffix – עַמִּי.

2. Specific observations: The Hoph'al follows the general remedies (38.4): collapsing the original form (1) (and creating a hovering Dagesh at the end of a word) and shifting the thematic vowel to unite R_1 to R_2 (2).

1. Perfect

3ms	*הוּסְבַב (1) > הוּסַבּ (2)
3fs	הוּסַבָּה
2ms	הוּסַבּוֹתָ Connecting Vowel

2. Imperfect

3ms	*יוּסְבַב (1) > יוּסַבּ (2)
3mp	יוּסַבּוּ
2, 3fp	תּוּסַבֶּינָה Connecting Vowel

3. Participle

ms	*מוּסְבָב (1) > מוּסָבּ	
fs	מוּסַבָּה	The Qames reduces to Patah in a closed unaccented syllable.

2. Hiph'il (I/A/A/I)

1. General observations:
   1. Preformative vowel:[166] I (Hireq) – Perfect and Participle; A – Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive.
   2. Thematic vowels: E (reducible to Hireq in closed unaccented syllables)

2. Specific observations: The Hiph'il follows the general remedies (38.4) (except the two alternate forms of the Imperfect: transposed gemination forms and doubly geminated forms). The original form (1) collapses, shifting the Sere thematic vowel and creating a hovering Dagesh (2). The preformative vowel lengthens in opened pretonic position (3) and reduces in the opened pro-pretonic position (4).

1. Perfect

3ms	*הִסְבֵב (1) > *הִסֵבּ (2) > הֵסֵבּ (3)
3fs	הִסַּבָּה
2ms	הִסַּבּוֹתָ (4)

[166] Like the Strong Verb, the Hiph'il has a preformative ה in the Perfect, Imperative, and Infinitive; in the Imperfect and Participle, the ה is supplanted.

2. Imperfect: The Imperfect has three possible forms (theoretically)
   1. Normal Gemination $R_2R_2R_1$: these follow the general remedies (38.4.)

3ms	*יַסְבֵּב (1) > *יַסֵּבּ (2) > יָסֵבּ (3)
3mp	יָסֹבּוּ
2, 3fp	תְּסֻבֶּינָה (4)
Jussive 3ms	יָסֵב
Vav-Consecutive 3ms	וַיָּסֵבּ Accent retracts (35.5.2)
3mp	וַיָּסֹבּוּ

   2. Transposition (Metathesis) of Gemination[167]
   $R_2R_2R_1 > R_2R_1R_1$: these do not follow the general remedies (38.4).

3ms	*יַסְבֵּב > *יַסֵּסב > יַסֵּב
3mp	יַסֹּבוּ
Vav-Consecutive 3ms	וַיָּסֵב

   3. Double gemination $R_2R_2R_1 > R_2R_2R_1R_1$:

3mp	יַסֹּבּוּ
Vav-Consecutive 3mp	וַיָּסֹבּוּ

3. Imperative: Derive the Imperatives from the Imperfects (Normal Gemination).

2ms	*הַסְבֵּב > *הַסֵּבּ > הָסֵבּ
2fs	הָסֹבִּי
2mp	הָסֹבּוּ
2fp	הָסֻבֶּינָה

4. Infinitive Absolute and Construct – *הַסְבֵּב > *הַסֵּב > הָסֵב

5. Participle: This form is analogous to R_1-Yod (original Yod) Verbs in the first syllable מֵ.

	Geminate	R_1-Yod (Yod)
ms	מֵסֵב	מֵיטִיב[168]
fs	מְסֻבָּה	

[167] This is the usual pattern of Aramaic.

[168] Also compare the R_2-Vav/Yod Hiph'il Participle – מֵקִים.

3. Niph'al (< Naph'al) (A/I/I/A) - N/-

1. General observations[169]

1. Preformative vowel: A – in the Perfect and Participle (Naph'al); I (Hireq) – in the Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive.
2. Thematic vowels: A/A

2. Specific observations: The Niph'al follows the general remedies (38.4). The original forms (1) collapse, creating a hovering Dagesh and shifting the thematic vowel (2). The preformative vowel (Patah) lengthens (3) or reduces (4) as necessary.

1. Perfect and Participle

Perfect	3ms	*נַסְבַב (1) > *נַסַּבּ (2) > נָסַבּ (3)
	3fs	נָסַבָּה
	2ms	נָסַבּוֹתָ (4)
Participle	ms	*נַסְבָב (1) > *נַסָּבּ (2) > נָסָבּ (3)
	mp	נְסַבִּים (4)

2. Imperfect, Imperative, and Infinitive

1. Imperfect	3ms	*יִנְסַבַּב (1) > *יִסַּבַּב (2) > יְסַבּ
	3mp	יְסַבּוּ
	2, 3fp	תְּסַבֶּינָה
Vav-Consecutive	3ms	וַיְסַבּ
2. Imperative	2ms	*הִנְסַבַּב (1) > *הִסַּבַּב (2) > הִסַּבּ
	2fs	הִסַּבִּי
3. Infinitive	Absolute	*הִנְסַבּוֹב (1) > *הִסַּבּוֹב (2) > הִסּוֹב
	Construct	*הִנְסַבֵּב (1) > *הִסַּבֵּב (2) > הִסֵּבּ

4. Qal

1. General observations

1. Preformative vowels (Imperfect only): A – with Standard Verbs; I – with Stative Verbs, Transposed Geminated forms, and Doubly Geminated forms.

[169] There are exceptions to these general observations: חלל (pollute, defile) is Niph'al, not a Naph'al, נְחַל (Perfect 3ms), and the thematic vowels are A/A or A/E. Like the Strong Verb, the preformative is נ for the Perfect and Participle, ה for the Imperative, Infinitive, and an אֵיתָן letter for the Imperfect.

2. Thematic vowels: A/O with Standard Verbs, A/A with Stative Verbs.

2. Specific observations: The Qal follows the Hiph'il (38.5.2.2).

1. Perfect: The third person verbs *may* be strong or collapsed; all other persons collapse.

	Strong	Collapsed	Collapsed (Stative)
3ms	סָבַב	סַבּ	קַל
3fs	סָבְבָה	סַבָּה	קַלָּה
3cp	סָבְבוּ	סַבּוּ	קַלּוּ

All other persons collapse:

1cs	סַבּוֹתִי	קַלּוֹתִי
2ms	סַבּוֹתָ	קַלּוֹתָ
2mp	סַבּוֹתֶם	קַלּוֹתֶם

2. Imperfect

1. Normal Gemination: these follow the general remedies (38.4). Note the Patah and Hireq preformative vowels.

	Standard (A/Ō)	Stative (A/A)
3ms	*יַסְבַּב > יָסַבּ	יֵקַל
3mp	יָסֹבּוּ	יֵקַלּוּ
2, 3fp	תָּסֹבֶּינָה	תֵּקַלֶּינָה
Jussive 3ms	יְסַב	יֵקַל
Vav-Consecutive 3ms	וַיָּסָב[170] (35.5.2)	וַיֵּקַל
Vav-Consecutive 3mp	וַיָּסֹבּוּ	וַיֵּקַלּוּ

2. Transposition (Metathesis) of Gemination: $R_2R_2R_1 > R_2R_1R_1$: these do not follow the general remedies, see footnote 167. Note the Hireq preformative vowel.

3ms	*יְסְבַּב > *יְסַסַּב > יְסַב
3mp	יְסַבּוּ
2, 3fp	תְּסַבֶּנָה
Jussive 3ms	יְסַב
Vav-Consecutive 3ms	וַיְסַב

[170] Note the Qames-Hatuf in the closed unaccented syllable.

3. Imperative: Remove the preformative element of normal geminated forms.

2ms	(יְסֹבֵּ) > סֹבֵּ
2fs	סֹבִּי
2mp	סֹבּוּ
2fp	סֹבֵּינָה

4. Participles and Infinitive are like Strong Verbs (38.3.2).

38.6. Final Considerations

1. Transposed Gemination is possible in the Qal, Niph'al, Hiph'il, and Hoph'al.
2. Geminate Verbs have many "mixed" forms with R_2-Vav/Yod Verbs: Niph'al Imperfect 2mp תִּבָּזּוּ (בזז). The Holem is from the R_2-Vav/Yod Verbs (see 36.4.3.1.1).

38.7. Forming and Parsing Geminate Verbs (compare 36.7)

1. Forming: Because "collapsed" verbs obscure the boxes, replace the boxes with "preformative vowel." Replace colors with "thematic vowel." The Qal remains the same, but add a fourth step for other general remedies (38.4). Assume the collapse of the verb and the hovering Dagesh (unless the form is strong [38.3]) at the first step. Examples:
   1. Hiph'il Cohortative sg. סבב
      1. Preformative vowel: Patah יַסֵּבּ
      2. Thematic vowel: Sere יַסֵּבּ
      3. Qal: אֶקְטֶלָה אַסֵּבָּה
      4. Other remedies: Accent and rules of syllables (38.4.4; 6.3.2) אָסֵּבָּה

      Answer: אָסֵּבָּה
      1. Step one: Put the Preformative vowel Patah (38.5.2.1.1) under an Imperfect preformative.
      2. Step two: Unite R_2 and R_1 with a Sere thematic vowel (38.5.2.1.2).
      3. Step three: Add the Qal preformatives and sufformatives. The hovering Dagesh lands because ה ָ ends the word.
      4. Step four: Establish the accent (38.4.4.1) and lengthen the Patah preformative vowel in the pretonic opened position to Qames (6.3.2).

2. Qal Perfect 2ms סבב
    1. Preformative vowel: None סַבּ
    2. Thematic vowel: A סַבַּ
    3. Qal: קָטַלְתָּ סַבְתָּ
    4. Other general remedies: Connecting vowel (38.4.3.), accent, and rules of syllables סַבֹּתָ

    Answer: סַבֹּתָ
    1. Step one: There is no preformative in the Qal Perfect.
    2. Step two: Standard Verbs are A/Ō.
    3. Step three: Add the Qal suffix תָ and land the Hovering Dagesh.
    4. Step four: Add the Holem to connect the Geminate Verb with the consonantal suffix. Establish the accent (38.4.4.3), and leave the Patah under R_1 unchanged in a closed unaccented syllable (6.3.3).

2. Parsing: If the usual parsing method is unsuccessful 29.10-29.13, the form has probably collapsed: R_2-Vav (Yod) or Geminate Verb.
Example: נְסַבִּים
    1. Preformative vowel: obscured, but the preformative is נ — Niph'al Perfect, Participle, Qal Imperfect, Hiph'il Imperfect
    2. Thematic vowel: Patah — Eliminate Hiph'il
    3. Qal: The ending יִם is a Participle ending – קְטָלִים — Eliminates all forms except Niph'al Participle mp Absolute
    4. Other general remedies: The accent at the end of the word also indicates a Participle (38.4.4.2).

    Answer: Niph'al Participle mp Absolute of סבב
    1. Step one: The preformative vowel is reduced, but the preformative נ furnishes the options.
    2. Step two: The Patah eliminates the Hiph'il option because the Hiph'il would have a Sere.
    3. Step three: The Participle ending יִם indicates the Niph'al Participle mp Absolute.
    4. Step four: The accent at the end of word confirms the answer.

R_2R_3=R_2R_2 GEMINATE (AYIN-AYIN: DOUBLE AYIN) VERBS

	Qal 38.5.4.		**Niph'al** 38.5.3.	**Hiph'il** 38.5.2.	**Hoph'al** 38.5.1.
Preformative vowels		A (Standard)	E (Stative)	A – Perfect, Participle; I – Imperfect, Imperative, Infinitive	Ī - Perfect, Participle; A - Imperfect, Infinitive, Imperative	Ū
Thematic vowels		A/Ō	A/A	A/A	E	A/A
Perfect	Third persons	Strong	Collapsed	Stative	Niph'al > Naph'al A/A		R_1-Vav in the first syllable הוֹסַב
	3ms	סָבַב	סַב	קַל			
	3fs	סָבְבָה	סַבָּה	קַלָּה			
	3cp	סָבְבוּ	סַבּוּ	קַלּוּ			
	1cs		סַבּוֹתִי	קַלּוֹתִי			
Imperfect	Two Imperfect Forms (Theoretically) 1. Normal Gemination יָסֹבּ יָסֹבּוּ 2. Transposed Gemination יִסַּב				Three Imperfect Forms (Theoretically) 1. Normal Gemination יָסֵבּ יָסֵבּוּ 2. Transposed Gemination יַסֵּב 3. Doubled Gemination יַסֵּבּוּ		
Imperative	ms סֹבּ	mp סֹבּוּ					
	fs סֹבִּי	fp סֹבֶּינָה					
Infinitive Absolute	(strong) סָבוֹב						
Infinitive Construct	סֹב (or strong סְבֹב)						
Participle	(strong) סֹבֵב			נָסָב נִסָּבָה	ms מֵסֵב (R_1-Yod analogy) fs מְסֻבָּה		

GENERAL NOTES:

1. Transposed gemination is possible in all stems (38.6.1).
2. There are numerous analogies to R_2-Vav/Yod verbs (38.6.2).
3. The Pi"el, Pu"al, and Hithpa"el are rare and like strong verbs (see footnote 164 and 152).

EXERCISE THIRTY-EIGHT

I. Questions

1. Describe a Geminate Verb.
2. How does the Geminate Verb collapse? How does this affect a preformative?
3. What is the general weakness of the Geminate Verb?
4. Where are the strong areas of the Geminate Verbs?
5. What are the four general remedies of the Geminate Verb?
6. What are the preformative vowels of the Qal (Imperfect), Niph'al, Hiph'il and Hoph'al? What are the thematic vowels for the same stems?
7. What Weak Verb is analogous to the first syllable of the Hoph'al?
8. Discuss the various Imperfect options of the Hiph'il and Qal.
9. How are the Imperatives formed in the Qal?
10. Geminate Verbs are sometimes "mixed" with which Weak Verb?
11. Describe the forming and the parsing of Geminate Verbs. How does it differ from other Weak Verbs? Which Weak Verbs are like the Geminate Verbs in forming and parsing?

II. Vocabulary

רַק	only, surely	שָׁמַם	Qal: be desolated, be appalled, awestruck
עִמָּד	a longer form of עִם		Niph'al: be desolated, be appalled
שִׁפְחָה	female slave		Hiph'il: devastate, destroy
אֶלֶף (*a*)	thousand, tribe(?), clan(?)	חָנַן	Qal: favor, be gracious to
אָמָה	(with 1cs suffix אֲמָתִי) female slave, handmaid		Niph'al: be pitied
אָרַר	Qal: curse		Hithpa"el: seek favor
שָׁדַד	Qal: destroy, slay, devastate	חָתַת	Qal: be shattered, broken, be dismayed
	Pi"el: destroy, assault		Hiph'il: shatter, terrify
	Pu"al: be destroyed	פָּרַר	Hiph'il: break, frustrate, make ineffective
תָּמַם	(Stative) Qal: be completed, finished, come to an end, cease		Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il
	Hiph'il: finish, complete, perfect	רָעַע	(Stative) Qal: be evil, bad, be displeasing
רָנַן	Qal: give a ringing cry		Hiph'il: do evil, hurt, injure
	Pi"el: same as Qal		
	Hiph'il: same as Qal; cause a cry, give a ringing cry		

III. Drills

1. Word Breakdown: In the following order: label every Dagesh Forte and Lene, Mappiq; vocal and silent shewa; Qames and Qames-Hatuf. Next divide syllables, labeling them opened or closed. Then pronounce the words.

   וְהִשְׁבַּתִּי הַנָּכְרִיּוֹת

2. Attach the following and translate all vocabulary words
   Preposition כ

   יְלוֹד הָאֲדָמָה

   Interrogative מה

   אָרַ֫בְתִּי נָקִי

   Interrogative ה

   אָרַ֫בְתִּי הֶ֫רֶךְ

3. Attach the Boxes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps
   1. ms construct נַ֫עַר (*a*) 2. fs construct אֲדָמָה

4. Attach the Boxes with suffixes and translate all vocabulary words – list all steps

Singular Nouns		Plural Nouns	
1. 2fp עֶ֫בֶד (*a*)		3. 2ms לַ֫הַב (*a*)	
2. 1cs עֵדָה		4. 1cp פְּקֻדָּה	

5. Attach the suffixes to the prepositions and translate
   1. 3fs מִן 3. 2fp אֵת (with)
   2. 3fs כְּ 4. 1cs אֶל

6. Verbs
   1. Create: Give the steps and the final answer
      1. Qal Imperfect 2ms (A/O) סבב
      2. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive נוח
      3. Hiph'il Perfect 3fs חלל
      4. Hiph'il Jussive 3ms שׁוב
      5. Qal Imperfect 2ms +Vav-Consecutive (A/O) סבב

6. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +3mp +Vav-Consecutive שׁמם
7. Qal Imperative 2mp (A/O) בזז
8. Qal Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive (A/O) מדד
9. Hiph'il Imperfect 3ms +Vav-Consecutive פרר
10. Hoph'al Imperfect 2fp סבב
11. Qal Participle Active fs (T-form) גלה
12. Qal Imperfect 3ms +1cs (A/O) חנן
13. Hiph'il Participle ms Absolute חלל
14. Niph'al Imperative 2ms סבב

2. Parse: Give all possible answers – list all steps

1. סַבֻּונִי
2. אַחֵל
3. יְקַלְּלוּ
4. הֲקִלּוֹתַנִי
5. יְפֻרְנוּ
6. תְּחָנֵּם
7. תְּחֹגּוּ
8. נָסָב
9. יְחַתּוּ
10. יְשָׁלֵּוךְ
11. יֹאפֶה
12. הַטֵּה
13. מוֹת
14. יָשֹׁב

7. Translation: Genesis 20:9-18

v. 9	מַעֲשִׂים	deeds, works
v. 13	הִתְעוּ	read as הִתְעָה

APPENDIXES

PHONOLOGICAL CHART OF HEBREW CONSONANTS (MODERN HEBREW PRONUNCIATION)

	Plosive Voiceless	Plosive Voiced	Spirantic Voiceless	Spirantic Voiced	Soundless
Labials	פ	ב, (מ)	ו, ב	פ	
Dentals	ת, ט	ד, ד			
Palatals	כ, ק	י, נ, ג		כ	
Gutturals			ה	ח, (כ)	א, ע
Sibilants			ס, צ, שׁ, ש	ז	

Plosive: A sound produced by the complete stoppage and sudden release of breath. Also called "stops."

Spirantic: A sound produced by the passing by breath through the partially closed oral cavity.

Voiceless: A sound produced without the vibration (or with very little vibration) of the vocal cords.

Voiced: Sound produced by vibrating the vocal cords.

Labials: Sound formed mainly with the lips.

Dentals: Sounds formed with the tongue against or near the upper front teeth.

Palatals: Sounds formed with the middle of the tongue raised against or near the hard palate.

Gutturals: Sounds formed deep in the throat with the back of the tongue raised against or near the soft palate.

Sibilants: Hissing or "s" sounds.

The latteral ל, and the ר are semi-plosive, voiced sounds.

The nasal sounds נ and מ are voiced sounds formed by the passage of breath through the nose. The מ is also a labial.

REGULAR NOUNS WITH SUFFIXES

Singular Absolute		סוּס	דָּבָר	תּוֹרָה	צְדָקָה
		(horse)	(word)	(law)	(righteousness)
Singular Construct		סוּס־	דְּבַר־	תּוֹרַת־	צִדְקַת־
Suffix	1cs	סוּסִי	דְּבָרִי	תּוֹרָתִי	צִדְקָתִי
	2ms	סוּסְךָ	דְּבָרְךָ	תּוֹרָתְךָ	צִדְקָתְךָ
	2fs	סוּסֵךְ	דְּבָרֵךְ	תּוֹרָתֵךְ	צִדְקָתֵךְ
	3ms	סוּסוֹ	דְּבָרוֹ	תּוֹרָתוֹ	צִדְקָתוֹ
	3fs	סוּסָהּ	דְּבָרָהּ	תּוֹרָתָהּ	צִדְקָתָהּ
	1cp	סוּסֵנוּ	דְּבָרֵנוּ	תּוֹרָתֵנוּ	צִדְקָתֵנוּ
	2mp	סוּסְכֶם	דְּבַרְכֶם	תּוֹרַתְכֶם	צִדְקַתְכֶם
	2fp	סוּסְכֶן	דְּבַרְכֶן	תּוֹרַתְכֶן	צִדְקַתְכֶן
	3mp	סוּסָם	דְּבָרָם	תּוֹרָתָם	צִדְקָתָם
	3fp	סוּסָן	דְּבָרָן	תּוֹרָתָן	צִדְקָתָן
Plural Absolute		סוּסִים	דְּבָרִים	תּוֹרוֹת	צִדְקוֹת
Plural Construct		סוּסֵי־	דִּבְרֵי־	תּוֹרוֹת־	צִדְקוֹת־
	1cs	סוּסַי	דְּבָרַי	תּוֹרוֹתַי	צִדְקוֹתַי
	2ms	סוּסֶיךָ	דְּבָרֶיךָ	תּוֹרוֹתֶיךָ	צִדְקוֹתֶיךָ
	2fs	סוּסַיִךְ	דְּבָרַיִךְ	תּוֹרוֹתַיִךְ	צִדְקוֹתַיִךְ
	3ms	סוּסָיו	דְּבָרָיו	תּוֹרוֹתָיו	צִדְקוֹתָיו
	3fs	סוּסֶיהָ	דְּבָרֶיהָ	תּוֹרוֹתֶיהָ	צִדְקוֹתֶיהָ
	1cp	סוּסֵינוּ	דְּבָרֵינוּ	תּוֹרוֹתֵינוּ	צִדְקוֹתֵינוּ
	2mp	סוּסֵיכֶם	דִּבְרֵיכֶם	תּוֹרוֹתֵיכֶם	צִדְקוֹתֵיכֶם
	2fp	סוּסֵיכֶן	דִּבְרֵיכֶן	תּוֹרוֹתֵיכֶן	צִדְקוֹתֵיכֶן
	3mp	סוּסֵיהֶם	דִּבְרֵיהֶם	תּוֹרוֹתֵיהֶם	צִדְקוֹתֵיהֶם
	3fp	סוּסֵיהֶן	דִּבְרֵיהֶן	תּוֹרוֹתֵיהֶן	צִדְקוֹתֵיהֶן

פֹּעַל	נֶצַח	נַעַר	קֹדֶשׁ	סֵפֶר	מֶלֶךְ
(work)	(perpetuity)	(lad)	(holiness)	(book)	(king)
פָּעַל*	נִצַּח*	נַעַר*	קָדֶשׁ*	סִפֶּר*	מַלְכִּ*
פָּעַלִי	נִצַּחִי	נַעֲרִי	קָדְשִׁי	סִפְרִי	מַלְכִּי
פָּעַלְךָ	נִצַּחֲךָ	נַעַרְךָ	קָדְשְׁךָ	סִפְרְךָ	מַלְכְּךָ
פָּעַלֵךְ	נִצַּחֵךְ	נַעֲרֵךְ	קָדְשֵׁךְ	סִפְרֵךְ	מַלְכֵּךְ
פָּעַלוֹ	נִצַּחוֹ	נַעֲרוֹ	קָדְשׁוֹ	סִפְרוֹ	מַלְכּוֹ
פָּעֲלָהּ	נִצַּחָהּ	נַעֲרָהּ	קָדְשָׁהּ	סִפְרָהּ	מַלְכָּהּ
פָּעַלֵנוּ	נִצַּחֵנוּ	נַעֲרֵנוּ	קָדְשֵׁנוּ	סִפְרֵנוּ	מַלְכֵּנוּ
פָּעַלְכֶם	נִצַּחְכֶם	נַעַרְכֶם	קָדְשְׁכֶם	סִפְרְכֶם	מַלְכְּכֶם
פָּעַלְכֶן	נִצַּחְכֶן	נַעַרְכֶן	קָדְשְׁכֶן	סִפְרְכֶן	מַלְכְּכֶן
פָּעֲלָם	נִצָּחָם	נַעֲרָם	קָדְשָׁם	סִפְרָם	מַלְכָּם
פָּעֲלָן	נִצָּחָן	נַעֲרָן	קָדְשָׁן	סִפְרָן	מַלְכָּן
פְּעָלִים	נְצָחִים	נְעָרִים	קָדָשִׁים	סְפָרִים	מְלָכִים
פְּעָלֵי־	נִצְחֵי־	נַעֲרֵי־	קָדְשֵׁי־	סִפְרֵי־	מַלְכֵי־
פְּעָלַי	נְצָחַי	נְעָרַי	קָדָשַׁי	סְפָרַי	מְלָכַי
פְּעָלֶיךָ	נְצָחֶיךָ	נְעָרֶיךָ	קָדָשֶׁיךָ	סְפָרֶיךָ	מְלָכֶיךָ
פְּעָלַיִךְ	נְצָחַיִךְ	נְעָרַיִךְ	קָדָשַׁיִךְ	סְפָרַיִךְ	מְלָכַיִךְ
פְּעָלָיו	נְצָחָיו	נְעָרָיו	קָדָשָׁיו	סְפָרָיו	מְלָכָיו
פְּעָלֶיהָ	נְצָחֶיהָ	נְעָרֶיהָ	קָדָשֶׁיהָ	סְפָרֶיהָ	מְלָכֶיהָ
פְּעָלֵינוּ	נְצָחֵינוּ	נְעָרֵינוּ	קָדָשֵׁינוּ	סְפָרֵינוּ	מְלָכֵינוּ
פְּעָלֵיכֶם	נְצָחֵיכֶם	נַעֲרֵיכֶם	קָדְשֵׁיכֶם	סִפְרֵיכֶם	מַלְכֵיכֶם
פְּעָלֵיכֶן	נְצָחֵיכֶן	נַעֲרֵיכֶן	קָדְשֵׁיכֶן	סִפְרֵיכֶן	מַלְכֵיכֶן
פְּעָלֵיהֶם	נְצָחֵיהֶם	נַעֲרֵיהֶם	קָדְשֵׁיהֶם	סִפְרֵיהֶם	מַלְכֵיהֶם
פְּעָלֵיהֶן	נְצָחֵיהֶן	נַעֲרֵיהֶן	קָדְשֵׁיהֶן	סִפְרֵיהֶן	מַלְכֵיהֶן

IRREGULAR NOUNS WITH SUFFIXES

Singular Absolute		אָב (father)	אָח (brother)	אָחוֹת (sister)	בֵּן (son)
Singular Construct		אֲבִי־	אֲחִי־	אֲחוֹת־	בֶּן־
Suffix	1cs	אָבִי	אָחִי	אֲחוֹתִי	בְּנִי
	2ms	אָבִיךָ	אָחִיךָ	אֲחוֹתְךָ	בִּנְךָ
	2fs	אָבִיךְ	אָחִיךְ	אֲחוֹתֵךְ	בִּנֵךְ
	3ms	אָבִיו	אָחִיו	אֲחוֹתוֹ	בְּנוֹ
	3fs	אָבִיהָ	אָחִיהָ	אֲחוֹתָהּ	בִּנָּהּ
	1cp	אָבִינוּ	אָחִינוּ	אֲחוֹתֵנוּ	בְּנֵנוּ
	2mp	אֲבִיכֶם	אֲחִיכֶם	אֲחוֹתְכֶם	
	2fp	אֲבִיכֶן			
	3mp	אֲבִיהֶם	אֲחִיהֶם	אֲחוֹתָם	
	3fp	אֲבִיהֶן			
Plural Absolute		אָבוֹת	אַחִים		בָּנִים
Plural Construct		אֲבוֹת־	אֲחֵי־		בְּנֵי־
	1cs	אֲבֹתַי	אַחַי	אַחְיוֹתַי	בָּנַי
	2ms	אֲבֹתֶיךָ	אַחֶיךָ		בָּנֶיךָ
	2fs		אַחַיִךְ	אֲחוֹתַיִךְ	בָּנַיִךְ
	3ms	אֲבֹתָיו	אֶחָיו	אַחְיוֹתָיו	בָּנָיו
	3fs		אַחֶיהָ		בָּנֶיהָ
	1cp	אֲבֹתֵינוּ	אַחֵינוּ		בָּנֵינוּ
	2mp	אֲבֹתֵיכֶם	אַחֵיכֶם	אֲחוֹתֵיכֶם	בְּנֵיכֶם
	2fp				
	3mp	אֲבֹתָם	אַחֵיהֶם	אַחְיוֹתֵיהֶם	בְּנֵיהֶם
	3fp				בְּנֵיהֶן

Singular Absolute		בַּת	בַּיִת	יוֹם	מַיִם
		(daughter)	(house)	(day)	(water)
Singular Construct		בַּת־	בֵּית־	יוֹם־	מֵי־
Suffix	1cs	בִּתִּי	בֵּיתִי		
	2ms	בִּתְּךָ	בֵּיתְךָ		
	2fs		בֵּיתֵךְ		
	3ms	בִּתּוֹ	בֵּיתוֹ	יוֹמוֹ	
	3fs	בִּתָּהּ	בֵּיתָהּ		
	1cp				
	2mp		בֵּיתְכֶם		
	2fp				
	3mp		בֵּיתָם	יוֹמָם	
	3fp				
Plural Absolute		בָּנוֹת	בָּתִּים	יָמִים	מַיִם
Plural Construct		בְּנוֹת־	בָּתֵּי־	יְמֵי־	מֵי־ (מֵימֵי־)
	1cs	בְּנֹתַי		יָמַי	מֵימַי
	2ms	בְּנֹתֶיךָ	בָּתֶּיךָ	יָמֶיךָ	מֵימֶיךָ
	2fs	בְּנֹתַיִךְ	בָּתַּיִךְ	יָמַיִךְ	
	3ms	בְּנֹתָיו		יָמָיו	מֵימָיו
	3fs	בְּנֹתֶיהָ		יָמֶיהָ	מֵימֶיהָ
	1cp	בְּנֹתֵינוּ	בָּתֵּינוּ	יָמֵינוּ	מֵימֵינוּ
	2mp	בְּנֹתֵיכֶם	בָּתֵּיכֶם	יְמֵיכֶם	
	2fp				
	3mp	בְּנֹתֵיהֶם	בָּתֵּיהֶם	יְמֵיהֶם	מֵימֵיהֶם
	3fp				

Singular Absolute		שֵׁם	פֶּה	(כֶּלִי) כְּלִי	שָׂדֶה
		(name)	(mouth)	(vessel)	(field)
Singular Construct		שֵׁם־, שֶׁם־	פִּי־	כְּלִי־	שְׂדֵה
Suffix	1cs	שְׁמִי	פִּי		שָׂדִי
	2ms	שִׁמְךָ	פִּיךָ	כֶּלְיְךָ	שָׂדְךָ/שָׂדֶךָ
	2fs	שִׁמֵךְ			
	3ms	שְׁמוֹ	פִּיו (פִּיהוּ)		שָׂדֵהוּ
	3fs	שְׁמָהּ	פִּיהָ		שָׂדָהּ
	1cp	שְׁמֵנוּ	פִּינוּ		
	2mp	שִׁמְכֶם	פִּיכֶם		
	2fp				
	3mp	שָׁמָם	פִּיהֶם		
	3fp				
Plural Absolute		שֵׁמוֹת	(פִּיוֹת)	כֵּלִים	
Plural Construct		שְׁמוֹת־		כְּלֵי־	
	1cs			כֵּלַי	
	2ms			כֵּלֶיךָ	שָׂדֶיךָ
	2fs				
	3ms			כֵּלָיו	
	3fs			כֵּלֶיהָ	שְׂדֹתֶיהָ
	1cp			כֵּלֵינוּ	שָׂדֵינוּ/שְׂדֹתֵינוּ
	2mp			כְּלֵיכֶם	שְׂדוֹתֵיכֶם
	2fp				
	3mp	שְׁמוֹתָם		כְּלֵיהֶם	שְׂדֹתֵיהֶם/שְׂדֹתָם
	3fp	שְׁמוֹתָן			

PREPOSITIONS WITH SUFFIXES

	אֵת	(עִמּם) עִם	לְ
	(direct object marker)	(with)	(for, to)
1cs	אֹתִי	עִמִּי	לִי
2ms	אֹתְךָ	עִמְּךָ	לְךָ
2fs	אֹתָךְ	עִמָּךְ	לָךְ
3ms	אֹתוֹ	עִמּוֹ	לוֹ
3fs	אֹתָהּ	עִמָּהּ	לָהּ
1cp	אֹתָנוּ	עִמָּנוּ	לָנוּ
2mp	אֶתְכֶם	עִמָּכֶם	לָכֶם
2fp	אֶתְכֶן	עִמָּכֶן	לָכֶן
3mp	אֹתָם/אֶתְהֶם	עִמָּם/עִמָּהֶם	לָהֶם
3fp	אֹתָן/אֶתְהֶן	עִמָּהֶן	לָהֶן

	כְּ	(אתת) אֶת	בְּ
	(like, as, according to)	(with)	(in, with)
1cs	כָּמוֹנִי	אִתִּי	בִּי
2ms	כָּמוֹךָ	אִתְּךָ	בְּךָ
2fs	כָּמוֹךְ	אִתָּךְ	בָּךְ
3ms	כָּמוֹהוּ	אִתּוֹ	בּוֹ
3fs	כָּמוֹהָ	אִתָּהּ	בָּהּ
1cp	כָּמוֹנוּ	אִתָּנוּ	בָּנוּ
2mp	כָּכֶם	אִתְּכֶם	בָּכֶם
2fp	כָּכֶן	אִתְּכֶן	בָּכֶן
3mp	כְּמוֹהֶם	אִתָּהֶם	בָּם/בָּהֶם
3fp	כְּמוֹהֶן	אִתָּהֶן	בָּהֶן

	Singular Suffixes		Plural Suffixes	
	מִן	אֶל	לִפְנֵי	אחר
	(from)	(to, unto)	(to the face of)	(after)
1cs	מִמֶּנִּי	אֵלַי	לְפָנַי	אַחֲרַי
2ms	מִמְּךָ	אֵלֶיךָ	לְפָנֶיךָ	אַחֲרֶיךָ
2fs	מִמֵּךְ	אֵלַיִךְ	לְפָנַיִךְ	אַחֲרַיִךְ
3ms	מִמֶּנּוּ	אֵלָיו	לְפָנָיו	אַחֲרָיו
3fs	מִמֶּנָּה	אֵלֶיהָ	לְפָנֶיהָ	אַחֲרֶיהָ
1cp	מִמֶּנּוּ	אֵלֵינוּ	לְפָנֵינוּ	אַחֲרֵינוּ
2mp	מִכֶּם	אֲלֵיכֶם	לִפְנֵיכֶם	אַחֲרֵיכֶם
2fp	מִכֶּן	אֲלֵיכֶן	לִפְנֵיכֶן	אַחֲרֵיכֶן
3mp	מֵהֶם	אֲלֵיהֶם	לִפְנֵיהֶם	אַחֲרֵיהֶם
3fp	מֵהֶן	אֲלֵיהֶן	לִפְנֵיהֶן	אַחֲרֵיהֶן

	(Segolate)		(Segolate)	
	לְמַעַן	עַל	תחת	
	(for the sake of)	(upon)	(under)	
1cs	לְמַעֲנִי	עָלַי	תַּחְתַּי	
2ms	לְמַעַנְךָ	עָלֶיךָ	תַּחְתֶּיךָ	
2fs	לְמַעֲנֵךְ	עָלַיִךְ	תַּחְתַּיִךְ	
3ms	לְמַעֲנוֹ	עָלָיו	תַּחְתָּיו	
3fs	לְמַעֲנָהּ	עָלֶיהָ	תַּחְתֶּיהָ	
1cp	לְמַעֲנֵנוּ	עָלֵינוּ	תַּחְתֵּינוּ	
2mp	לְמַעַנְכֶם	עֲלֵיכֶם	תַּחְתֵּיכֶם	
2fp	לְמַעַנְכֶן	עֲלֵיכֶן	תַּחְתֵּיכֶן	
3mp	לְמַעַנָם	עֲלֵיהֶם	(תַּחְתֵּיהֶם)תַּחְתָּם	
3fp	לְמַעַנָן	עֲלֵיהֶן	(תַּחְתֵּיהֶן)תַּחְתָּן	

Hebrew Pronominal Suffixes

Person Gender Number	Independant Pronouns	Singular Nouns	Plural Nouns	Perfect: Directly attached	Perfect with connecting vowel	Imperfect / Imperative: Directly attached	Imperfect / Imperative with connecting vowel	Imperfect / Imperative with Energic Nun
1cs	אָנֹכִי/אֲנִי	־ִי	־ַי	־ִנִי	־ַנִי	־ְנִי	־ֵנִי	־ֶנִּי
2ms	אַתָּה	־ְךָ	־ֶיךָ	־ְךָ	־ִךָ	־ְךָ	־ֶךָּ	־ְךָ
2fs	אַתְּ	־ֵךְ	־ַיִךְ	־ֵךְ ־ֶכִּךְ 3fs verb	־ִךְ	־ֵךְ	־ֵךְ	
3ms	הוּא	־ֹו ־ֹהוּ	־ָיו	־ֹהוּ	־ֹו	־ֵהוּ	־ֵהוּ	־ֶנּוּ
3fs	הִיא	־ָהּ	־ֶיהָ	־ָהּ	־ָהּ	־ָהּ	־ֶהָּ ־ֶהָּ	־ֶנָּה
1cp	אֲנַחְנוּ	־ֵנוּ	־ֵינוּ	־ֵנוּ	־ָנוּ	־ֵנוּ	־ֵנוּ	־ֶנּוּ
2mp	אַתֶּם	־ְכֶם	־ֵיכֶם			־ְכֶם	־ְכֶם	
2fp	אַתֶּן	־ְכֶן	־ֵיכֶן			־ְכֶן	־ְכֶן	
3mp	הֵם/הֶמָּה	־ָם	־ֵיהֶם	־ֵם	־ָם ־ֵמוֹ 3fs verb	־ֵם	־ֵם	
3fp	הֵן/הֶנָּה	־ָן	־ֵיהֶן	־ֵן	־ָן ־ֵנוֹ 3fs verb	־ֵן	־ֵן	

STRONG VERB

PERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	קָטַלְתִּי	נִקְטַלְתִּי	קִטַּלְתִּי	קֻטַּלְתִּי	הִתְקַטַּלְתִּי	הִקְטַלְתִּי	הָקְטַלְתִּי
	2M	קָטַלְתָּ	נִקְטַלְתָּ	קִטַּלְתָּ	קֻטַּלְתָּ	הִתְקַטַּלְתָּ	הִקְטַלְתָּ	הָקְטַלְתָּ
	2F	קָטַלְתְּ	נִקְטַלְתְּ	קִטַּלְתְּ	קֻטַּלְתְּ	הִתְקַטַּלְתְּ	הִקְטַלְתְּ	הָקְטַלְתְּ
	3M	קָטַל	נִקְטַל	קִטֵּל	קֻטַּל	הִתְקַטֵּל	הִקְטִיל	הָקְטַל
	3F	קָטְלָה	נִקְטְלָה	קִטְּלָה	קֻטְּלָה	הִתְקַטְּלָה	הִקְטִילָה	הָקְטְלָה
PL.	1C	קָטַלְנוּ	נִקְטַלְנוּ	קִטַּלְנוּ	קֻטַּלְנוּ	הִתְקַטַּלְנוּ	הִקְטַלְנוּ	הָקְטַלְנוּ
	2M	קְטַלְתֶּם	נִקְטַלְתֶּם	קִטַּלְתֶּם	קֻטַּלְתֶּם	הִתְקַטַּלְתֶּם	הִקְטַלְתֶּם	הָקְטַלְתֶּם
	2F	קְטַלְתֶּן	נִקְטַלְתֶּן	קִטַּלְתֶּן	קֻטַּלְתֶּן	הִתְקַטַּלְתֶּן	הִקְטַלְתֶּן	הָקְטַלְתֶּן
	3C	קָטְלוּ	נִקְטְלוּ	קִטְּלוּ	קֻטְּלוּ	הִתְקַטְּלוּ	הִקְטִילוּ	הָקְטְלוּ

IMPERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶקְטֹל	אֵקָּטֵל	אֲקַטֵּל	אֻקַטַּל	אֶתְקַטֵּל	אַקְטִיל	אָקְטַל
	2M	תִּקְטֹל	תִּקָּטֵל	תְּקַטֵּל	תְּקֻטַּל	תִּתְקַטֵּל	תַּקְטִיל	תָּקְטַל
	2F	תִּקְטְלִי	תִּקָּטְלִי	תְּקַטְּלִי	תְּקֻטְּלִי	תִּתְקַטְּלִי	תַּקְטִילִי	תָּקְטְלִי
	3M	יִקְטֹל	יִקָּטֵל	יְקַטֵּל	יְקֻטַּל	יִתְקַטֵּל	יַקְטִיל	יָקְטַל
	3F	תִּקְטֹל	תִּקָּטֵל	תְּקַטֵּל	תְּקֻטַּל	תִּתְקַטֵּל	תַּקְטִיל	תָּקְטַל
PL.	1C	נִקְטֹל	נִקָּטֵל	נְקַטֵּל	נְקֻטַּל	נִתְקַטֵּל	נַקְטִיל	נָקְטַל
	2M	תִּקְטְלוּ	תִּקָּטְלוּ	תְּקַטְּלוּ	תְּקֻטְּלוּ	תִּתְקַטְּלוּ	תַּקְטִילוּ	תָּקְטְלוּ
	2F	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	תִּקָּטֵלְנָה	תְּקַטֵּלְנָה	תְּקֻטַּלְנָה	תִּתְקַטַּלְנָה	תַּקְטֵלְנָה	תָּקְטַלְנָה
	3M	יִקְטְלוּ	יִקָּטְלוּ	יְקַטְּלוּ	יְקֻטְּלוּ	יִתְקַטְּלוּ	יַקְטִילוּ	יָקְטְלוּ
	3F	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	תִּקָּטֵלְנָה	תְּקַטֵּלְנָה	תְּקֻטַּלְנָה	תִּתְקַטַּלְנָה	תַּקְטֵלְנָה	תָּקְטַלְנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אֶקְטְלָה	אִקָּטְלָה	אֲקַטְּלָה	אֳקֻטְּלָה	אֶתְקַטְּלָה	אַקְטִילָה	
JUSSIVE	יִקְטֹל	יִקָּטֵל	יְקַטֵּל	יְקֻטַּל	יִתְקַטֵּל	יַקְטֵל	יָקְטַל
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיִּקְטֹל	וַיִּקָּטֵל	וַיְקַטֵּל	וַיְקֻטַּל	וַיִּתְקַטֵּל	וַיַּקְטֵל	וַיָּקְטַל

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	קְטֹל	הִקָּטֵל	קַטֵּל		הִתְקַטֵּל	הַקְטֵל	
	2F	קִטְלִי	הִקָּטְלִי	קַטְּלִי		הִתְקַטְּלִי	הַקְטִילִי	
PL.	2M	קִטְלוּ	הִקָּטְלוּ	קַטְּלוּ		הִתְקַטְּלוּ	הַקְטִילוּ	
	2F	קְטֹלְנָה	הִקָּטַלְנָה	קַטֵּלְנָה		הִתְקַטַּלְנָה	הַקְטֵלְנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	קֹטֵל		מְקַטֵּל			מַקְטִיל	
	MP	קֹטְלִים		מְקַטְּלִים			מַקְטִילִים	
	FS	קֹטֶלֶת		מְקַטֶּלֶת			מַקְטֶלֶת	
		קֹטְלָה		מְקַטְּלָה			מַקְטִילָה	
	FP	קֹטְלוֹת		מְקַטְּלוֹת			מַקְטִילוֹת	
PASS	MS	קָטוּל			מְקֻטָּל			מָקְטָל
	MP	קְטוּלִים			מְקֻטָּלִים			מָקְטָלִים
	FS	קְטוּלָה			מְקֻטָּלֶת			מָקְטָלָה
	FP	קְטוּלוֹת			מְקֻטָּלוֹת			מָקְטָלוֹת
REFL	MS		נִקְטָל			מִתְקַטֵּל		
	MP		נִקְטָלִים			מִתְקַטְּלִים		
	FS		נִקְטֶלֶת			מִתְקַטֶּלֶת		
	FP		נִקְטָלוֹת			מִתְקַטְּלוֹת		

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	קָטוֹל	נִקְטֹל הִקָּטֵל	קַטֵּל קַטֵּל	קֹטַל	הִתְקַטֵּל	הַקְטֵל	הָקְטֵל
CONSTRUCT	קְטֹל	הִקָּטֵל	קַטֵּל	קֹטַל	הִתְקַטֵּל	הַקְטִיל	הָקְטַל

STRONG VERB WITH PRONOMINAL SUFFIXES

	Suffixes		1cs	2ms	2fs	3ms
PERFECT	1cs		-----	קְטַלְתִּיךְ	קְטַלְתִּיךְ	קְטַלְתִּיו קְטַלְתִּיהוּ
	2ms		קְטָלַתַנִי	-----	-----	קְטָלָתָהוּ קְטָלַתּוּ
	2fs		קְטָלַתְּיִנִי	-----	-----	קְטָלַתְּיהוּ
	3ms		קְטָלַנִי שְׁכֵחַנִי A-e/	קְטָלְךָ	קְטָלֵךְ	קְטָלָהוּ קְטָלוֹ
	3fs		קְטָלַתְנִי	קְטָלַתְךָ	קְטָלָתֵךְ	קְטָלַתְהוּ קְטָלַתּוּ
	1cp		-----	קְטָלְנוּךָ	קְטָלְנוּךְ	קְטָלְנוּהוּ
	2mp		קְטָלְתּוּנִי	-----	-----	קְטָלְתּוּהוּ
	3cp		קְטָלוּנִי	קְטָלוּךָ אֲהֵבוּךָ	קְטָלוּךְ	קְטָלוּהוּ
IMPERFECT	3ms	/O /A	יְקַטְּלֵנִי יִלְבָּשַׁנִי	יְקַטֶּלְךָ יִלְבָּשְׁךָ	יְקַטֶּלֵךְ יִלְבָּשֵׁךְ	יְקַטְּלֵהוּ יִלְבָּשֵׁהוּ
	3ms +Energic Nun		יְקַטְּלֵנִּי	יְקַטֶּלְךָּ	-----	יְקַטְּלֶנּוּ
	3mp		יְקַטְּלוּנִי	יְקַטְּלוּךָ	יְקַטְּלוּךְ	יְקַטְּלוּהוּ יִגְאָלוּהוּ /A
IMPERATIVE	2ms		קַטְּלֵנִי	-----	-----	קַטְּלֵהוּ
(from an Imperfect /A שְׁלָחֵנִי 2ms +1cs, שִׁמְעוּנִי 2mp +1cs)						
INFINITIVE			קְטָלִי קַטְּלֵנִי	כָּתְבְךָ קָטְלְךָ	קָטְלֵךְ	קָטְלוֹ
PI"EL PERFECT			קִטְּלַנִי	קִטֶּלְךָ	קִטְּלֵךְ	קִטְּלוֹ
HIPH'IL PERFECT			הִקְטִילַנִי	הִקְטִילְךָ	הִקְטִילֵךְ	הִקְטִילוֹ

3fs	1cp	2mp	2fp	3mp	3fp
קְטַלְתִּיהָ	-----	קְטַלְתִּיכֶם	-----	קְטַלְתִּים	קְטַלְתִּין
קְטַלְתָּה	קְטַלְתָּנוּ	-----	-----	קְטַלְתֶּם	-----
קְטַלְתִּיהָ	קְטַלְתִּינוּ	-----	-----	קְטַלְתִּים	-----
קְטָלָה	קְטָלָנוּ	-----	-----	קְטָלָם לְבֵשָׁם /A-e	קְטָלָן
קְטָלַתָּה	קְטָלַתְנוּ	-----	-----	קְטָלָתָם	-----
קְטַלְנוּהָ	-----	קְטַלְנוּכֶם	-----	קְטַלְנוּם	-----
-----	קְטַלְתּוּנוּ	-----	-----	-----	-----
קְטָלוּהָ	קְטָלוּנוּ	-----	-----	קְטָלוּם	קְטָלוּן
יְקַטְּלֶהָ יְלַבְּשֶׁהָ יְקַטְלָהּ	יְקַטְּלֵנוּ יְלַבְּשֵׁנוּ	יְקַטְּלֶכֶם	-----	יְקַטְּלֵם	-----
יְקַטְּלֶנָּה	יְקַטְּלֵנוּ	-----	-----	-----	-----
יְקַטְּלוּהָ	יְקַטְּלוּנוּ	יְקַטְּלוּכֶם	-----	יְקַטְּלוּם	-----
קַטְּלֶהָ קָטְלָהּ	קַטְּלֵנוּ	-----	-----	קַטֵּל	-----
קָטְלָה	קָטְלֵנוּ	קָטַלְתֶּם קְטָלְכֶם	-----	קָטַלְתָּם	קָטַלְתָּן
קִטְּלָה	קִטְּלָנוּ	-----	-----	קִטַּלְתָּם	קִטַּלְתָּן
הִקְטִילָה	הִקְטִילָנוּ	הִקְטִילְכֶם	הִקְטִילְכֶן	הִקְטִילָם	הִקְטִילָן

R_1-Guttural Verb

Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	עָמַדְתִּי	נֶעֱמַדְתִּי	עִמַּדְתִּי	עֻמַּדְתִּי	הִתְעַמַּדְתִּי	הֶעֱמַדְתִּי	הָעֳמַדְתִּי
	2M	עָמַדְתָּ	נֶעֱמַדְתָּ	עִמַּדְתָּ	עֻמַּדְתָּ	הִתְעַמַּדְתָּ	הֶעֱמַדְתָּ	הָעֳמַדְתָּ
	2F	עָמַדְתְּ	נֶעֱמַדְתְּ	עִמַּדְתְּ	עֻמַּדְתְּ	הִתְעַמַּדְתְּ	הֶעֱמַדְתְּ	הָעֳמַדְתְּ
	3M	עָמַד	נֶעֱמַד	עִמֵּד	עֻמַּד	הִתְעַמֵּד	הֶעֱמִיד	הָעֳמַד
	3F	עָמְדָה	נֶעֱמְדָה	עִמְּדָה	עֻמְּדָה	הִתְעַמְּדָה	הֶעֱמִידָה	הָעֳמְדָה
PL.	1C	עָמַדְנוּ	נֶעֱמַדְנוּ	עִמַּדְנוּ	עֻמַּדְנוּ	הִתְעַמַּדְנוּ	הֶעֱמַדְנוּ	הָעֳמַדְנוּ
	2M	עֲמַדְתֶּם	נֶעֱמַדְתֶּם	עִמַּדְתֶּם	עֻמַּדְתֶּם	הִתְעַמַּדְתֶּם	הֶעֱמַדְתֶּם	הָעֳמַדְתֶּם
	2F	עֲמַדְתֶּן	נֶעֱמַדְתֶּן	עִמַּדְתֶּן	עֻמַּדְתֶּן	הִתְעַמַּדְתֶּן	הֶעֱמַדְתֶּן	הָעֳמַדְתֶּן
	3C	עָמְדוּ	נֶעֱמְדוּ	עִמְּדוּ	עֻמְּדוּ	הִתְעַמְּדוּ	הֶעֱמִידוּ	הָעֳמְדוּ

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶעֱמַד	אֵעָמֵד	אֲעַמֵּד	אָעַמַּד	אֶתְעַמֵּד	אַעֲמִיד	אָעֳמַד
	2M	תַּעֲמֹד	תֵּעָמֵד	תְּעַמֵּד	תְּעֻמַּד	תִּתְעַמֵּד	תַּעֲמִיד	תָּעֳמַד
	2F	תַּעֲמְדִי	תֵּעָמְדִי	תְּעַמְּדִי	תְּעֻמְּדִי	תִּתְעַמְּדִי	תַּעֲמִידִי	תָּעֳמְדִי
	3M	יַעֲמֹד	יֵעָמֵד	יְעַמֵּד	יְעֻמַּד	יִתְעַמֵּד	יַעֲמִיד	יָעֳמַד
	3F	תַּעֲמֹד	תֵּעָמֵד	תְּעַמֵּד	תְּעֻמַּד	תִּתְעַמֵּד	תַּעֲמִיד	תָּעֳמַד
PL.	1C	נַעֲמֹד	נֵעָמֵד	נְעַמֵּד	נְעֻמַּד	נִתְעַמֵּד	נַעֲמִיד	נָעֳמַד
	2M	תַּעֲמְדוּ	תֵּעָמְדוּ	תְּעַמְּדוּ	תְּעֻמְּדוּ	תִּתְעַמְּדוּ	תַּעֲמִידוּ	תָּעֳמְדוּ
	2F	תַּעֲמֹדְנָה	תֵּעָמַדְנָה	תְּעַמֵּדְנָה	תְּעֻמַּדְנָה	תִּתְעַמַּדְנָה	תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תָּעֳמַדְנָה
	3M	יַעֲמְדוּ	יֵעָמְדוּ	יְעַמְּדוּ	יְעֻמְּדוּ	יִתְעַמְּדוּ	יַעֲמִידוּ	יָעֳמְדוּ
	3F	תַּעֲמֹדְנָה	תֵּעָמַדְנָה	תְּעַמֵּדְנָה	תְּעֻמַּדְנָה	תִּתְעַמַּדְנָה	תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תָּעֳמַדְנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אָעֳמְדָה	אֵעָמְדָה	אֲעַמְּדָה	אָעֳמְדָה	אֶתְעַמְּדָה	אַעֲמִידָה	אָעָמְדָה
JUSSIVE	יַעֲמֹד	יֵעָמֵד	יְעַמֵּד	יְעֹמַד	יִתְעַמֵּד	יַעֲמֵד	יָעֳמַד
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיַּעֲמֹד	וַיֵּעָמֵד	וַיְעַמֵּד	וַיְעֹמַד	וַיִּתְעַמֵּד	וַיַּעֲמֵד	וַיָּעָמַד

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	עֲמֹד	הֵעָמֵד	עַמֵּד		הִתְעַמֵּד	הַעֲמֵד	
	2F	עִמְדִי	הֵעָמְדִי	עַמְּדִי		הִתְעַמְּדִי	הַעֲמִידִי	
PL.	2M	עִמְדוּ	הֵעָמְדוּ	עַמְּדוּ		הִתְעַמְּדוּ	הַעֲמִידוּ	
	2F	עֳמֹדְנָה	הֵעָמַדְנָה	עַמֵּדְנָה		הִתְעַמַּדְנָה	הַעֲמֵדְנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	עֹמֵד		מְעַמֵּד			מַעֲמִיד	
	MP	עֹמְדִים		מְעַמְּדִים			מַעֲמִידִים	
	FS	עֹמְדָה		מְעַמְּדָה			מַעֲמִידָה	
	FP	עֹמְדוֹת		מְעַמְּדוֹת			מַעֲמִידוֹת	
PASS	MS	עָמוּד			מְעֻמָּד			מָעָמָד
	MP	עֲמוּדִים			מְעֻמָּדִים			מָעָמָדִים
	FS	עֲמוּדָה			מְעֻמָּדָה			מָעָמָדָה
	FP	עֲמוּדוֹת			מְעֻמָּדוֹת			מָעָמָדוֹת
REFL	MS		נֶעֱמָד			מִתְעַמֵּד		
	MP		נֶעֱמָדִים			מִתְעַמְּדִים		
	FS		נֶעֱמָדָה			מִתְעַמְּדָה		
	FP		נֶעֱמָדוֹת			מִתְעַמְּדוֹת		

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	עָמוֹד	נָעֳמוֹד הֵעָמֵד	עַמֵּד עַמֵּד		הִתְעַמֵּד	הַעֲמֵד	הָעֳמֵד
CONSTRUCT	עֲמֹד	הֵעָמֵד	עַמֵּד		הִתְעַמֵּד	הַעֲמִיד	

R_1-Aleph Verb

Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אָכַלְתִּי						
	2M	אָכַלְתָּ						
	2F	אָכַלְתְּ						
	3M	אָכַל						
	3F	אָכְלָה						
PL.	1C	אָכַלְנוּ						
	2M	אֲכַלְתֶּם						
	2F	אֲכַלְתֶּן						
	3C	אָכְלוּ						

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֹכַל						
	2M	תֹּאכַל						
	2F	תֹּאכְלִי						
	3M	יֹאכַל						
	3F	תֹּאכַל						
PL.	1C	נֹאכַל						
	2M	תֹּאכְלוּ						
	2F	תֹּאכַלְנָה						
	3M	יֹאכְלוּ						
	3F	תֹּאכַלְנָה						

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אֹכְלָה						
JUSSIVE	יֹאכַל						
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיֹּאכַל						

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	אֱכֹל						
	2F	אִכְלִי						
PL.	2M	אִכְלוּ						
	2F	אֱכֹלְנָה						

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	אֹכֵל						
	MP	אֹכְלִים						
	FS	אֹכְלָה						
	FP	אֹכְלוֹת						
PASS	MS	אָכוֹל						
	MP	אֲכוּלִים						
	FS	אֲכוּלָה						
	FP	אֲכוּלוֹת						
REFL	MS							
	MP							
	FS							
	FP							

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	אָכוֹל						
CONSTRUCT	אֱכֹל לֶאֱכֹל						

R_2-Guttural Verb

Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	שָׁחַטְתִּי	נִשְׁחַטְתִּי	בֵּרַכְתִּי	בֹּרַכְתִּי	הִתְבָּרַכְתִּי	הִשְׁחַטְתִּי	הָשְׁחַטְתִּי
	2M	שָׁחַטְתָּ	נִשְׁחַטְתָּ	בֵּרַכְתָּ	בֹּרַכְתָּ	הִתְבָּרַכְתָּ	הִשְׁחַטְתָּ	הָשְׁחַטְתָּ
	2F	שָׁחַטְתְּ	נִשְׁחַטְתְּ	בֵּרַכְתְּ	בֹּרַכְתְּ	הִתְבָּרַכְתְּ	הִשְׁחַטְתְּ	הָשְׁחַטְתְּ
	3M	שָׁחַט	נִשְׁחַט	בֵּרַךְ	בֹּרַךְ	הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הִשְׁחִיט	הָשְׁחַט
	3F	שָׁחֲטָה	נִשְׁחֲטָה	בֵּרְכָה	בֹּרְכָה	הִתְבָּרְכָה	הִשְׁחִיטָה	הָשְׁחֲטָה
PL.	1C	שָׁחַטְנוּ	נִשְׁחַטְנוּ	בֵּרַכְנוּ	בֹּרַכְנוּ	הִתְבָּרַכְנוּ	הִשְׁחַטְנוּ	הָשְׁחַטְנוּ
	2M	שְׁחַטְתֶּם	נִשְׁחַטְתֶּם	בֵּרַכְתֶּם	בֹּרַכְתֶּם	הִתְבָּרַכְתֶּם	הִשְׁחַטְתֶּם	הָשְׁחַטְתֶּם
	2F	שְׁחַטְתֶּן	נִשְׁחַטְתֶּן	בֵּרַכְתֶּן	בֹּרַכְתֶּן	הִתְבָּרַכְתֶּן	הִשְׁחַטְתֶּן	הָשְׁחַטְתֶּן
	3C	שָׁחֲטוּ	נִשְׁחֲטוּ	בֵּרְכוּ	בֹּרְכוּ	הִתְבָּרְכוּ	הִשְׁחִיטוּ	הָשְׁחֲטוּ

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶשְׁחַט	אֵשָּׁחֵט	אֲבָרֵךְ	אֳבֹרַךְ	אֶתְבָּרֵךְ	אַשְׁחִיט	אָשְׁחַט
	2M	תִּשְׁחַט	תִּשָּׁחֵט	תְּבָרֵךְ	תְּבֹרַךְ	תִּתְבָּרֵךְ	תַּשְׁחִיט	תָּשְׁחַט
	2F	תִּשְׁחֲטִי	תִּשָּׁחֲטִי	תְּבָרְכִי	תְּבֹרְכִי	תִּתְבָּרְכִי	תַּשְׁחִיטִי	תָּשְׁחֲטִי
	3M	יִשְׁחַט	יִשָּׁחֵט	יְבָרֵךְ	יְבֹרַךְ	יִתְבָּרֵךְ	יַשְׁחִיט	יָשְׁחַט
	3F	תִּשְׁחַט	תִּשָּׁחֵט	תְּבָרֵךְ	תְּבֹרַךְ	תִּתְבָּרֵךְ	תַּשְׁחִיט	תָּשְׁחַט
PL.	1C	נִשְׁחַט	נִשָּׁחֵט	נְבָרֵךְ	נְבֹרַךְ	נִתְבָּרֵךְ	נַשְׁחִיט	נָשְׁחַט
	2M	תִּשְׁחֲטוּ	תִּשָּׁחֲטוּ	תְּבָרְכוּ	תְּבֹרְכוּ	תִּתְבָּרְכוּ	תַּשְׁחִיטוּ	תָּשְׁחֲטוּ
	2F	תִּשְׁחַטְנָה	תִּשָּׁחַטְנָה	תְּבָרֵכְנָה	תְּבֹרַכְנָה	תִּתְבָּרֵכְנָה	תַּשְׁחֵטְנָה	תָּשְׁחַטְנָה
	3M	יִשְׁחֲטוּ	יִשָּׁחֲטוּ	יְבָרְכוּ	יְבֹרְכוּ	יִתְבָּרְכוּ	יַשְׁחִיטוּ	יָשְׁחֲטוּ
	3F	תִּשְׁחַטְנָה	תִּשָּׁחַטְנָה	תְּבָרֵכְנָה	תְּבֹרַכְנָה	תִּתְבָּרֵכְנָה	תַּשְׁחֵטְנָה	תָּשְׁחַטְנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אֶשְׁחֲטָה	אֵשָּׁחֲטָה	אֲבָרֲכָה	אֻבָרֲכָה	אֶתְבָּרֲכָה	אַשְׁחִיטָה	אָשְׁחֲטָה
JUSSIVE	יִשְׁחַט	יִשָּׁחֵט	יְבָרֵךְ	יְבֹרַךְ	יִתְבָּרֵךְ	יַשְׁחֵט	יָשְׁחַט
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיִּשְׁחַט	וַיִּשָּׁחֵט	וַיְבָרֶךְ	וַיְבֹרַךְ	וַיִּתְבָּרֶךְ	וַיַּשְׁחֵט	וַיָּשְׁחַט

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	שְׁחַט	הִשָּׁחֵט	בָּרֵךְ		הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הַשְׁחֵט	
	2F	שַׁחֲטִי	הִשָּׁחֲטִי	בָּרֲכִי		הִתְבָּרֲכִי	הַשְׁחִיטִי	
PL.	2M	שַׁחֲטוּ	הִשָּׁחֲטוּ	בָּרֲכוּ		הִתְבָּרֲכוּ	הַשְׁחִיטוּ	
	2F	שְׁחַטְנָה	הִשָּׁחַטְנָה	בָּרֵכְנָה		הִתְבָּרֵכְנָה	הַשְׁחֵטְנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	שֹׁחֵט		מְבָרֵךְ			מַשְׁחִיט	
	MP	שֹׁחֲטִים		מְבָרְכִים			מַשְׁחִיטִים	
	FS	שֹׁחֲטָה		מְבָרֶכָה			מַשְׁחִיטָה	
	FP	שֹׁחֲטוֹת		מְבָרֲכוֹת			מַשְׁחִיטוֹת	
PASS	MS	שָׁחוּט			מְבֹרָךְ			מָשְׁחָט
	MP	שְׁחוּטִים			מְבֹרָכִים			מָשְׁחָטִים
	FS	שְׁחוּטָה			מְבֹרָכָה			מָשְׁחָטָה
	FP	שְׁחוּטוֹת			מְבֹרָכוֹת			מָשְׁחָטוֹת
REFL	MS		נִשְׁחָט			מִתְבָּרֵךְ		
	MP		נִשְׁחָטִים			מִתְבָּרְכִים		
	FS		נִשְׁחָטָה			מִתְבָּרֶכָה		
	FP		נִשְׁחָטוֹת			מִתְבָּרֲכוֹת		

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	שָׁחוֹט	נִשְׁחוֹט הִשָּׁחֵט	בָּרֵךְ			הַשְׁחֵט	
CONSTRUCT	שְׁחֹט	הִשָּׁחֵט	בָּרֵךְ		הִתְבָּרֵךְ	הַשְׁחִיט	

R_3-Guttural Verb

Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	שָׁלַחְתִּי	נִשְׁלַחְתִּי	שִׁלַּחְתִּי	שֻׁלַּחְתִּי	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתִּי	הִשְׁלַחְתִּי	הָשְׁלַחְתִּי
	2M	שָׁלַחְתָּ	נִשְׁלַחְתָּ	שִׁלַּחְתָּ	שֻׁלַּחְתָּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתָּ	הִשְׁלַחְתָּ	הָשְׁלַחְתָּ
	2F	שָׁלַחַתְּ	נִשְׁלַחַתְּ	שִׁלַּחַתְּ	שֻׁלַּחַתְּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחַתְּ	הִשְׁלַחַתְּ	הָשְׁלַחַתְּ
	3M	שָׁלַח	נִשְׁלַח	שִׁלַּח	שֻׁלַּח	הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הִשְׁלִיחַ	הָשְׁלַח
	3F	שָׁלְחָה	נִשְׁלְחָה	שִׁלְּחָה	שֻׁלְּחָה	הִשְׁתַּלְּחָה	הִשְׁלִיחָה	הָשְׁלְחָה
PL.	1C	שָׁלַחְנוּ	נִשְׁלַחְנוּ	שִׁלַּחְנוּ	שֻׁלַּחְנוּ	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְנוּ	הִשְׁלַחְנוּ	הָשְׁלַחְנוּ
	2M	שְׁלַחְתֶּם	נִשְׁלַחְתֶּם	שִׁלַּחְתֶּם	שֻׁלַּחְתֶּם	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתֶּם	הִשְׁלַחְתֶּם	הָשְׁלַחְתֶּם
	2F	שְׁלַחְתֶּן	נִשְׁלַחְתֶּן	שִׁלַּחְתֶּן	שֻׁלַּחְתֶּן	הִשְׁתַּלַּחְתֶּן	הִשְׁלַחְתֶּן	הָשְׁלַחְתֶּן
	3C	שָׁלְחוּ	נִשְׁלְחוּ	שִׁלְּחוּ	שֻׁלְּחוּ	הִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	הִשְׁלִיחוּ	הָשְׁלְחוּ

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶשְׁלַח	אִשָּׁלַח	אֲשַׁלַּח	אֻשַּׁלַּח	אֶשְׁתַּלַּח	אַשְׁלִיחַ	אָשְׁלַח
	2M	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּשָּׁלַח	תְּשַׁלַּח	תְּשֻׁלַּח	תִּשְׁתַּלַּח	תַּשְׁלִיחַ	תָּשְׁלַח
	2F	תִּשְׁלְחִי	תִּשָּׁלְחִי	תְּשַׁלְּחִי	תְּשֻׁלְּחִי	תִּשְׁתַּלְּחִי	תַּשְׁלִיחִי	תָּשְׁלְחִי
	3M	יִשְׁלַח	יִשָּׁלַח	יְשַׁלַּח	יְשֻׁלַּח	יִשְׁתַּלַּח	יַשְׁלִיחַ	יָשְׁלַח
	3F	תִּשְׁלַח	תִּשָּׁלַח	תְּשַׁלַּח	תְּשֻׁלַּח	תִּשְׁתַּלַּח	תַּשְׁלִיחַ	תָּשְׁלַח
PL.	1C	נִשְׁלַח	נִשָּׁלַח	נְשַׁלַּח	נְשֻׁלַּח	נִשְׁתַּלַּח	נַשְׁלִיחַ	נָשְׁלַח
	2M	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	תִּשָּׁלְחוּ	תְּשַׁלְּחוּ	תְּשֻׁלְּחוּ	תִּשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	תַּשְׁלִיחוּ	תָּשְׁלְחוּ
	2F	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּשָּׁלַחְנָה	תְּשַׁלַּחְנָה	תְּשֻׁלַּחְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	תַּשְׁלַחְנָה	תָּשְׁלַחְנָה
	3M	יִשְׁלְחוּ	יִשָּׁלְחוּ	יְשַׁלְּחוּ	יְשֻׁלְּחוּ	יִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	יַשְׁלִיחוּ	יָשְׁלְחוּ
	3F	תִּשְׁלַחְנָה	תִּשָּׁלַחְנָה	תְּשַׁלַּחְנָה	תְּשֻׁלַּחְנָה	תִּשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	תַּשְׁלַחְנָה	תָּשְׁלַחְנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אֶשְׁלְחָה	אִשָּׁלְחָה	אֲשַׁלְּחָה	אֻשַּׁלְּחָה	אֶשְׁתַּלְּחָה	אַשְׁלִיחָה	אָשְׁלְחָה
JUSSIVE	יִשְׁלַח	יִשָּׁלַח	יְשַׁלַּח	יְשֻׁלַּח	יִשְׁתַּלַּח	יַשְׁלַח	יָשְׁלַח
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיִּשְׁלַח	וַיִּשָּׁלַח	וַיְשַׁלַּח	וַיְשֻׁלַּח	וַיִּשְׁתַּלַּח	וַיַּשְׁלַח	וַיָּשְׁלַח

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	שְׁלַח	הִשָּׁלַח	שַׁלַּח		הִשְׁתַּלַּח	הַשְׁלַח	
	2F	שִׁלְחִי	הִשָּׁלְחִי	שַׁלְּחִי		הִשְׁתַּלְּחִי	הַשְׁלִיחִי	
PL.	2M	שִׁלְחוּ	הִשָּׁלְחוּ	שַׁלְּחוּ		הִשְׁתַּלְּחוּ	הַשְׁלִיחוּ	
	2F	שְׁלַחְנָה	הִשָּׁלַחְנָה	שַׁלַּחְנָה		הִשְׁתַּלַּחְנָה	הַשְׁלַחְנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	שֹׁלֵחַ		מְשַׁלֵּחַ			מַשְׁלִיחַ	
	MP	שֹׁלְחִים		מְשַׁלְּחִים			מַשְׁלִיחִים	
	FS	שֹׁלַחַת		מְשַׁלַּחַת			מַשְׁלִיחָה	
	FP	שֹׁלְחוֹת		מְשַׁלְּחוֹת			מַשְׁלִיחוֹת	
PASS	MS	שָׁלוּחַ			מְשֻׁלָּח			מָשְׁלָח
	MP	שְׁלוּחִים			מְשֻׁלָּחִים			מָשְׁלָחִים
	FS	שְׁלוּחָה			מְשֻׁלָּחָה			מָשְׁלָחָה
	FP	שְׁלוּחוֹת			מְשֻׁלָּחוֹת			מָשְׁלָחוֹת
REFL	MS		נִשְׁלָח			מִשְׁתַּלֵּחַ		
	MP		נִשְׁלָחִים			מִשְׁתַּלְּחִים		
	FS		נִשְׁלָחָה			מִשְׁתַּלַּחַת		
	FP		נִשְׁלָחוֹת			מִשְׁתַּלְּחוֹת		

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	שָׁלוֹחַ	נִשְׁלוֹחַ הִשָּׁלֵחַ	שַׁלֵּחַ			הַשְׁלֵחַ	הָשְׁלֵחַ
CONSTRUCT	שְׁלַח	הִשָּׁלֵחַ	שַׁלֵּחַ		הִשְׁתַּלֵּחַ	הַשְׁלִיחַ	

R_3-ALEF VERB

PERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	מָצָאתִי	נִמְצֵאתִי	מִצֵּאתִי	מֻצֵּאתִי	הִתְמַצֵּאתִי	הִמְצֵאתִי	הָמְצֵאתִי
	2M	מָצָאתָ	נִמְצֵאתָ	מִצֵּאתָ	מֻצֵּאתָ	הִתְמַצֵּאתָ	הִמְצֵאתָ	הָמְצֵאתָ
	2F	מָצָאת	נִמְצֵאת	מִצֵּאת	מֻצֵּאת	הִתְמַצֵּאת	הִמְצֵאת	הָמְצֵאת
	3M	מָצָא	נִמְצָא	מִצֵּא	מֻצָּא	הִתְמַצֵּא	הִמְצִיא	הָמְצָא
	3F	מָצְאָה	נִמְצְאָה	מִצְּאָה	מֻצְּאָה	הִתְמַצְּאָה	הִמְצִיאָה	הָמְצְאָה
PL.	1C	מָצָאנוּ	נִמְצֵאנוּ	מִצֵּאנוּ	מֻצֵּאנוּ	הִתְמַצֵּאנוּ	הִמְצֵאנוּ	הָמְצֵאנוּ
	2M	מְצָאתֶם	נִמְצֵאתֶם	מִצֵּאתֶם	מֻצֵּאתֶם	הִתְמַצֵּאתֶם	הִמְצֵאתֶם	הָמְצֵאתֶם
	2F	מְצָאתֶן	נִמְצֵאתֶן	מִצֵּאתֶן	מֻצֵּאתֶן	הִתְמַצֵּאתֶן	הִמְצֵאתֶן	הָמְצֵאתֶן
	3C	מָצְאוּ	נִמְצְאוּ	מִצְּאוּ	מֻצְּאוּ	הִתְמַצְּאוּ	הִמְצִיאוּ	הָמְצְאוּ

IMPERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶמְצָא	אֵמָּצֵא	אֲמַצֵּא	אָמְצָא	אֶתְמַצֵּא	אַמְצִיא	אָמְצָא
	2M	תִּמְצָא	תִּמָּצֵא	תְּמַצֵּא	תְּמָצָא	תִּתְמַצֵּא	תַּמְצִיא	תָּמְצָא
	2F	תִּמְצְאִי	תִּמָּצְאִי	תְּמַצְּאִי	תְּמֻצְּאִי	תִּתְמַצְּאִי	תַּמְצִיאִי	תָּמְצְאִי
	3M	יִמְצָא	יִמָּצֵא	יְמַצֵּא	יְמֻצָּא	יִתְמַצֵּא	יַמְצִיא	יָמְצָא
	3F	תִּמְצָא	תִּמָּצֵא	תְּמַצֵּא	תְּמֻצָּא	תִּתְמַצֵּא	תַּמְצִיא	תָּמְצָא
PL.	1C	נִמְצָא	נִמָּצֵא	נְמַצֵּא	נְמֻצָּא	נִתְמַצֵּא	נַמְצִיא	נָמְצָא
	2M	תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּמָּצְאוּ	תְּמַצְּאוּ	תְּמֻצְּאוּ	תִּתְמַצְּאוּ	תַּמְצִיאוּ	תָּמְצְאוּ
	2F	תִּמְצֶאנָה	תִּמָּצֶאנָה	תְּמַצֶּאנָה	תְּמֻצֶּאנָה	תִּתְמַצֶּאנָה	תַּמְצֶאנָה	תָּמְצֶאנָה
	3M	יִמְצְאוּ	יִמָּצְאוּ	יְמַצְּאוּ	יְמֻצְּאוּ	יִתְמַצְּאוּ	יַמְצִיאוּ	יָמְצְאוּ
	3F	תִּמְצֶאנָה	תִּמָּצֶאנָה	תְּמַצֶּאנָה	תְּמֻצֶּאנָה	תִּתְמַצֶּאנָה	תַּמְצֶאנָה	תָּמְצֶאנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אֶמְצָאָה	אֵמָּצְאָה	אֲמַצְּאָה	אֳמָצְאָה	אֶתְמַצְּאָה	אַמְצִיאָה	אָמְצָאָה
JUSSIVE	יִמְצָא	יִמָּצֵא	יְמַצֵּא	יְמֻצָּא	יִתְמַצֵּא	יַמְצֵא	יָמְצָא
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיִּמְצָא	וַיִּמָּצֵא	וַיְמַצֵּא	וַיְמֻצָּא	וַיִּתְמַצֵּא	וַיַּמְצֵא	וַיָּמְצָא

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	מְצָא	הִמָּצֵא	מַצֵּא		הִתְמַצֵּא	הַמְצֵא	
	2F	מִצְאִי	הִמָּצְאִי	מַצְאִי		הִתְמַצְאִי	הַמְצִיאִי	
PL.	2M	מִצְאוּ	הִמָּצְאוּ	מַצְאוּ		הִתְמַצְאוּ	הַמְצִיאוּ	
	2F	מְצֶאנָה	הִמָּצֶאנָה	מַצֶּאנָה		הִתְמַצֶּאנָה	הַמְצֶאנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	מֹצֵא		מְמַצֵּא			מַמְצִיא	
	MP	מֹצְאִים		מְמַצְּאִים			מַמְצִיאִים	
	FS	מֹצְאָה מֹצֵאת		מְמַצְּאָה			מַמְצִיאָה	
	FP	מֹצְאוֹת		מְמַצְּאוֹת			מַמְצִיאוֹת	
PASS	MS	מָצוּא			מְמֻצָּא			מָמְצָא
	MP	מְצוּאִים			מְמֻצָּאִים			מָמְצָאִים
	FS	מְצוּאָה			מְמֻצָּאָה			מָמְצָאָה
	FP	מְצוּאוֹת			מְמֻצָּאוֹת			מָמְצָאוֹת
REFL	MS		נִמְצָא			מִתְמַצֵּא		
	MP		נִמְצָאִים			מִתְמַצְּאִים		
	FS		נִמְצָאָה			מִתְמַצְּאָה		
	FP		נִמְצָאוֹת			מִתְמַצְּאוֹת		

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	מָצוֹא	נִמְצוֹא הִמָּצֹא	מַצֹּא			הַמְצֵא	
CONSTRUCT	מְצֹא	הִמָּצֵא	מַצֵּא		הִתְמַצֵּא	הַמְצִיא	

R_1-Nun Verb

Perfect		Qal			Niph'al	*Pi"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	נָפַלְתִּי	נָגַשְׁתִּי	נָתַתִּי	נִגַּשְׁתִּי	נִגַּשְׁתִּי	הִגַּשְׁתִּי	הָגַּשְׁתִּי
	2M	נָפַלְתָּ	נָגַשְׁתָּ	נָתַתָּ	נִגַּשְׁתָּ	נִגַּשְׁתָּ	הִגַּשְׁתָּ	הָגַּשְׁתָּ
	2F	נָפַלְתְּ	נָגַשְׁתְּ	נָתַתְּ	נִגַּשְׁתְּ	נִגַּשְׁתְּ	הִגַּשְׁתְּ	הָגַּשְׁתְּ
	3M	נָפַל	נָגַשׁ	נָתַן	נִגַּשׁ	נִגַּשׁ	הִגִּישׁ	הָגַּשׁ
	3F	נָפְלָה	נָגְשָׁה	נָתְנָה	נִגְּשָׁה	נִגְּשָׁה	הִגִּישָׁה	הָגְּשָׁה
PL.	1C	נָפַלְנוּ	נָגַשְׁנוּ	נָתַנּוּ	נִגַּשְׁנוּ	נִגַּשְׁנוּ	הִגַּשְׁנוּ	הָגַּשְׁנוּ
	2M	נְפַלְתֶּם	נְגַשְׁתֶּם	נְתַתֶּם	נִגַּשְׁתֶּם	נִגַּשְׁתֶּם	הִגַּשְׁתֶּם	הָגַּשְׁתֶּם
	2F	נְפַלְתֶּן	נְגַשְׁתֶּן	נְתַתֶּן	נִגַּשְׁתֶּן	נִגַּשְׁתֶּן	הִגַּשְׁתֶּן	הָגַּשְׁתֶּן
	3C	נָפְלוּ	נָגְשׁוּ	נָתְנוּ	נִגַּשׁוּ	נִגַּשׁוּ	הִגִּישׁוּ	הָגְּשׁוּ

Imperfect		Qal			Niph'al	Pi"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶפֹּל	אֶגַּשׁ	אֶתֵּן	אֶנָּגֵשׁ	אֲנַגֵּשׁ	אַגִּישׁ	אָגַשׁ
	2M	תִּפֹּל	תִּגַּשׁ	תִּתֵּן	תִּנָּגֵשׁ	תְּנַגֵּשׁ	תַּגִּישׁ	תָּגַשׁ
	2F	תִּפְּלִי	תִּגְּשִׁי	תִּתְּנִי	תִּנָּגְשִׁי	תְּנַגְּשִׁי	תַּגִּישִׁי	תָּגְּשִׁי
	3M	יִפֹּל	יִגַּשׁ	יִתֵּן	יִנָּגֵשׁ	יְנַגֵּשׁ	יַגִּישׁ	יָגַשׁ
	3F	תִּפֹּל	תִּגַּשׁ	תִּתֵּן	תִּנָּגֵשׁ	תְּנַגֵּשׁ	תַּגִּישׁ	תָּגַשׁ
PL.	1C	נִפֹּל	נִגַּשׁ	נִתֵּן	נִנָּגֵשׁ	נְנַגֵּשׁ	נַגִּישׁ	נָגַשׁ
	2M	תִּפְּלוּ	תִּגְּשׁוּ	תִּתְּנוּ	תִּנָּגְשׁוּ	תְּנַגְּשׁוּ	תַּגִּישׁוּ	תָּגְּשׁוּ
	2F	תִּפֹּלְנָה	תִּגַּשְׁנָה	תִּתֵּנָה	תִּנָּגַשְׁנָה	תְּנַגַּשְׁנָה	תַּגִּשְׁנָה	תָּגַשְׁנָה
	3M	יִפְּלוּ	יִגְּשׁוּ	יִתְּנוּ	יִנָּגְשׁוּ	יְנַגְּשׁוּ	יַגִּישׁוּ	יָגְּשׁוּ
	3F	תִּפֹּלְנָה	תִּגַּשְׁנָה	תִּתֵּנָה	תִּנָּגַשְׁנָה	תְּנַגַּשְׁנָה	תַּגִּשְׁנָה	תָּגַשְׁנָה

*Pu"al and Hithpa"el follow the same pattern.

	Qal			Niph'al	Pi"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE	אֶפְלָה	אֶגְשָׁה	אֶתְּנָה	אֶנָּגְשָׁה	אֲנַגְּשָׁה	אַגִּישָׁה	אָגְשָׁה
JUSSIVE	יִפֹּל	יִגַּשׁ	יִתֵּן	יִנָּגֵשׁ	יְנַגֵּשׁ	יַגֵּשׁ	יָגַשׁ
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיִּפֹּל	וַיִּגַּשׁ	וַיִּתֵּן	וַיִּנָּגֵשׁ	וַיְנַגֵּשׁ	וַיַּגֵּשׁ	וַיָּגַשׁ

IMPERATIVE					Niph'al	Pi"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	נְפֹל	גַּשׁ	תֵּן	הִנָּגֵשׁ	נַגֵּשׁ	הַגֵּשׁ	
	2F	נִפְלִי	גְּשִׁי	תְּנִי	הִנָּגְשִׁי	נַגְּשִׁי	הַגִּישִׁי	
PL.	2M	נִפְלוּ	גְּשׁוּ	תְּנוּ	הִנָּגְשׁוּ	נַגְּשׁוּ	הַגִּישׁוּ	
	2F	נִפֹּלְנָה	גַּשְׁנָה	תֵּנָה	הִנָּגַשְׁנָה	נַגַּשְׁנָה	הַגֵּשְׁנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	נֹגֵשׁ		מְנַגֵּשׁ	מַגִּישׁ	
	MP	נֹגְשִׁים		מְנַגְּשִׁים	מַגִּישִׁים	
	FS	נֹגְשָׁה		מְנַגֶּשֶׁת	מַגִּישָׁה	
	FP	נֹגְשׁוֹת		מְנַגְּשׁוֹת	מַגִּישׁוֹת	
PASS	MS	נָגוּשׁ				מָגָשׁ
	MP	נְגוּשִׁים				מָגָשִׁים
	FS	נְגוּשָׁה				מָגָשָׁה
	FP	נְגוּשׁוֹת				מָגָשׁוֹת
REFL	MS		נִגָּשׁ			
	MP		נִגָּשִׁים			
	FS		נִגָּשָׁה			
	FP		נִגָּשׁוֹת			

INFINITIVE	Qal			Niph'al	Pi"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	נָפוֹל	נָגוֹשׁ	נָתוֹן	נִגּוֹשׁ	נַגֵּשׁ/נַגֵּשׁ	הַגֵּשׁ	הָגֵשׁ
CONSTRUCT	נְפֹל	גֶּשֶׁת	תֵּת	הִנָּגֵשׁ	נַגֵּשׁ	הַגִּישׁ	הָגַשׁ

R_1-Yod/Vav Verb

		R_1-Vav				R_1-Yod	
Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	Qal	Hiph'il
SG.	1C	יָשַׁבְתִּי	נוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הוֹשַׁבְתִּי	הוּשַׁבְתִּי	יָטַבְתִּי	הֵיטַבְתִּי
	2M	יָשַׁבְתָּ	נוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הוֹשַׁבְתָּ	הוּשַׁבְתָּ	יָטַבְתָּ	הֵיטַבְתָּ
	2F	יָשַׁבְתְּ	נוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הוֹשַׁבְתְּ	הוּשַׁבְתְּ	יָטַבְתְּ	הֵיטַבְתְּ
	3M	יָשַׁב	נוֹשַׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוּשַׁב	יָטַב	הֵיטִיב
	3F	יָשְׁבָה	נוֹשְׁבָה	הוֹשִׁיבָה	הוּשְׁבָה	יָטְבָה	הֵיטִיבָה
PL.	1C	יָשַׁבְנוּ	נוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הוֹשַׁבְנוּ	הוּשַׁבְנוּ	יָטַבְנוּ	הֵיטַבְנוּ
	2M	יְשַׁבְתֶּם	נוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּם	הוּשַׁבְתֶּם	יְטַבְתֶּם	הֵיטַבְתֶּם
	2F	יְשַׁבְתֶּן	נוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הוֹשַׁבְתֶּן	הוּשַׁבְתֶּן	יְטַבְתֶּן	הֵיטַבְתֶּן
	3C	יָשְׁבוּ	נוֹשְׁבוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הוּשְׁבוּ	יָטְבוּ	הֵיטִיבוּ

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	Qal		Hiph'il
SG.	1C	אֵשֵׁב	אִוָּשֵׁב	אוֹשִׁיב	אוּשַׁב	אִירַשׁ	אִיטַב	אֵיטִיב
	2M	תֵּשֵׁב	תִּוָּשֵׁב	תּוֹשִׁיב	תּוּשַׁב	תִּירַשׁ	תִּיטַב	תֵּיטִיב
	2F	תֵּשְׁבִי	תִּוָּשְׁבִי	תּוֹשִׁיבִי	תּוּשְׁבִי	תִּירְשִׁי	תִּיטְבִי	תֵּיטִיבִי
	3M	יֵשֵׁב	יִוָּשֵׁב	יוֹשִׁיב	יוּשַׁב	יִירַשׁ	יִיטַב	יֵיטִיב
	3F	תֵּשֵׁב	תִּוָּשֵׁב	תּוֹשִׁיב	תּוּשַׁב	תִּירַשׁ	תִּיטַב	תֵּיטִיב
PL.	1C	נֵשֵׁב	נִוָּשֵׁב	נוֹשִׁיב	נוּשַׁב	נִירַשׁ	נִיטַב	נֵיטִיב
	2M	תֵּשְׁבוּ	תִּוָּשְׁבוּ	תּוֹשִׁיבוּ	תּוּשְׁבוּ	תִּירְשׁוּ	תִּיטְבוּ	תֵּיטִיבוּ
	2F	תֵּשַׁבְנָה	תִּוָּשַׁבְנָה	תּוֹשֵׁבְנָה	תּוּשַׁבְנָה	תִּירַשְׁנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תֵּיטֵבְנָה
	3M	יֵשְׁבוּ	יִוָּשְׁבוּ	יוֹשִׁיבוּ	יוּשְׁבוּ	יִירְשׁוּ	יִיטְבוּ	יֵיטִיבוּ
	3F	תֵּשַׁבְנָה	תִּוָּשַׁבְנָה	תּוֹשֵׁבְנָה	תּוּשַׁבְנָה	תִּירַשְׁנָה	תִּיטַבְנָה	תֵּיטֵבְנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	Qal		Hiph'il
COHORTATIVE	אֵשְׁבָה	אִוָּשְׁבָה	אוֹשִׁיבָה	אוּשְׁבָה	אִירְשָׁה	אִיטְבָה	אִיטִיבָה
JUSSIVE	יֵשֵׁב	יִוָּשֵׁב	יוֹשֵׁב	יוּשַׁב	יִירַשׁ	יִיטַב	יֵיטֵב
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיֵּשֶׁב	וַיִּוָּשֵׁב	וַיּוֹשֶׁב	וַיּוּשַׁב	וַיִּירַשׁ	וַיִּיטַב	וַיֵּיטֶב

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	Qal	Hiph'il
SG.	2M	שֵׁב	הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשֵׁב			הֵיטֵב
	2F	שְׁבִי	הִוָּשְׁבִי	הוֹשִׁיבִי			הֵיטִיבִי
PL.	2M	שְׁבוּ	הִוָּשְׁבוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ			הֵיטִיבוּ
	2F	שֵׁבְנָה	הִוָּשַׁבְנָה	הוֹשֵׁבְנָה			הֵיטֵבְנָה

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	Qal	Hiph'il
ACT	MS	יֹשֵׁב		מוֹשִׁיב		יֹטֵב	מֵיטִיב
	MP	יֹשְׁבִים		מוֹשִׁיבִים		יֹטְבִים	מֵיטִיבִים
	FS	יֹשֶׁבֶת יֹשָׁבָה		מוֹשִׁיבָה		יֹטְבָה	מֵיטִיבָה
	FP	יֹשְׁבוֹת		מוֹשִׁיבוֹת		יֹטְבוֹת	מֵיטִיבוֹת
PASS	MS	יָשׁוּב			מוּשָׁב	יָטוּב	
	MP	יְשׁוּבִים			מוּשָׁבִים	יְטוּבִים	
	FS	יְשׁוּבָה			מוּשָׁבָה	יְטוּבָה	
	FP	יְשׁוּבוֹת			מוּשָׁבוֹת	יְטוּבוֹת	
REFL	MS		נוֹשָׁב				
	MP		נוֹשָׁבִים				
	FS		נוֹשָׁבָה				
	FP		נוֹשָׁבוֹת				

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	Qal	Hiph'il
ABSOLUTE	יָשׁוֹב		הוֹשֵׁב		יָטוֹב	הֵיטֵב
CONSTRUCT	שֶׁבֶת	הִוָּשֵׁב	הוֹשִׁיב	הוּשַׁב	יְטַב	הֵיטִיב

R_2-Yod/Vav Verb

		R_2-Vav						R_2-Yod
Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'ēl*	*Pô'al*	Qal
SG.	1C	קַמְתִּי	נְקוֹמֹתִי	הֲקִימוֹתִי	הוּקַמְתִּי	קוֹמַמְתִּי	קוֹמַמְתִּי	בָּנִיתִי
	2M	קַמְתָּ	נְקוֹמוֹתָ	הֲקִימוֹתָ	הוּקַמְתָּ	קוֹמַמְתָּ	קוֹמַמְתָּ	בָּנִיתָ
	2F	קַמְתְּ	נְקוֹמוֹת	הֲקִימוֹת	הוּקַמְתְּ	קוֹמַמְתְּ	קוֹמַמְתְּ	בָּנִית
	3M	קָם	נָקוֹם	הֵקִים	הוּקַם	קוֹמֵם	קוֹמַם	בָּן
	3F	קָמָה	נָקוֹמָה	הֵקִימָה	הוּקְמָה	קוֹמֵמָה	קוֹמְמָה	בָּנָה
PL.	1C	קַמְנוּ	נְקוֹמוֹנוּ	הֲקִימוֹנוּ	הוּקַמְנוּ	קוֹמַמְנוּ	קוֹמַמְנוּ	בָּנִינוּ
	2M	קַמְתֶּם	נְקוֹמוֹתֶם	הֲקִימוֹתֶם	הוּקַמְתֶּם	קוֹמַמְתֶּם	קוֹמַמְתֶּם	בְּנִיתֶם
	2F	קַמְתֶּן	נְקוֹמוֹתֶן	הֲקִימוֹתֶן	הוּקַמְתֶּן	קוֹמַמְתֶּן	קוֹמַמְתֶּן	בְּנִיתֶן
	3C	קָמוּ	נָקוֹמוּ	הֵקִימוּ	הוּקְמוּ	קוֹמֲמוּ	קוֹמְמוּ	בָּנוּ

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'ēl*	*Pô'al*	Qal
SG.	1C	אָקוּם	אֵקוֹם	אָקִים	אוּקַם	אֲקוֹמֵם	אֲקוֹמַם	אֶגְיַל
	2M	תָּקוּם	תִּקוֹם	תָּקִים	תּוּקַם	תְּקוֹמֵם	תְּקוֹמַם	תְּגִיל
	2F	תָּקוֹמִי	תִּקּוֹמִי	תָּקִימִי	תּוּקְמִי	תְּקוֹמְמִי	תְּקוֹמְמִי	תְּגִילִי
	3M	יָקוּם	יִקּוֹם	יָקִים	יוּקַם	יְקוֹמֵם	יְקוֹמַם	יָגִיל
	3F	תָּקוּם	תִּקּוֹם	תָּקִים	תּוּקַם	תְּקוֹמֵם	תְּקוֹמַם	תָּגִיל
PL.	1C	נָקוּם	נִקּוֹם	נָקִים	נוּקַם	נְקוֹמֵם	נְקוֹמַם	נָגִיל
	2M	תָּקוֹמוּ	תִּקּוֹמוּ	תָּקִימוּ	תּוּקְמוּ	תְּקוֹמְמוּ	תְּקוֹמְמוּ	תְּגִילוּ
	2F	תָּקוּמְנָה		תָּקֵמְנָה	תּוּקַמְנָה	תְּקוֹמֵמְנָה	תְּקוֹמַמְנָה	תְּגֵלְנָה
	3M	יָקוֹמוּ	יִקּוֹמוּ	יָקִימוּ	יוּקְמוּ	יְקוֹמְמוּ	יְקוֹמְמוּ	יָגִילוּ
	3F	תָּקוּמְנָה		תָּקִימְנָה תָּקֵמְנָה	תּוּקַמְנָה	תְּקוֹמֵמְנָה	תְּקוֹמַמְנָה	תְּגֵלְנָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'ēl*	*Pô'al*	Qal
COHORTATIVE	אָקוּמָה	אֵקּוֹמָה	אָקִימָה	אוּקְמָה	אֲקוֹמֲמָה	אֲקוֹמֲמָה	אָגִילָה
JUSSIVE	יָקָם	יִקּוֹם	יָקֶם	יוּקַם	יְקוֹמֵם	יְקוֹמַם	יָגֶל
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיָּקָם	וַיִּקּוֹם	וַיָּקֶם	וַיּוּקַם	וַיְקוֹמֵם	וַיְקוֹמַם	וַיָּגֶל

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'ēl*	*Pô'al*	Qal
SG.	2M	קוּם	הִקּוֹם	הָקֵם		קוֹמֵם		בִּין
	2F	קוּמִי	הִקּוֹמִי	הָקִימִי		קוֹמֲמִי		בִּינִי
PL.	2M	קוּמוּ	הִקּוֹמוּ	הָקִימוּ		קוֹמֲמוּ		בִּינוּ
	2F	קֹמְמָנָה		הָקֵמְנָה		קוֹמֵמְנָה		

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'ēl*	*Pô'al*	Qal
ACT	MS	קָם		מֵקִים		מְקוֹמֵם		בָּן
	MP	קָמִים		מְקִימִים				בָּנִים
	FS	קָמָה		מְקִימָה				בָּנָה
	FP	קָמוֹת		מְקִימוֹת				בָּנוֹת
PASS	MS	קוּם			מוּקָם		מְקוֹמָם	
	MP	קוּמִים			מוּקָמִים			
	FS	קוּמָה			מוּקָמָה			
	FP	קוּמוֹת			מוּקָמוֹת			
REFL	MS		נָקוֹם					
	MP		נְקוֹמִים					
	FS		נְקוֹמָה					
	FP		נְקוֹמוֹת					

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'ēl*	*Pô'al*	Qal
ABSOLUTE	קוֹם	הִקּוֹם	הָקֵם				בּוֹן
CONSTRUCT	קוּם	הִקּוֹם	הָקִים	הוּקַם	קוֹמֵם		בִּין

R_3-He (Yod/Vav) Verb

Perfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	גָּלִיתִי	נִגְלֵיתִי	גִּלִּיתִי	גֻּלֵּיתִי	הִתְגַּלֵּיתִי	הִגְלֵיתִי	הָגְלֵיתִי
	2M	גָּלִיתָ	נִגְלֵיתָ	גִּלִּיתָ	גֻּלֵּיתָ	הִתְגַּלֵּיתָ	הִגְלֵיתָ	הָגְלֵיתָ
	2F	גָּלִית	נִגְלֵית	גִּלִּית	גֻּלֵּית	הִתְגַּלֵּית	הִגְלִית	הָגְלֵית
	3M	גָּלָה	נִגְלָה	גִּלָּה	גֻּלָּה	הִתְגַּלָּה	הִגְלָה	הָגְלָה
	3F	גָּלְתָה	נִגְלְתָה	גִּלְּתָה	גֻּלְּתָה	הִתְגַּלְּתָה	הִגְלְתָה	הָגְלְתָה
PL.	1C	גָּלִינוּ	נִגְלֵינוּ	גִּלִּינוּ	גֻּלֵּינוּ	הִתְגַּלֵּינוּ	הִגְלֵינוּ	הָגְלֵינוּ
	2M	גְּלִיתֶם	נִגְלֵיתֶם	גִּלִּיתֶם	גֻּלֵּיתֶם	הִתְגַּלֵּיתֶם	הִגְלֵיתֶם	הָגְלֵיתֶם
	2F	גְּלִיתֶן	נִגְלֵיתֶן	גִּלִּיתֶן	גֻּלֵּיתֶן	הִתְגַּלֵּיתֶן	הִגְלֵיתֶן	הָגְלֵיתֶן
	3C	גָּלוּ	נִגְלוּ	גִּלּוּ	גֻּלּוּ	הִתְגַּלּוּ	הִגְלוּ	הָגְלוּ

Imperfect		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶגְלֶה	אִגָּלֶה	אֲגַלֶּה	אֳגַלֶּה	אֶתְגַּלֶּה	אַגְלֶה	אָגְלֶה
	2M	תִּגְלֶה	תִּגָּלֶה	תְּגַלֶּה	תְּגֻלֶּה	תִּתְגַּלֶּה	תַּגְלֶה	תָּגְלֶה
	2F	תִּגְלִי	תִּגָּלִי	תְּגַלִּי	תְּגֻלִּי	תִּתְגַּלִּי	תַּגְלִי	תָּגְלִי
	3M	יִגְלֶה	יִגָּלֶה	יְגַלֶּה	יְגֻלֶּה	יִתְגַּלֶּה	יַגְלֶה	יָגְלֶה
	3F	תִּגְלֶה	תִּגָּלֶה	תְּגַלֶּה	תְּגֻלֶּה	תִּתְגַּלֶּה	תַּגְלֶה	תָּגְלֶה
PL.	1C	נִגְלֶה	נִגָּלֶה	נְגַלֶּה	נְגֻלֶּה	נִתְגַּלֶּה	נַגְלֶה	נָגְלֶה
	2M	תִּגְלוּ	תִּגָּלוּ	תְּגַלּוּ	תְּגֻלּוּ	תִּתְגַּלּוּ	תַּגְלוּ	תָּגְלוּ
	2F	תִּגְלֶינָה	תִּגָּלֶינָה	תְּגַלֶּינָה	תְּגֻלֶּינָה	תִּתְגַּלֶּינָה	תַּגְלֶינָה	תָּגְלֶינָה
	3M	יִגְלוּ	יִגָּלוּ	יְגַלּוּ	יְגֻלּוּ	יִתְגַּלּוּ	יַגְלוּ	יָגְלוּ
	3F	תִּגְלֶינָה	תִּגָּלֶינָה	תְּגַלֶּינָה	תְּגֻלֶּינָה	תִּתְגַּלֶּינָה	תַּגְלֶינָה	תָּגְלֶינָה

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE							
JUSSIVE	יִגֶל / יִגְלְ יִגֶל / יִגְלְ	יִגָּל	יְגַל	יְגֻל	יִתְגַּל	יַגֶל / יַגְלְ	
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיִּגֶל	וַיִּגָּל	וַיְגַל	וַיְגֻל	וַיִּתְגַּל	וַיַּגֶל	

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	גְּלֵה	הִגָּלֵה	גַּל / גַּלֵּה		הִתְגַּל	הַגְלֵה	
	2F	גְּלִי	הִגָּלִי	גַּלִּי		הִתְגַּלִּי	הַגְלִי	
PL.	2M	גְּלוּ	הִגָּלוּ	גַּלּוּ		הִתְגַּלּוּ	הַגְלוּ	
	2F	גְּלֶינָה	הִגָּלֶינָה	גַּלֶּינָה		הִתְגַּלֶּינָה	הַגְלֶינָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	גֹּלֶה		מְגַלֶּה			מַגְלֶה	
	MP	גֹּלִים		מְגַלִּים			מַגְלָה	
	FS	גֹּלָה / גֹּלִית		מְגַלָּה			מַגְלִים	
	FP	גֹּלוֹת		מְגַלּוֹת			מַגְלוֹת	
PASS	MS	גָּלוּי			מְגֻלֶּה			מָגְלֶה
	MP	גְּלוּיִם			מְגֻלִּים			מָגְלָה
	FS	גְּלוּיָה			מְגֻלָּה			מָגְלִים
	FP	גְּלוּיוֹת			מְגֻלּוֹת			מָגְלוֹת
REFL	MS		נִגְלֶה			מִתְגַּלֶּה		
	MP		נִגְלִים			מִתְגַּלִּים		
	FS		נִגְלָה			מִתְגַּלָּה		
	FP		נִגְלוֹת			מִתְגַּלּוֹת		

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	גָּלֹה	נִגְלֹה	גַּלֵּה גַּלֹּה			הַגְלֵה	הָגְלֵה
CONSTRUCT	גְּלוֹת	הִגָּלוֹת	גַּלּוֹת	גְּלוֹת	הִתְגַּלּוֹת	הַגְלוֹת	

היה VERB

PERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	הָיִיתִי						
	2M	הָיִיתָ						
	2F							
	3M	הָיָה						
	3F	הָיְתָה						
PL.	1C	הָיִינוּ						
	2M	הֱיִיתֶם						
	2F							
	3C	הָיוּ						

IMPERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	1C	אֶהְיֶה						
	2M	תִּהְיֶה						
	2F							
	3M	יִהְיֶה						
	3F	תִּהְיֶה						
PL.	1C	נִהְיֶה						
	2M	תִּהְיוּ						
	2F	תִּהְיֶינָה						
	3M	יִהְיוּ						
	3F	תִּהְיֶינָה						

	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
COHORTATIVE							
JUSSIVE	יְהִי						
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיְהִי						

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
SG.	2M	הֱיֵה						
	2F	הֲיִי						
PL.	2M	הֱיוּ						
	2F	הֱיֶינָה						

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ACT	MS	הוֹיֶה						
	MP	הוֹיִים						
	FS	הוֹיָה						
	FP	הוֹיוֹת						
PASS	MS	הָיוּי						
	MP	הֱיוּיִם						
	FS	הֱיוּיָה						
	FP	הֱיוּיוֹת						
REFL	MS							
	MP							
	FS							
	FP							

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Pi"el	Pu"al	Hithpa"el	Hiph'il	Hoph'al
ABSOLUTE	הָיוֹ						
CONSTRUCT	הֱיוֹת						

GEMINATE VERBS

PERFECT		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'lēl*	*Pô'lal*
SG.	1C	סַבּוֹתִי	נְסַבּוֹתִי	הֲסִבּוֹתִי	הוּסַבּוֹתִי	סוֹבַבְתִּי	סוֹבַבְתִּי
	2M	סַבּוֹתָ	נְסַבּוֹתָ	הֲסִבּוֹתָ	הוּסַבּוֹתָ	סוֹבַבְתָּ	סוֹבַבְתָּ
	2F	סַבּוֹת	נְסַבּוֹת	הֲסִבּוֹת	הוּסַבּוֹת	סוֹבַבְתְּ	סוֹבַבְתְּ
	3M	סַב / סָבַב	נָסַב	הֵסֵב / הֵסִב	הוּסַב	סוֹבֵב	סוֹבַב
	3F	סַבָּה / סָבְבָה	נָסַבָּה	הֵסִבָּה	הוּסַבָּה	סוֹבְבָה	סוֹבְבָה
PL.	1C	סַבּוֹנוּ	נְסַבּוֹנוּ	הֲסִבּוֹנוּ	הוּסַבּוֹנוּ	סוֹבַבְנוּ	סוֹבַבְנוּ
	2M	סַבּוֹתֶם	נְסַבּוֹתֶם	הֲסִבּוֹתֶם	הוּסַבּוֹתֶם	סוֹבַבְתֶּם	סוֹבַבְתֶּם
	2F	סַבּוֹתֶן	נְסַבּוֹתֶן	הֲסִבּוֹתֶן	הוּסַבּוֹתֶן	סוֹבַבְתֶּן	סוֹבַבְתֶּן
	3C	סַבּוּ / סָבְבוּ	נָסַבּוּ	הֵסַבּוּ	הוּסַבּוּ	סוֹבְבוּ	סוֹבְבוּ

IMPERFECT		Qal		Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'lēl*	*Pô'lal*
SG.	1C	אָסֹב	אֶסֹּב	אֵסַב	אָסֵב	אוּסַב	אֲסוֹבֵב	אֲסוֹבַב
	2M	תָּסֹב	תְּסֹב	תִּסַּב	תָּסֵב	תּוּסַב	תְּסוֹבֵב	תְּסוֹבַב
	2F	תָּסֹבִּי	תְּסֹבִּי	תִּסַּבִּי	תָּסֵבִּי	תּוּסַבִּי	תְּסוֹבְבִי	תְּסוֹבְבִי
	3M	יָסֹב	יְסֹב	יִסַּב	יָסֵב / יָסֵב	יוּסַב / יֻסַּב	יְסוֹבֵב	יְסוֹבַב
	3F	תָּסֹב	תְּסֹב	תִּסַּב	תָּסֵב	תּוּסַב	תְּסוֹבֵב	תְּסוֹבַב
PL.	1C	נָסֹב	נְסֹב	נִסַּב	נָסֵב	נוּסַב	נְסוֹבֵב	נְסוֹבַב
	2M	תָּסֹבּוּ	תְּסֹבּוּ	תִּסַּבּוּ	תָּסֵבּוּ	תּוּסַבּוּ	תְּסוֹבְבוּ	תְּסוֹבְבוּ
	2F	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	תְּסֹבֶּינָה	תִּסַּבֶּינָה	תְּסֹבֶּינָה	תּוּסַבֶּינָה	תְּסוֹבֵבְנָה	תְּסוֹבַבְנָה
	3M	יָסֹבּוּ	יְסֹבּוּ	יִסַּבּוּ	יָסֵבּוּ / יָסַבּוּ	יוּסַבּוּ	יְסוֹבְבוּ	יְסוֹבְבוּ
	3F	תְּסֻבֶּינָה	תְּסֹבֶּינָה	תִּסַּבֶּינָה	תְּסֹבֶּינָה	תּוּסַבֶּינָה	תְּסוֹבֵבְנָה	תְּסוֹבַבְנָה

אַף	also, even (11)
אֲרוֹן	(with Article הָאָרוֹן) ark, chest (22)
אֶרֶז (*a*)	cedar (23)
אֲרָם	Aram (26)
אֶרֶץ (*a*)	(with Article הָאָרֶץ) Fem. earth, land (7)
ארר	Qal: curse (38)
אֵשׁ	(f) fire (18)
אִשֶּׁה	(Construct Singular אִשֵּׁה, Construct Plural אִשֵּׁי) offering by fire, fire offering (34)
אִשָּׁה	woman (4)
אַשּׁוּר	Assyria (18)
אֲשֶׁר	(relative pronoun) who, which, that, that which (3)
אַשְׁרֵי	happy, blessed (16)
אֵת	(prep.) with (2)
אֵת	Direct Object marker (7)
אַתְּ	you (f) (17)
אַתָּה	you (m) (17)
אַתֶּם	you (m) (17)
אַתֶּן	you (f) (17)

ב

בָּא	(he) came (4)
בָּבֶל	Babylon (24)
בֶּגֶד (*i*)	garment (20)
בְּהֵמָה	large animal, cattle, crocodile(?) (19)
בּוֹר	pit (28)
בָּחַר בְּ	(he) chose (11)
בָּטַח	(he) trusts, trusted (12)
בֶּטֶן (*i*)	womb (24)
בֵּין	(prep.) between (8)
בַּיִת	house (5)
בֵּית־אֵל	Bethel (16)
בֵּית לֶחֶם	Bethlehem (22)
בָּכָה	(he) wept (13)
בְּכוֹר	firstborn (36)
בלע	Qal: swallow, engulf Pi"el: swallow up, confound, destroy (32)
בֵּן	son (4)
בָּנָה	(he) built (8)
בַּעַד (*a*)	(construct בְּעַד separation) away from, behind, through, about, on behalf of (37)
בַּעַל	owner, lord, Baal (21)
בער	Qal: burn, consume Pi"el: make burn (kindle), consume, destroy Pu"al: passive of Pi"el Hiph'il: cause to burn (kindle), burn up, destroy (31)
בקע	Qal: split, break open or through Niph'al: passive of Qal Pi"el: split into pieces (32)
בֹּקֶר (*a*)	morning (15)
בָּקָר	cattle (14)
בקש	Pi"el: seek (23)
ברח	fled (19)
בְּרִית	covenant (13)
ברך	Qal: bless Pi"el: bless, pronounce a blessing on (29)
בְּרָכָה	blessing (20)
בָּשָׂר	flesh (7)
בַּת	daughter (13)
בְּתוֹךְ	(preposition) in the midst of (19)

בְּתוּלָה	virgin (36)
בַּת־שֶׁבַע	Bathsheba (35)

גאל	Qal: redeem, act as a kinsman redeemer Niph'al: reflexive and passive of Qal (31)
גְּבוּל	boundary, territory (26)
גִּבּוֹר	warrior, mighty man (28)
גָּדוֹל	(adj.) great (10)
גדל	(A/A) be (become) great, mature, strong (21) Qal: be great Pi"el: make great, magnify (23)
גּוֹי	people, nation (6)
גור	Qal: sojourn, journey, dwell for a time (37)
גִּלְבֹּעַ	Gilboa (36)
גלה	Qal: uncover (with אֹזֶן uncover the ear = reveal) Niph'al: reflexive and passive of the Qal: uncover oneself Pi"el: uncover, reveal Hiph'il: cause to depart, take into exile (37)
גַּם	(adv. conj.) also, indeed, moreover (4)
גַּן	(with Article הַגָּן) garden (7)
גֶּפֶן (*a*)	vine (27)

דבק	Qal: cling, stick to, cleave Hiph'il: cause to cling, stick to (36)
דִּבֶּר	(he) spoke (4)
דָּבָר	word, matter, thing (4)
דָּוִד	David (4)
דּוֹר	(pl. דֹּרוֹת) generation (30)
דָּם	blood (18)
דָּמִים	bloodshed (plural of דָּם), murder (18)
דַּעַת (*a*)	knowledge (16)
דֶּרֶךְ (*a*)	way, road (15)
דרשׁ	Qal: seek (23)

הָהֵמָּה, הָהֵם	Those (m) (10)
הָהֵנָּה, הָהֵן	Those (f) (10)
הַהוּא	That (m) (10)
הַהִיא	That (f) (10)
הוּא	(pronoun) he (2, 17)
הִיא	she (17)
הָיָה	(it, he) happened, became, was (2)
הֵיכָל	temple, palace (7)
הָלַךְ	(he) went, walked (2)
הלל	Qal: boast Pi"el: praise Hithpa"el: boast oneself, boast in (ב) (23)
הֵם / הֵמָּה	they (m) (12, 17)
הֵן / הֵנָּה	they (f) (17)
הִנֵּה	(Particle) look, see, behold (5)
הפך	Qal: turn, turn over, overthrow Niph'al: reflexive of Qal (30)
הַר	(with Article הָהָר) mountain (7)
הָרַג	(he) killed (13)

ו

...וְ	and, but, even, now (8)
וְהָיָה	And he (it) will be (20)
וְהָיוּ	And they will be (20)
וַיְהִי	And he (it) was (sg.) (20)
וַיִּהְיוּ	And they were (pl.) (20)

ז

זֹאת	This (f) (10)
זָבַח	(he) slaughtered, sacrificed (8)
זֶבַח (*i*)	sacrifice (8)
זֶה	This (m) (10)
זָהָב	gold (8)
זָכַר	(he) remembered (12)
זָכָר	male, man (34)
זעק	cry out (20)
זָקֵן	(adj.) old, elder (11)
זָקֵן	(A-e/A) be old (21)
זְרוֹעַ	arm (31)
זֶרַע (*a*)	seed, offspring (27)
זרע	Qal: sow, scatter seed Niph'al: be sown, be fruitful (32)

ח

חדל	Qal: cease, come to an end, desist, fail (35)
חוֹמָה	city wall (13)
חוּץ	(noun) the outside, street (30)
חָזָק	(adj.) strong, hard, mighty (31)
חזק	Qal: be strong, be firm, prevail Pi"el: put in a strong state, make strong Hiph'il: cause to be strong, seize, take hold (with בְּ) (29)
חִזְקִיָּהוּ	Hezekiah (18)
חָטָא	(he) sinned (missed the mark) (15)
חַטָּאת	(f) sin, sin-offering (16)
חָיָה	Qal: live, have life Pi"el: preserve alive, revive Hiph'il: cause to be alive (preserve alive), revive (37)
חַיִּים	life (always in the plural) (15)
חַיִל	strength, mighty man, ability, army, wealth (29)
חָכָם	(adj.) wise (10)
חָכְמָה	wisdom (12)
חָלָל	slain, pierced, fatally wounded (36)
חֵמָה	heat, wrath, anger (31) חָרָה אַפִּי בְּ – my nose became hot, i.e., I became angry with (12)
חֲמוֹר	(male) donkey (27)
חָמָס	violence, wrong (33)
חנן	Qal: favor, be gracious to Niph'al: be pitied Hithpa"el: seek favor (38)
חֶסֶד (*a*)	loyalty, lovingkindness, steadfast love (16)
חָפֵץ	Qal: delight in, take pleasure (with בְּ) (29)
חָצֵר	settlement, enclosure (29)
חֹק (pl. חֻקִּים)	statute, law, rule (15)
חֶרֶב (*a*)	(f) sword (16)
חָרָה	be hot, angry (12)
חרם	Hiph'il: devote to the ban, exterminate, destroy Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il (29)
חֶרְפָּה	reproach, disgrace (27)

חָשַׁב — Qal: think, account, plan, reckon, impute
Niph'al: passive of Qal
Pi"el: think upon, plan, derive, reckon (29)

חֹשֶׁךְ (*o*) — darkness (9)

חתת — Qal: be shattered, broken, be dismayed
Hiph'il: shatter, terrify (38)

ט

טָהוֹר — clean (adj.) (26)

טָהֵר — Qal: be clean (ceremonially or morally)
Pi"el: put in a clean state, cleanse, purify
Hithpa"el: reflexive of Pi"el (31)

טוֹב — (adj.) good (10)

טוּב — good thing(s), goodness (18)

טמא — Qal: be (or become) unclean, defiled
Niph'al: defile oneself, be defiled
Pi"el: put in an unclean state, defile, pronounce unclean
Hithpa"el: put oneself in an unclean state, defile oneself (33)

י

יָד — (f) hand (3)

יָדַע — (he) knew, knows (4)

יָהּ — shortened form of יהוה (23)

יֵהוּא — Jehu (32)

יְהוּדָה — Judah (5)

יהוה — Lord, the Divine name; Yahweh (5)

יְהוֹנָתָן — Jonathan (18)

יְהוֹשֻׁעַ — Joshua (9)

יוֹאָב — Joab (14)

יוֹם — day (2)

יוֹסֵף — Joseph (8)

יַחְדָּו — all together, together (23)

יטב — Qal: be good, be pleasing
Hiph'il: do good (to), deal well (with), do thoroughly (35)

יַיִן (*e*) — wine (13)

יכח — Hiph'il: decide, judge, reprove, correct, convict (35)

יָכֹל (O/A) — Qal: be able, have power, prevail, endure (35)

יָלַד — bear a child (22)

יָם — sea (2)

יָמִין — the right, right hand, right side, south (32)

יסד(ו) — Qal: establish, found
Niph'al: passive, reflexive of the Qal
Pi"el: establish, found
Pu'al: passive of Pi"el (34)

יסף — Qal: add
Niph'al: be added, joined
Hiph'il: add (יסף means "again" or "more" when followed by an infinitive or another verb – וַיֹּסֶף ... וַיִּקַּח And he added and took = he took again) (35)

יעץ (י) — Qal: advise, counsel
Niph'al: consult together, exchange counsel (35)

יַעֲקֹב Jacob (28)
יָצָא (he) went out (5)
יצב Hithpa"el (only): station oneself, take one's stand (24)
יִצְחָק Isaac (13)
יצר Qal: form, fashion, plan, foreordain (Participle: one who forms, a potter)
Niph'al: passive of Qal (35)
יָרֵא (he) feared (14)
יִרְאָה fear (20)
יָרַד (he) went down (8)
יַרְדֵּן Jordan (also written with the Article הַיַּרְדֵּן) (8)
יְרוּשָׁלַיִם Jerusalem (5)
יִרְמְיָה, יִרְמְיָהוּ Jeremiah (22)
ירשׁ Qal: take possession of, inherit, dispossess
Hiph'il: cause to possess or inherit, cause to dispossess (35)
יִשְׂרָאֵל Israel (3)
יֵשׁ there is, there are (16)
יָשַׁב (he) sat, dwelled (3)
יְשׁוּעָה salvation (22)
יִשַׁי Jesse (26)
יֶשַׁע (*i*) salvation, deliverance (34)
ישׁע Niph'al: be freed, saved
Hiph'il: free, save, deliver, liberate (35)
יָשָׁר (adj.) straight, right (10)
יֶתֶר (*i*) remainder, the rest (20)

כ

כַּאֲשֶׁר (conjunction) as (5)
כָּבֵד (adj.) heavy, severe (12)
כָּבֵד (A-e/A) be heavy (21)
כָּבוֹד (noun) glory, riches (12)
כבס Pi"el: wash clothes (by treading); Poetically – wash or cleanse a soul (31)
כֹּה (adverb) thus, so (6)
כֹּהֵן priest (5)
כִּי (conj.) because, for, that, when, but, indeed (4)
כִּכָּר (f) (round) valley, plain, loaf of bread (15)
כָּל-, כֹּל all (with suffix כֻּלּוֹ) (5, 26)
כלה Qal: be complete, come to an end, fail, finish, fulfill
Pi"el: make an end of, finish, complete (37)
כְּלִי vessel, weapon (21)
כֵּן so, thus, rightly (12)
כְּנַעַן (*a*) Canaan (12)
כִּסֵּא chair, throne (19)
כסה Pi"el: cover, clothe, conceal, overwhelm
Hithpa"el: reflexive of the Pi"el, cover oneself (37)
כְּסִיל fool (noun), insolent, stupid (adj.) (19)
כֶּסֶף (*a*) silver (8)
כעס Qal: be vexed, angry, irritated
Pi"el: put in a vexed condition, anger
Hiph'il: vex, anger, provoke to anger (31)
כַּף (f) palm (of hand), sole (of foot) (כַּפִּי with suffix) (28)
כפר Pi"el: cover over; make propitiation (27)
כָּרַת (he) cut (13)

כָּשַׁל Qal: stumble
Hiph'il: cause to stumble (24)

כָּתַב (he) wrote (9)

לֹא no, not (2)

לֵאמֹר saying (12)

לֵב, לֵבָב heart (with suffix לִבִּי my heart) (16)

לְבָנוֹן Lebanon (הַלְּבָנוֹן with Article) (23)

לְבַד alone (with suffix, לְבַדִּי; with מִן: מִלְּבַדִּי besides, apart from) (30)

לוֹט Lot (15)

לֵוִי Levi (25)

לֶחֶם (*a*) bread (7)

לחם Niph'al: fight (25)

לַיְלָה night (9)

לכד capture (18)

לָכֵן therefore (17)

למד Qal: learn
Pi"el: make learn (teach) (23)

לָמָּה, לָמָּה לְ + מה prep. for what, why? (8)

לְמַעַן so that, in order that, for the sake of (16)

לְעֵינֵי to the eyes of, i.e., before (11)

לִפְנֵי־ to the face of, i.e., before (11)

לָקַח (he) took, received (5)

לָשׁוֹן tongue, language (22)

מְאֹד (adverb) very, exceedingly (9)

מאן Pi"el: refuse, reject (36)

מאס reject, despise (26)

מָגֵן shield (21)

מִדְבָּר wilderness (10)

מִדְיָן Midian (28)

מִדְיָנִי Midianite (28)

מָה־, מָה־, מַה־ what, how? (7)

מוֹאָב Moab (21)

מוֹעֵד appointed time, place, meeting (26)

מָוֶת (construct מוֹת, see footnote 68) death (21)

מות Qal: die
Hiph'il: cause to die, kill
Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il (36)

מִזְבֵּחַ place of sacrifice, altar (8)

מַחֲנֶה camp, army (27)

מָחָר tomorrow (18)

מַטֶּה staff, tribe (27)

מטר Hiph'il: rain, cause rain to fall (35)

מָטָר rain (35)

מִי (אֶת־מִי) who? (whom?) (9)

מַיִם water (6)

מכר sell (22)

מָלֵא Qal: be full, fill
Niph'al: Passive of Qal
Pi"el: put in a full state, fill, fulfill, wholly devote to (33)

מַלְאָךְ messenger, angel (14)

מְלָאכָה work (30)

מִלְחָמָה war, battle (15)

מלט Pi"el: deliver, save (23)

מֶלֶךְ (*a*) king (2)

מָלַךְ (he) ruled, was king (8)

מַמְלָכָה kingdom (Construct מַמְלֶכֶת [*a*]) (24)

מִן	(prep.) from, out of, because of, part of, than (in comparisons) the preposition can be compounded on another preposition – מֵעִם from with; מֵעַל from upon. This is common after verbs expressing motion. (2)
מִנְחָה	gift, offering (28)
מֵעִים	(the word only occurs in the Plural) internal organs; inward parts (34)
מָצָא	(he) found, discovered, presented (19)
מִצְוָה	commandment (11)
מִצְרַיִם	Egypt, Egyptian (4)
מָקוֹם	place (17)
מֶרְכָּבָה	chariot (27)
מֹשֶׁה	Moses (3)
משׁח	Qal: anoint (compare מָשִׁיחַ anointed one) (32)
מָשִׁיחַ	anointed one, Messiah (20)
מִשְׁכָּן	dwelling place, tabernacle (33)
מָשַׁל	(he) ruled (13)
משׁל ב	(he) ruled over (13)
מִשְׁפָּחָה	family, clan (20)
מִשְׁפָּט	judgment, justice, custom (11)

נ

נָא	now, please (19)
נְאֻם	utterance, declaration (25)
נבא	Hithpa"el and Niph'al: prophesy (23)
נָבִיא	prophet (6)
נֶגֶב (*e*)	south, Negev region (37)
נֶגֶד (*e*)	before, in front of, opposite to (with suffix נֶגְדִּי) (30)
נגד	Hiph'il: declare, tell Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il (34)
נגע	Qal: touch (usually with ב), reach, strike Hiph'il: cause to touch, reach, arrive, approach (34)
נָהָר	river (15)
נוס	Qal: flee Hiph'il: cause to flee (36)
נַחֲלָה	inheritance (29)
נחם	Niph'al: be sorry, repent, suffer grief, be comforted Pi"el: comfort, console (25)
נָחָשׁ	snake (33)
נטשׁ	Qal: leave, forsake, permit Niph'al: passive of Qal (36)
נסע	Qal: (pull up, out) set out, journey, depart Hiph'il: causative of Qal (34)
נְעוּרִים	youth (18)
נַעַר (*a*)	lad, boy (16)
נָפַל	(he) fell (16)
נֶפֶשׁ (*a*)	soul, life (22)
נֵצַח (*i*)	eminence, glory, perpetuity (34)
נצח	Pi"el: act as a leader, overseer (34)
נצל	Niph'al: deliver oneself, be delivered Hiph'il: take away, deliver (from) (34)
נָשָׂא	(he) lifted up (15)
נָשִׁים	women (4)
נָתַן	(he) gave (2)

נָתָן	Nathan (35)
	ס
סָבִיב	all around, all about, surrounding (22)
סגר	Qal: shut Niph'al: be closed, shut Pi"el: deliver up (make closed up) Hiph'il: deliver up, close up (24)
סוס	horse (9)
סור	Qal: turn aside, depart Hiph'il: cause to turn aside, depart, remove, take away (36)
סֵפֶר (*i*)	scroll, book (15)
ספר	Qal: count Pi"el: recount, declare (in detail) (23)
סתר	Niph'al: hide oneself, be hid Hiph'il: hide, conceal
	ע
עֶבֶד (*a*)	slave, servant (4)
עָבַד	(he) served (4)
עָבַר	(he) passed over, transgressed, has passed over (6)
עַד	(prep. and conj.) unto, to, as far as, when, until, עַד עוֹלָם forever (9)
עֵדָה	congregation (13)
עוֹד	(adverb) again, still, yet (9)
עוֹלָם	eternity (9)
עָוֹן	iniquity, guilt, punishment (27)
עֹז	(with suffix עֻזִּי) strength, might, power (21)
עָזַב	(he) abandoned, left, forsook (12)
עזר	Qal: help, aid Niph'al: Passive of the Qal (29)
עַיִן	(f) eye, well (11)
עִיר	(fem.) city (irregular plural עָרִים) (2)
עַל	(prep.) on, upon, over, against (2)
עָלָה	(he) went up (5)
עֹלָה	burnt offering (22)
עֵלִי	Eli (19)
עַם	(with Article הָעָם) people (7)
עִם	(prep.) with (4)
עָמַד	(he) stood, has stood (6)
עמד	a longer form of עִם (38)
עַמּוֹן	Ammon (25)
עָפָר	dirt, ground (7)
עֵץ	tree (8)
עֵצָה	counsel, advice (35)
עֶרֶב (*a*)	evening (15)
ערך	Qal: arrange in order (30)
עָשָׂה	(he) did, made (2)
עֵת	time, season (14)
עַתָּה	(adverb) now (6)
	פ
פֶּה	mouth (24)
פַּחַד (*a*)	trembling, terror (20)
פלא	Niph'al: be (or do) extraordinary (things), be (or do) wonderful (things) Hiph'il: do wondrously, marvellously (33)
פלל	Hithpa"el: pray (23)
פְּלִשְׁתִּי	Philistine (30)

פְּלִשְׁתִּים	Philistines (10)
פֶּן	lest (25)
פנה	Qal: turn, face
	Hiph'il: cause to face, turn (37)
פָּנִים	face (3)
פעל	Qal: do, make (31)
פקד	Qal: pay attention to, observe, visit, appoint
	Niph'al: Passive of Qal
	Hiph'il: set (over), cause (one) to be an overseer, entrust (24)
פַּר	bull (33)
פָּרָה	cow (33)
פְּרִי	fruit (7)
פַּרְעֹה	Pharaoh (7)
פרר	Hiph'il: break, frustrate, make ineffective
	Hoph'al: passive of Hiph'il (38)
פרשׂ	Qal: spread (out)
	Niph'al: be scattered, spread out (32)
פָּשַׁע	(he) revolted, transgressed (14)
פשע ב	revolt against (14)
פֶּשַׁע (*i*)	rebellion, revolt, transgression (14)
פֶּתַח (*i*)	opening, gate, entrance (30)
פתח	Qal: open
	Niph'al: be opened, loosened
	Pi"el: loosen, free, open (30)
צ	
צאן	sheep (14)
צָבָא	army, host (12)
צַדִּיק	(adj.) righteous (11)
צֶדֶק (*i*)	righteousness (15)
צְדָקָה	righteousness (11)
צִוָּה	(he) commanded (7)
צִיּוֹן	Zion (17)
צֵל	shade (17)
צלח	Qal: be successful
	Hiph'il: succeed, prosper, cause to be successful (26)
צעק	Qal: cry, cry out, call
	Niph'al: passive of Qal; זעק is the same word (31)
צָפוֹן	north (33)
צָרָה	distress (21)
ק	
קָבַץ	(he) assembled, gathered together (13)
קבר	bury (21)
קָדוֹשׁ	(adj.) holy (10)
קֶדֶם	before, front, east (34)
קֹדֶשׁ (*o*)	holiness, holy (17)
קדשׁ	Qal: be holy
	Pi"el: make holy
	Hithpa"el: make oneself holy (23)
קָהָל	assembly, congregation (32)
קוֹל	voice, sound (6)
קום	Qal: arise, stand up, stand
	Hiph'il: cause to rise, arise, cause to stand, erect, raise up (36)
קָטָן, קָטֹן	(adj.) small, little, young (26)
קָרָא	(he) called, read (3)
קָרַב	(he) came near, approached (14)
קֶרֶב (*i*)	(preposition) middle of; בְּקֶרֶב in the middle of (27)
קרע	tear up, tear away (20)

ר

רָאָה	(he) saw, looked (3)
רֹאשׁ	head (6)
רַב	(adj.) much, many (16)
רֹב	multitude, abundance (33)
רבה	Qal: be or become many, numerous, great (37)
רִבְקָה	Rebecca (26)
רֶגֶל (*a*)	(f) foot (28)
רָדַף	(he) pursued, persecuted (7)
רוּחַ	spirit, wind (20)
רֶכֶב (*i*)	chariots (collective) (27)
רכב	Qal: mount, ride Hiph'il: cause to mount, cause to ride (27)
רנן	Qal: give a ringing cry Pi"el: same as Qal Hiph'il: same as Qal; cause a cry, give a ringing cry (38)
רֵעַ	friend (33)
רַע	(adj.) (f. רָעָה) evil (10)
רָעֵב	Qal: be hungry (compare the noun רָעָב hunger, famine) (32)
רָעָב	famine, hunger (13)
רעע	(Stative) Qal: be evil, bad, be displeasing Hiph'il: do evil, hurt, injure (38)
רפא	Qal: heal Niph'al: Passive of Qal Pi"el: heal (33)
רָצוֹן	favor, will, pleasure, acceptance (31)
רַק	only, surely (38)
רָשָׁע	(adj.) evil, wicked (10)

ש

שָׂבַע	Qal: be satisfied, be in excess Hiph'il: cause to be satisfied, satisfy (32)
שָׂדֶה	field (26)
שִׂים	Qal: put, place, set, ordain (36)
שָׂכַל	Qal: be wise Hiph'il: give attention to, ponder, have insight, give insight, act wisely, have success (24)
שְׂמֹאול (or שְׂמֹאל)	the left, left side, left hand, north (32)
שָׂמַח	(he) rejoices, rejoiced (13)
שִׂמְחָה	rejoicing, joy (22)
שָׂנֵא	(he) hates, hated (14)
שָׂפָה	lip, shore (22)
שַׂר	official, leader, prince (16)
שָׂרָה	(or שָׂרַי) Sarah (11)
שָׂרַף	Qal: burn (18) Niph'al: be burned (25)

שׁ

שָׁאוּל	Saul (7)
שָׁאַל	(he) asked (12)
שאר	Niph'al: be left over, remain Hiph'il: cause (over) to be left over, spare (25)
שְׁאֵרִית	(abs. and const.) remainder, remnant (25)
שֵׁבֶט (*i*)	rod, staff, tribe (28)
שבע	Niph'al: put oneself under oath, i.e., swear

	Hiph'il: cause to swear, adjure (25)
שׁבר	Qal: break Pi"el: smash (23)
שַׁבָּת	Sabbath, rest (18)
שׁדד	Qal: destroy, slay, devastate Pi"el: destroy, assault Pu"al: be destroyed (38)
שׁוב	Qal: turn back, return, go back, come back (with another verb = again: return and do = do again) Hiph'il: cause to return, bring back (36)
שׁוֹפָר	horn, ram's horn (32)
שׁחת	Niph'al: be marred, spoiled, corrupted Pi"el: spoil, ruin, destroy Hiph'il: spoil, ruin, destroy, corrupt, act corruptly (24)
שָׁכַב	(he) lay down, slept (14)
שָׁכַח	(he) forgot (11)
שׁכם	Hiph'il (only): rise early, make an early start (24)
שׁכן	dwell, settle (21)
שׁכן	Qal: dwell, settle (in a tent) Pi"el: make settle, establish (33)
שִׁלוֹ, שִׁלֹה	Shiloh (19)
שָׁלוֹם	peace, health (9)
שָׁלַח	(he) sent (5)
שׁלך	Hiph'il: throw, cast (down, away, off) (24)
שְׁלֹמֹה	Solomon (11)
שָׁם	(adv.) there (5)
שֵׁם	name (with suffix 3ms, שְׁמוֹ) (3, 12)
שׁמד	Niph'al: be annihilated, exterminated Hiph'il: annihilate, exterminate (24)
שְׁמוּאֵל	Samuel (9)
שָׁמַיִם	heaven, heavens, sky (6)
שׁמם	Qal: be desolated, be appalled, awestruck Niph'al: be desolated, be appalled Hiph'il: devastate, destroy (38)
שֶׁמֶן (*a*)	oil (28)
שָׁמַע	(he) heard, obeyed (3)
שָׁמַר	(he) kept, watched, guarded, has kept (6); Qal: keep Niph'al: keep oneself, take heed, be careful (25)
שָׁנָה	year (15)
שַׁעַר (*a*)	gate (19)
שִׁפְחָה	female slave (38)
שָׁפַט	(he) judged (11)
שֹׁפֵט	(Participle) a judge (20)
שֶׁקֶר (*i*)	falsehood, deception, lie (18)
שׁקר	Pi"el: act falsely, lie (compare שֶׁקֶר) (34)
שׁרת	Pi"el: minister, serve (often a Participle: minister, officer) (31)
שָׁתָה	(he) drank (13)

ת

תְּהִלָּה	glory, praise (9)
תּוֹרָה	law, instruction (8)
תַּחַת	under, instead of (16)
תָּמִיד	continually, regularly (17)

תמם	(Stative) Qal: be completed, finished, come to an end, cease Hiph'il: finish, complete, perfect (38)
תעה	Qal: wander about, go astray, err Hiph'il: cause to wander, mislead (37)
תקע	Qal: thrust, drive, clap, blow (horn) Niph'al: passive of Qal (32)

INDEX

Bold numbers refer to footnotes; other numbers refer to chapters and sections

	Qal		Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'lēl*	*Pô'lal*
COHORTATIVE	אָסֹבָּה	אֶסְבָּה					
JUSSIVE	יָסֹב	יִסֹּב	יִסַּב	יָסֵב / יַסֵּב	יוּסַב / יָסַב	יְסוֹבֵב	יְסוֹבַב
WITH VAV-CONSECUTIVE	וַיָּסָב	וַיִּסֹּב	וַיִּסַּב	וַיָּסֵב			

IMPERATIVE		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'lēl*	*Pô'lal*
SG.	2M	סֹב	הִסַּב	הָסֵב		סוֹבֵב	
	2F	סֹבִּי	הִסַּבִּי	הָסֵבִּי		סוֹבְבִי	
PL.	2M	סֹבּוּ	הִסַּבּוּ	הָסֵבּוּ		סוֹבְבוּ	
	2F	סֻבֶּינָה	הִסַּבֶּינָה	הָסֵבֶּינָה		סוֹבְבְנָה	

PARTICIPLE		Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'lēl*	*Pô'lal*
ACT	MS	סֹבֵב		מֵסֵב		מְסוֹבֵב	
	MP	סֹבְבִים		מְסִבִּים			
	FS	סֹבְבָה		מְסִבָּה			
	FP	סֹבְבוֹת		מְסִבּוֹת			
PASS	MS	סָבוּב			מוּסָב		
	MP	סְבוּבִים			מוּסָבִים		מְסוֹבָב
	FS	סְבוּבָה			מוּסָבָה		
	FP	סְבוּבוֹת			מוּסָבוֹת		
REFL	MS		נָסָב				
	MP		נְסַבִּים				
	FS		נְסַבָּה				
	FP		נְסַבּוֹת				

INFINITIVE	Qal	Niph'al	Hiph'il	Hoph'al	*Pô'lēl*	*Pô'lal*
ABSOLUTE	סָבוֹב	הִסּוֹב	הָסֵב		סוֹבֵב	סוֹבַב
CONSTRUCT	סֹב	הִסֵּב	הָסֵב		סוֹבֵב	

HEBREW GRAMMAR
HEBREW-ENGLISH VOCABULARY LIST

א

אָב	father (3)
אבד	Qal: perish, die, vanish Pi"el: make perish (destroy), make die (kill), make vanish (24)
אֲבִימֶלֶךְ	Abimelek (14)
אֶבֶן (*a*)	(f) stone (22)
אַבְנֵר	Abner (24)
אַבְרָהָם	Abraham (6)
אַבְשָׁלוֹם	Absalom (14)
אֱדוֹם	Edom (22)
אָדָם	man, Adam (4)
אֲדָמָה	land, ground (8)
אֲדֹנָי	Lord, lord, master (3)
אָהַב, אֹהֵב	he loves, loved (21)
אֹהֶל (*o*)	tent (19)
אַהֲרֹן	Aaron (6)
אוֹ	or (19)
אוֹיֵב	(Participle) enemy (20)
אוֹר	light (9)
אָז	(adv.) then, at that time (10)
אֹזֶן (*o*)	ear (37)
אָח	brother (13)
אַחְאָב	Ahab (15)
אָחוֹת	sister (13)
אחז	Qal: grasp, take hold of (frequently with ב or Accusative) (30)
אַחֵר	(adj.) another, other (plural, אֲחֵרִים) (11)
אַחַר, אַחֲרֵי	(prep.) after, behind (6)
אַיִל	ram (30)
אֵין	there is no/not (literally: "non-existence of," from אַיִן) (19)
אִישׁ	man (3)
אַךְ	only, surely, but (30)
אֹכֶל (*o*), אָכְלָה	food (26)
אָכַל	(he) ate (5)
אַל	no, not (18)
אֶל-	(prep.) unto, toward, to (2)
אֵלֶּה	These (c= common, masculine and feminine) (10)
אֱלֹהִים	God (3)
אֵלִיָּהוּ	Elijah (12)
אֱלִישָׁע	Elisha (32)
אֶלֶף (*a*)	thousand, tribe(?), clan(?) (38)
אֵם	mother (13)
אִם	if (19)
אָמַר	(he) said (2)
אָמָה	(with 1cs suffix אַמְהָתִי) female slave, handmaid (38)
אמן	Niph'al: make firm, sure, establish Hiph'il: trust, believe (sometimes with ב, believe in) (29)
אֱמֶת	truth (with 3ms suffix אֲמִתּוֹ, root אמן) (13)
אֲנַחְנוּ	we (17)
אָנֹכִי / אֲנִי	I (17)
אֲנָשִׁים	men (3)
אסף	Qal: gather, collect Niph'al: passive of Qal (29)
אסר	Qal: bind, tie, imprison Niph'al: passive of Qal (29)